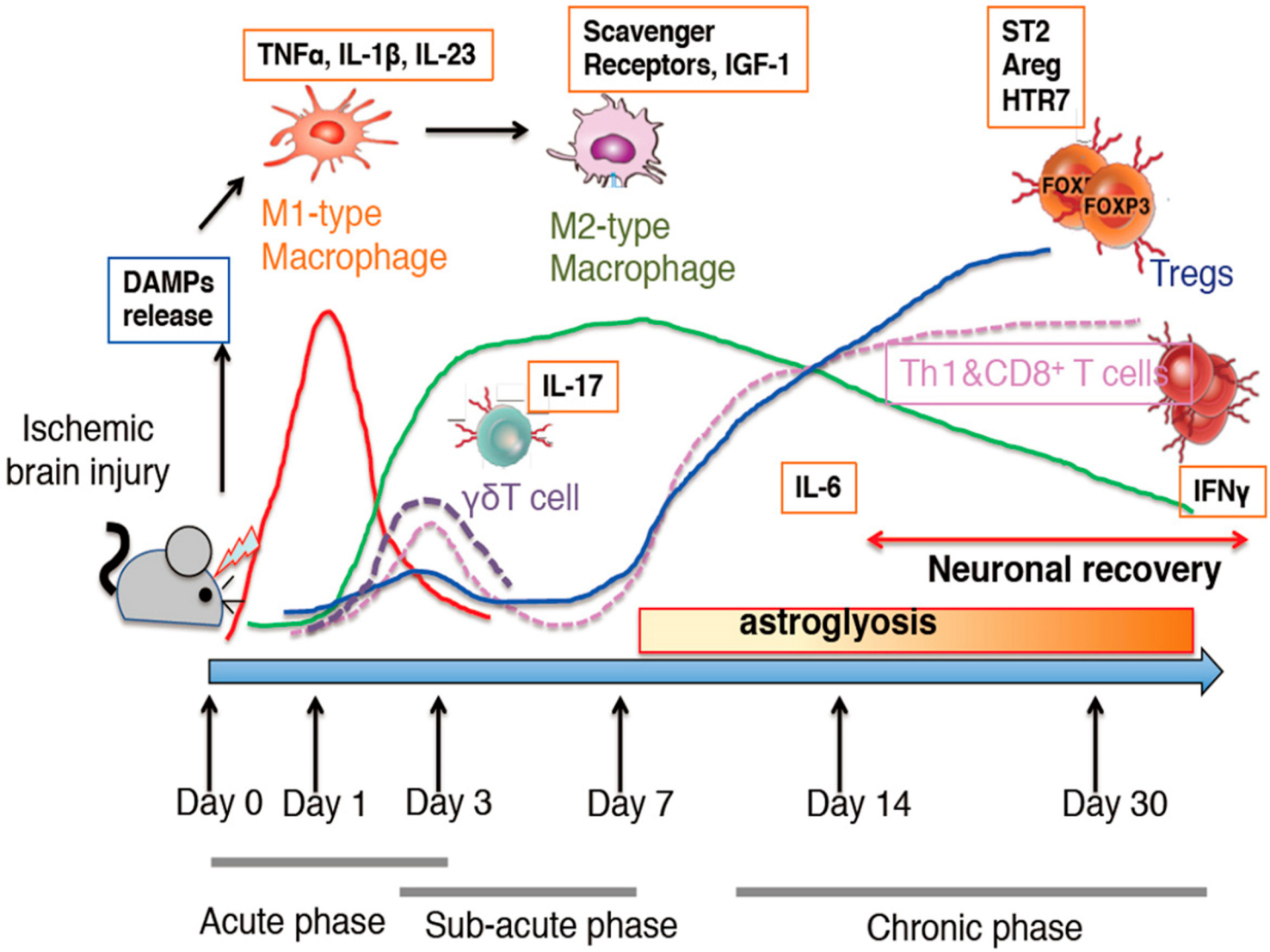
ISSN 2349-6142 (Online), ISSN 2347-8659 (Print)
Volume 7 I Issue 3 I 2020

Neuroimmunology and Neuroinflammation



OAE Publishing Inc.

EDITORIAL BOARD

Honorary Editor-in-Chief

V. Wee Yong (Canada)

Editors-in-Chief

Athanassios P. Kyritsis (Greece)
Thomas Müller (Germany)
Gang Zhao (China)

Associate Editors

Dale Ding (USA)
Dirk M. Hermann (Germany)
Michel Mittelbronn (Germany)
Domenico Praticò (USA)
Gianfranco Spalletta (USA)

Editorial Board Members

Paulo Aguiar (Brazil)
Tomohiro Aoki (Japan)
Eleonora Aronica (Netherlands)
Konstantin E. Balashov (USA)
Bi-Tao Bu (China)
Luigi Casella (Italy)
Aswin Chari (UK)
Chu Chen (USA)
Elisabeth Chroni (Greece)
Steven J. Collins (Australia)
Randall L. Davis (USA)
Vicente Felipo (Spain)
Yara Dadalti Fragoso (Brazil)
Stephen D. Ginsberg (USA)
Ye Gong (China)
Hong-Zhi Guan (China)
Ioannis Heliopoulos (Greece)
Li-Fang Hu (China)
Nunzio Iraci (UK)
Elisabeth Kapaki (Greece)
Andis Klegeris (Canada)
Spiros Konitsiotis (Greece)
Bin Li (China)
Zhu-Yi Li (China)
Sofia Markoula (Greece)
Daniele Orsucci (Italy)
Stéphane Peineau (UK)
Fabrizio Piazza (Italy)
Sara Grazia Maria Piccirillo (USA)
Christine N. Sang (USA)
Chrissa G. Sioka (Greece)
Michael J. Strong (USA)
Hua Su (USA)
Kyoungho Suk (South Korea)
Jun Tan (USA)
Rudolph E. Tanzi (USA)
Konstantinos I. Tsamis (Greece)
Georgios K. Tsivgoulis (USA)
Jorge Valero (Spain)
Kiran K. Velpula (USA)
Chao-Dong Wang (China)
Kevin K.W. Wang (USA)
Anthony R. West (USA)
Sara Xapelli (Portugal)
Jinbin Xu (USA)
Guo-Yuan Yang (China)
Yu-Feng Zang (China)
Wen-Quan Zou (USA)

Editorial Staffs

Rui-Rui Zhang (China)
Mei-Lu Jia (China)
Hai-Di Ding (China)
Huan-Liang Wu (China)
Cai-Hong Wang (China)

GENERAL INFORMATION

About the Journal

Neuroimmunology and Neuroinflammation (*NN*), ISSN 2349-6142 (Online), ISSN 2347-8659 (Print), is a peer-reviewed online journal with print on demand compilation of articles published. The journal's full text is available online at www.nnjournal.net. The journal allows free access (Open Access) to its contents and permits authors to self-archive final accepted version of the articles on any OAI-compliant institutional/subject-based repository. The journal focuses on neuroimmunology and neuroinflammation, and the coverage extends to other basic and clinical studies related to neuroscience, including molecular biology, pharmacology, endocrinology, pathology, physiology, psychology, oncology, *etc*. The journal is indexed with CAS, Chaoxing "Domain" Publishing Platform, Cite Factor, CNKI, DRJI, EBSCO, Embase, Eurasian Scientific Journal Index, Google Scholar, Hinari, JournalGuide, JournalTOCs, J-Gate, ResearchBib, Root Indexing, SHERPA/RoMEO, Wanfang Data and Worldcat.

Information for Authors

Manuscripts must be prepared in accordance with Author Instructions.
Please check www.nnjournal.net/pages/view/author_instructions for details.
All manuscripts must be submitted online at www.editorialmanager.com/neurimm.

Copyright

The entire contents of the *NN* are protected under international copyrights. The journal, however, grants to all users a free, irrevocable, worldwide, perpetual right of access to, and a license to copy, use, distribute, perform and display the work publicly and to make and distribute derivative works in any digital medium for any reasonable purpose, subject to proper attribution of authorship and ownership of the rights. The journal also grants the right to make small numbers of printed copies for their personal use under the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 License.
Copyright is reserved by © The Author(s) 2020.

Permissions

For information on how to request permissions to reproduce articles/information from this journal, please visit www.nnjournal.net.

Disclaimer

The information and opinions presented in the journal reflect the views of the authors and not of the journal or its Editorial Board or the Publisher. Publication does not constitute endorsement by the journal. Neither the *NN* nor its publishers nor anyone else involved in creating, producing or delivering the *NN* or the materials contained therein, assumes any liability or responsibility for the accuracy, completeness, or usefulness of any information provided in the *NN*, nor shall they be liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special, consequential or punitive damages arising out of the use of the *NN*. The *NN*, nor its publishers, nor any other party involved in the preparation of material contained in the *NN* represents or warrants that the information contained herein is in every respect accurate or complete, and they are not responsible for any errors or omissions or for the results obtained from the use of such material. Readers are encouraged to confirm the information contained herein with other sources.

Published by

OAE Publishing Inc.
245 E Main Street st122, Alhambra, CA 91801, USA
Website: www.oaepublish.com

Contacts

E-mail: editorialoffice@nnjournal.net
Website: www.nnjournal.net

Neuroimmunology and Neuroinflammation

CONTENTS

1 **Cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers for cognitive disorders. An introductory overview**
George P. Paraskevas
Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation 2020;7:183-93. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2019.008

2 **Defining activation states of microglia in human brain tissue: an unresolved issue for Alzheimer's disease**
Douglas G. Walker
Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation 2020;7:194-214. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.09

3 **Microbiome meets microglia in neuroinflammation and neurological disorders**
Rachel E. N. Reyes, Zeyu Zhang, Lei Gao, Liana Asatryan
Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation 2020;7:215-33. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.13

4 **Microglial contributions to aberrant neurogenesis and pathophysiology of epilepsy**
Tanya R. Victor, Stella E. Tsirka
Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation 2020;7:234-47. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.02

5 **Microglial heterogeneity: distinct cell types or differential functional adaptation?**
Savannah D. Benusa, Nicholas M. George, Jeffrey L. Dupree
Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation 2020;7:248-63. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.03

6 **Resolution of inflammation and repair after ischemic brain injury**
Akihiko Yoshimura, Minako Ito
Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation 2020;7:264-76. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.22

7 **The immune regulation of PD-1/PDL-1 axis, a potential biomarker in multiple sclerosis**
Maria Teresa Cencioni
Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation 2020;7:277-90. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.18

8 **What is the role of Brain derived neurotrophic factor in Multiple Sclerosis neuroinflammation?**
Viviana Nociti
Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation 2020;7:291-9. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.25

Paraskevas. *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:183-93
DOI: 10.20517/2347-8659.2019.008

Neuroimmunology and Neuroinflammation

Review

Open Access

Cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers for cognitive disorders. An introductory overview

George P. Paraskevas

Division of Cognitive and Movement Disorders and Unit of Neurochemistry and Biological Markers, 1st Department of Neurology, National and Kapodistrian University of Athens, School of Medicine, Eginition Hospital, Athens 11528, Greece.

Correspondence to: Dr. George P. Paraskevas, Division of Cognitive and Movement Disorders and Unit of Neurochemistry and Biological Markers, 1st Department of Neurology, National and Kapodistrian University of Athens, School of Medicine, Eginition Hospital, 72 Vas. Sophias Ave, Athens 11528, Greece. E-mail: geoprskvs44@gmail.com

How to cite this article: Paraskevas GP. Cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers for cognitive disorders. An introductory overview. *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:183-93. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2019.008

Received: 13 Aug 2019 **First Decision:** 24 Dec 2019 **Revised:** 11 Mar 2020 **Accepted:** 18 Mar 2020 **Available online:** 24 Jun 2020

Science Editor: George P. Paraskevas **Copy Editor:** Jing-Wen Zhang **Production Editor:** Tian Zhang

Abstract

The core (established) cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers of Alzheimer's disease (AD), namely amyloid-beta peptide, total tau protein and phospho-tau protein, have become a part of the diagnostic workup of patients with cognitive disorders in many specialized centers, especially for ambiguous cases. Combined, these biomarkers can identify the presence or absence of an AD biochemical process with sensitivities and specificities approaching or exceeding 90% in both dementia and pre-dementia stages of AD. Thus, they have been incorporated in various sets of research or clinical diagnostic criteria and recommendations. Results that are atypical, incompatible with AD, or inconclusive may occur, necessitating the use of other cerebrospinal fluid or imaging biomarkers.

Keywords: Cerebrospinal fluid, tau, phospho-tau, amyloid-beta, Alzheimer's disease, alpha-synuclein, TDP-43, neurofilament light protein

INTRODUCTION

Almost 25 years after their first introduction, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) biomarkers have become a part of the diagnostic workup of patients with cognitive disorders in many specialized centers. Furthermore, they provide neurochemical information about the disorder underlying each individual patient's clinical presentation, which currently should be viewed as a biological process, sometimes starting many years prior to symptom onset and gradually evolving into a typical or atypical clinical phenotype. This paper provides an introductory, concise review, regarding the current status and future perspectives of CSF biomarker use.

© The Author(s) 2020. **Open Access** This article is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, for any purpose, even commercially, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license, and indicate if changes were made.

WHY DO WE NEED BIOMARKERS?

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is the most common type of dementia[1], followed by vascular cognitive impairment (VCI)[2], dementia with Lewy bodies (DLB)[3], frontotemporal dementia (FTD)[4] and others. Until relatively recently, diagnosis of AD was made according to clinically based criteria[5]. These criteria may show high diagnostic accuracy, especially when typical cases are examined in specialized centers[6]. However, it is long known that in the community, in early, presenile or atypical cases and in the presence of comorbidities, diagnostic accuracy may drop substantially, with clinicopathological concordance rates sometimes as low as 62.5%[7-9]. Furthermore, it is now recognized that AD, typically presenting as an amnestic dementia syndrome, may rarely have frontal (sometimes frontotemporal-like)[10,11], posterior[10,11], language[10-12] and even corticobasal-like presentations[13,14]. Thus, the same disease may present with different phenotypes, and one phenotype may be caused by different diseases/pathologies. Mixed pathologies are not infrequent in senile cases[15], especially AD mixed with various types of vascular lesions[16], or DLB with concomitant AD pathology[17]. Such mixed pathologies may modify the clinical presentation[18,19] and the rate of disease progression[20]. In addition, some patients present very early, in a symptomatic but pre-dementia stage [mild cognitive impairment (MCI) and MCI due to AD][21]. On the other hand, when the clinical impression is against AD, there is still a 39% chance for pathological verification of AD (co)existence[22].

The above are not uncommon causes of diagnostic confusion in everyday practice. Of course, the gold standard for diagnostic verification is *post mortem* pathological examination. However, correct *ante mortem* diagnosis is necessary since it may help in predicting prognosis and it is likely to affect therapeutic decisions[23]. Thus, biomarkers are needed to serve as objective diagnostic tools during life. In the last 3 decades, various biomarkers have been developed (some being incorporated in various sets of diagnostic criteria), including structural neuroimaging (pattern of atrophy as a marker of neuronal injury), functional neuroimaging with positron emission tomography (PET), either as FDG-PET (hypometabolism as a marker of neuronal injury) or PET at least for amyloid-beta (Aβ), and CSF biomarkers[10,11]. The last have probably received the most attention.

ESTABLISHED (CORE) CSF BIOMARKERS OF AD

In an oversimplified scheme, there are two biochemical processes and pathological hallmarks of AD: (1) misfolding, oligomerization and finally polymerization and extracellular aggregation of Aβ, in the form of amyloid plaques, and (2) intracellular hyperphosphorylation and polymerization of the microtubule-associated protein tau, forming paired helical filaments which in turn aggregate in the form of neurofibrillary tangles[24,25]. The former process mobilizes various mechanisms that are toxic to neurons[26], and the second results in destabilization of microtubules and dysfunction of the cytoskeleton and of axonal transport[27]. Both processes, acting synergistically, lead to neuritic, synaptic and neuronal loss, through a vicious circle of interconnecting final pathways of oxidative stress, excitotoxicity, mitochondrial dysfunction, apoptosis and Ca^{2+}-mediated cell death[28-30], while prion-like spread[31] and neuroinflammation[32-34] are increasingly recognized as important early mechanisms.

Total tau protein (τ_T)[35], hyperphosphorylated tau, especially at a threonine residue at position 181 ($\tau_{P\text{-}181}$)[36] and Aβ peptide with 42 amino acids ($A\beta_{42}$)[37] can be quantified in the CSF. In AD, τ_T is increased, and traditionally, this is viewed as a marker of neuronal/axonal injury[38]; $\tau_{P\text{-}181}$ is also increased and this is considered a more specific marker of tangle formation[39]. On the other hand, $A\beta_{42}$ is decreased and this is considered (inversely) a marker of amyloid burden[40]. The above markers are useful in the discrimination of AD from normal aging and other dementias, and even abnormal τ_T alone may show high sensitivity and, in a few diagnostic questions, adequate specificity for the diagnosis of AD[41]. Combinations of the above biomarkers in the form of various formulas (including the Hulstaert formula[42]) or ratios (including $\tau_T/A\beta_{42}$ or $\tau_{P\text{-}181}/A\beta_{42}$[43,44]) further increase their diagnostic value.

HOW EARLY DO THE CLASSICAL BIOMARKERS BECOME ABNORMAL?

Currently, AD is viewed as a pathological or neurobiological entity, characterized by a continuum of 3 stages, starting as a preclinical ("asymptomatic at risk" or "presymptomatic") stage, which later on progresses to a symptomatic but pre-dementia stage (MCI) and finally to the dementia stage[11,45]. It seems that in most cases CSF biomarkers become abnormal during the preclinical stage of AD[45], and on the basis of studies in families with autosomal dominant AD, this may occur even 10-20 years prior to the expected age of symptom onset[46]. In patients with MCI, abnormalities are detected 5-10 years before progression to dementia[47]. Usually, the first abnormality detected is a decrease in $A\beta_{42}$, followed by an increase in τ_{P-181} and τ_T, but the reverse order may sometimes be observed[45]. Sometimes, only the $A\beta_{42}$ decrease is seen in the preclinical stage, and the increase in τ_{P-181} and τ_T is observed in the pre-dementia (MCI) stage of AD[48]. Thus, in the vast majority of patients, all 3 classical biomarkers are already abnormal when patients enter the dementia stage and in many (if not most), at the beginning of the MCI stage as well. CSF levels may continue to change during disease progression[46,48,49]. Such changes may be important from the neurochemical point of view, and it has been suggested that they may correlate with the stage of the disease[48]. However, from a diagnostic point of view, the changes compared to controls are small, and thus, these biomarkers are considered as state and not stage markers[49].

DEFINITION OF THE ALZHEIMER'S CLASSICAL CSF BIOMARKER PROFILE (SIGNATURE)

In the research diagnostic criteria for AD of the International Working Group (IWG-2), both decreased $A\beta_{42}$ and increased tau protein (either τ_T or τ_{P-181}) are considered as *in vivo* evidence of AD pathology, with sensitivities and specificities approaching or exceeding 90%[11]. However, more recent recommendations suggest that all 3 biomarkers should be abnormal[50]. Indeed, this may increase specificity, and abnormality of all 3 biomarkers is highly suggestive (and specific) of the presence of AD, while normal values of all 3 biomarkers is highly suggestive of the absence of AD pathology[50]. In patients with MCI, the combination of all 3 markers (τ_T and the $A\beta_{42}/\tau_{P-181}$ ratio) identified those harboring AD pathology with sensitivities and specificities of 95% and 87%, respectively[51].

In pathologically verified cases, the combination of $A\beta_{42}$ and τ_T identified AD patients, discriminating them from other dementias or controls with sensitivity and specificity of 90% and 89%, respectively[52], while the combination of $A\beta_{42}$ with the more specific τ_{P-181} discriminated AD from other dementias with sensitivity and specificity of 80%-88% and 93%-100%, respectively[52,53].

The above indicates that, ideally, the AD CSF biomarker signature should be defined as abnormal values of all 3 core biomarkers. However, the combination of $A\beta_{42}$ with one of the tau forms (either total or phosphorylated) may be sufficient in everyday practice.

ANSWERED AND UNANSWERED QUESTIONS

Classical AD biomarkers are useful in everyday practice since they can discriminate AD from normal aging[43] and psychiatric conditions[54]. They offer an added diagnostic value in everyday differential diagnosis of dementia patients, since they increase diagnostic confidence[41] and correctly identify the presence or absence of AD in 82% of patients with uncertain clinical diagnosis[55]. They can be useful in the differential diagnosis between AD and FTD[56], and they can identify the additional presence or absence of AD in patients with cerebrovascular disease and dementia[44], including subcortical small vessel disease[57]. These biomarkers may also determine the additional presence of AD in patients with DLB[58] and those with normal pressure hydrocephalus[59]. Additionally, they can identify the presence or absence of AD biochemical process in patients with certain cognitive and/or parkinsonian syndromes such as primary progressive aphasia[12], posterior cortical atrophy[60] and corticobasal syndrome[13].

Of course, CSF AD biomarkers are not standalone tools, and they should be used in conjunction with clinical, imaging, neuropsychological and other biochemical data to reach the correct diagnosis[11]. Keeping that in mind, CSF $A\beta_{42}$, τ_T and τ_{P-181} fulfill most of the criteria required for valid biomarkers[61], since they reflect key biochemical mechanisms of AD, and combined, they provide sensitivities and specificities greater than 80%-85%. Sampling needs lumbar puncture, which is less agreeable than urine or blood sampling. However, it is a minimally invasive procedure, usually well-tolerated and with a low incidence of post-lumbar puncture headache (< 4.5%) in dementia patients[43,62]. Thus, the 3 core CSF biomarkers were gradually incorporated in research and/or clinical diagnostic criteria for AD in the dementia (typical or atypical presentations)[10,11,63], MCI[11,64] and preclinical stages[65], and if testing is available, they are currently considered as part of the diagnostic workup of cognitive disorders, especially in ambiguous cases[66-68]. Since new disease-modifying or preventive treatments are currently underway, CSF biomarkers may be used for the selection of patients suitable for clinical trials across all stages of AD (including the preclinical stage) and/or for monitoring treatment effects[69,70].

With time, it has become evident that biomarkers can detect CSF signatures different from the one observed in AD. The term "suspected non-Alzheimer pathophysiology" (SNAP) was introduced for a biomarker profile with normal $A\beta_{42}$ but an abnormal marker of neuronal injury or neurodegeneration, while the term "primary age-related tauopathy" has been used for the tau pathology picture in the medial temporal lobe (hippocampus, entorhinal cortex), with or without minimal Aβ pathology[71]. In patients with normal $A\beta_{42}$, the $A\beta_{42}/A\beta_{40}$ ratio may be used to confirm the absence of amyloid abnormality, since it "corrects" observed $A\beta_{42}$ levels for the total level of $A\beta_{40}$ (the most abundant form of Aβ peptide)[67,72]. When amyloid normality is confirmed, AD becomes unlikely[50] and tauopathies, TDP-43 proteinopathies and other pathologies may be considered to explain SNAP cases[73]. Controversies and questions concerning the "non-AD" biomarker profiles and the underlying pathologies have led to a modification of the 2011 National Institute on Aging and Alzheimer's Association separate recommendations[10,64,65], to a unified biological definition of AD across all stages and incorporating the various possible biomarker profiles and disease categories (AD or non-AD)[74]. This incorporation of "extended" biomarker profiles in diagnostic recommendations, may prove useful in many atypical presentations, including patients resembling or even fulfilling criteria for AD, but without the expected AD CSF biomarker signature, although biomarker levels may remain conflicting in occasional patients.

Another profile which may be observed is characterized by abnormality (reduction) of only $A\beta_{42}$, while τ_T and τ_{P-181} being normal. In this case, the $A\beta_{42}/A\beta_{40}$ may be used to confirm or exclude amyloid abnormality. If amyloid reduction is confirmed, AD pathology may be less likely in patients with full-blown dementia, but it is still a possibility, especially in pre-dementia patients[50] and may be compatible with the "AD pathological change"[74]. This profile may also be observed in vascular cognitive decline[57] and in Lewy body synucleinopathies, including PD, PDD and especially DLB[75].

Furthermore, there is always the problem of mixed pathologies, especially in the elderly. In a patient with a clinical picture suggestive of DLB, the identification of the typical AD CSF signature, may indicate mixed synucleinopathy with concomitant AD pathology[11,76], but cases of AD with unusual DLB-like presentations have been described[77]. Even in the most common scenario of mixed pathology, the question arises as to whether it represents DLB with some degree of AD pathology, AD with some degree of Lewy-pathology or equally severe pathology of both types[58]. Similarly, in a patient with a FTD-like clinical picture, the identification of the typical AD CSF signature may serve as exclusion criterion for FTD[78], suggesting AD with an atypical clinical presentation (frontal variant)[11], but mixed pathology cannot be excluded, since patients with concomitant FTD and AD do exist[79].

Some patients may show borderline or gray-zone levels in one or more of the classical biomarkers. The $\tau_T/A\beta_{42}$ and $\tau_{P-181}/A\beta_{42}$ ratios may be of some help in such patients[12], but not always. The "Erlangen Score",

which depends on normal, border-zone or abnormal biomarker levels, has been suggested to determine the level of neurochemical probability for (or against) AD in both dementia[80] and pre-dementia stages[81].

In case of atypical, conflicting or inconclusive CSF biomarker results, other neurochemical and/or imaging biomarkers, and/or later repetition of CSF sampling and analysis may be necessary[50].

VARIABILITY OF BIOMARKER RESULTS

Despite intensive research, there is still a significant inter- and intra-laboratory variability in the results of biomarker level determination, as a result of pre-analytical, analytical, post-analytical and kit-related factors, even between laboratories using the same methods[82-86]. During the last decade, various international initiatives, quality control programs and international workshops have been organized to reduce variability and harmonize the levels of biomarkers[67,82,83], including the "Biomarkers for Alzheimer's disease and Parkinson's disease" project of the Joint Programming Neurodegenerative Disease (JPND-BIOMARKAPD)[87]. As a result, recommendations have been published regarding lumbar puncture, pre-analytical and analytical standardized operating procedures[82,88-90], leading to improvement in diagnostic performance and reduction of measurement errors[91]. Although a measurement error of ± 20% in only one of the three biomarkers may have a minimal effect on overall diagnostic performance in everyday practice (variability ≤ 8%), errors of greater magnitude and/or affecting more than one biomarker, may lead to a significant decrease in diagnostic accuracy[92]. Newer methods for the determination of classical biomarkers may show better repeatability and reproducibility and less inter-laboratory variability[66,93].

NEW AND EMERGING BIOMARKERS FOR AD AND OTHER DISORDERS

Among many molecules studied in AD, neurogranin, neurofilament light (NFL), the ectodomain of triggering receptor expressed on myeloid cells 2 (sTREM2) and visinin-like protein 1 (VILIP-1) may serve as markers of synaptic loss, neuronal/axonal damage, microglial activation and neurodegeneration, respectively[66-68].

Recently, promising results have been published for CSF TDP-43 in patients with FTD and/or amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)[94-96]. The $\tau_{P\text{-}181}/\tau_T$ ratio has been suggested as another marker, which may prove helpful in the identification of FTD pathology[97], but its combination with TDP-43 may increase its diagnostic value even more[95]. NFL may also have some value in patients with FTD and/or ALS[66]. Further studies are needed, and they are in progress, both for validation and standardization of TDP-43 methods and for identifying the optimum combination of TDP-43 with other biomarkers for *in vivo* detection of the FTD subtype.

Alpha-synuclein (α-syn) has been studied as a biomarker of Lewy body synucleinopathies, in the differential diagnosis of cognitive and/or movement disorders[98,99]. Several studies have revealed that in synucleinopathies such as DLB, CSF α-syn levels are reduced, as compared to controls or AD[100,101]. However, increased levels in DLB *vs.* AD[102] or PDD[103] have also been reported, especially of oligomeric α-syn[104], while for PD or PDD, a non-significant reduction was too small to achieve diagnostic significance *vs.* controls and other movement disorders[13] or AD[103]. The above discrepancies indicate that, despite intensive research, there are methodological problems in α-syn quantification. Determination of α-syn needs strict pre-analytical control for confounding factors (especially bloody CSF), while assay parameters such as antibodies used, and forms of α-syn detected, necessitate further studies before one or more robust tests become widely acceptable[99,105].

CONCLUDING REMARKS

Classical CSF biomarkers of AD are useful tools in the (differential) diagnosis of patients with cognitive decline, especially in early or atypical cases [Table 1]. They are useful in differentiating AD from normal

Table 1. Levels of classical cerebrospinal fluid Alzheimer's disease biomarkers in various cognitive disorders

	$A\beta_{42}$ or $A\beta_{42}/A\beta_{40}$	Total tau (τ_T)	Phospho-tau*
Alzheimer's disease	Decreased	Increased	Increased
Vascular cognitive impairment	May be decreased in some patients	May be increased in some patients	Normal
Frontotemporal dementia	May rarely be decreased	May be increased in some patients	May be increased in some patients
Dementia with Lewy bodies	Frequently decreased	May be increased in some patients	Normal
Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease	May be decreased in some patients	Extremely increased	Normal
Normal aging	Normal	Normal	Normal
Psychiatric disorders	Normal	Normal	Normal

Based on the references cited throughout the text. *Usually for $\tau_{P\text{-}181}$, others have also been suggested

aging, psychiatric disorders such as depression, pure vascular cognitive impairment, pure DLB and FTD, and they can identify atypical and misleading clinical presentations of AD, or the coexistence of AD in other primary (such as VCI or DLB) or secondary cognitive disorders[12,14,44,54,56-59]. However, they should always be used in combination with clinical, neuropsychological and imaging data[15], and due to variability of measurements, each laboratory should establish their own normal or cut-off values[66].

CSF biomarkers detect normal or abnormal biochemistry, offering (during life) an alternative to post-mortem pathology and showing a very good concordance with pathological diagnosis[66]. Thus, many, if not most, of patients can be correctly diagnosed. However, borderline or inconclusive results may occur in some patients, requiring repetition of measurements and/or use of additional biomarkers[50,96,102]. Furthermore, classical CSF biomarkers cannot accurately detect mixed degenerative pathologies, which are not unusual in older patients. For example, the identification of an AD biomarker profile in a patient with dementia, parkinsonism and hallucinations, may indicate an atypical clinical presentation of AD, AD with some additional Lewy bodies, DLB with some additional AD-type pathology, or a severe degree of both pathologies[58]. This further necessitates the use of additional biomarkers (in the above case, α-syn). Unfortunately, methodological issues requiring further investigation prevent some of the newer biomarkers such as α-syn and TDP-43 to be currently considered "established".

The 3 classical AD biomarkers (τ_T, $A\beta_{42}$ and $\tau_{P\text{-}181}$) become 4 by adding $A\beta_{40}$. Adding NFL, α-syn, TDP-43 and others increases the number to at least 7. Adding them to structural and functional neuroimaging and possibly to genetic biomarkers, leads to a tempting increase of available data for patients; unfortunately, there is an even more substantial increase in cost, while the diagnostic accuracy may not be equally increased in some patients. Instead of an "all for all" approach, a personalized, precision medicine approach may be more appropriate[106], while blood biomarkers may be adequate for some patients[107].

The ability to detect the AD CSF biochemical signature in pre-dementia and especially in pre-symptomatic subjects, raises some ethical issues[108]. Communication of a positive result in a non-demented subject may have adverse effects in quality of life and trigger significant emotional reactions[109]. Since the time of appearance of the initial vague symptom(s) is usually unpredictable, many authorities consider it inappropriate to perform such diagnostic tests in the majority of asymptomatic subjects (including families with autosomal dominant AD). However, other subjects prefer disclosure of the results, so that they can adjust their life accordingly (including measures for secondary prevention) or make important decisions before dementia affects their judgment[110]. Such parameters should be taken into consideration before determining CSF biomarkers and/or communicating results, especially in research settings[108].

On the other hand, early detection is important in correct classification of subjects in trials of disease-modifying approaches, which may be effective when given in pre-symptomatic stages of AD. Since such trials are usually multicenter, stability, robustness and harmonization of methods and results, regulatory guidance, operator training, quality control programs, strict adherence to recommendations for

standardized operating procedures and harmonization of diagnostic criteria used, as well as well-organized and secure patient data sharing, are all required and pose challenges that should be faced by specialized centers[111].

DECLARATIONS

Authors' contributions

The author contributed solely to the article.

Availability of data and materials

Not applicable.

Financial support and sponsorship

None.

Conflicts of interest

The author declared that there are no conflicts of interest.

Ethical approval and consent to participate

Not applicable.

Consent for publication

Not applicable.

Copyright

© The Author(s) 2020.

REFERENCES

1. Pierce AL, Bullain SS, Kawas CH. Late-onset Alzheimer disease. Neurol Clin 2017;35:283-93.
2. Wallin A, Román GC, Esiri M, Kettunen P, Svensson J, et al. Update on vascular cognitive impairment associated with subcortical small-vessel disease. J Alzheimers Dis 2018;62:1417-41.
3. Galasko D. Lewy body disorders. Neurol Clin 2017;35:325-38.
4. Karageorgiou E, Miller BL. Frontotemporal lobar degeneration: a clinical approach. Semin Neurol 2014;34:189-201.
5. McKhann G, Drachman D, Folstein M, Katzman R, Price D, et al. Clinical diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease: report of the NINCDS-ADRDA Work Group under the auspices of Department of Health and Human Services Task Force on Alzheimer's Disease. Neurology 1984;34:939-44.
6. Lopez OL, Becker JT, Klunk W, Saxton J, Hamilton RL, et al. Research evaluation and diagnosis of probable Alzheimer's disease over the last two decades: I. Neurology 2000;55:1854-62.
7. Risse SC, Raskind MA, Nochlin D, Sumi SM, Lampe TH, et al. Neuropathological findings in patients with clinical diagnoses of probable Alzheimer's disease. Am J Psychiatry 1990;147:168-71.
8. Mendez M, Mastri AR, Sung JH, Frey WH. Clinically diagnosed Alzheimer's disease: neuropathologic findings in 650 cases. Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord 1992;6:35-43.
9. Gilleard CJ, Kellett JM, Coles JA, Millard PH, Honavar M, et al. The St. George's dementia bed investigation study: a comparison of clinical and pathological diagnosis. Acta Psychiatr Scand 1992;85:264-69.
10. McKhann GM, Knopman DS, Chertkow H, Hyman BT, Jack CR Jr, et al. The diagnosis of dementia due to Alzheimer's disease: recommendations from the National Institute on Aging-Alzheimer's Association workgroups on diagnostic guidelines for Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimers Dement 2011;7:263-69.
11. Dubois B, Feldman HH, Jacova C, Hampel H, Molinuevo JL, et al. Advancing research diagnostic criteria for Alzheimer's disease: the IWG-2 criteria. Lancet Neurol 2014;13:614-29.
12. Paraskevas GP, Kaselimis D, Kourtidou E, Constantinides V, Bougea A, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers as a diagnostic tool of the underlying pathology of primary progressive aphasia. J Alzheimers Dis 2017;55:1453-61.
13. Constantinides VC, Paraskevas GP, Emmanouilidou E, Petropoulou O, Bougea A, et al. CSF biomarkers β-amyloid, tau proteins and a-synuclein in the differential diagnosis of Parkinson-plus syndromes. J Neurol Sci 2017;382:91-5.
14. Constantinides VC, Paraskevas GP, Efthymiopoulou E, Stefanis L, Kapaki E. Clinical, neuropsychological and imaging characteristics of

Alzheimer's disease patients presenting as corticobasal syndrome. J Neurol Sci 2019;398:142-7.
15. Paraskevas GP, Constantinides VC, Pyrgelis ES, Kapaki E. Mixed small vessel disease in a patient with dementia with Lewy bodies. Brain Sci 2019;9:E159.
16. Wallin A, Nordlund A, Jonsson M, Blennow K, Zetterberg H, et al. Alzheimer's disease-subcortical vascular disease spectrum in a hospital-based setting: Overview of results from the Gothenburg MCI and dementia studies. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 2016;36:95-113.
17. Peavy GM, Edland SD, Toole BM, Hansen LA, Galasko DR, et al. Phenotypic differences based on staging of Alzheimer's neuropathology in autopsy-confirmed dementia with Lewy bodies. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 2016;31:72-8.
18. van der Zande JJ, Steenwijk MD, Ten Kate M, Wattjes MP, Scheltens P, et al. Gray matter atrophy in dementia with Lewy bodies with and without concomitant Alzheimer's disease pathology. Neurobiol Aging 2018;71:171-8.
19. Savica R, Beach TG, Hentz JG, Sabbagh MN, Serrano GE, et al. Lewy body pathology in Alzheimer's disease: A clinicopathological prospective study. Acta Neurol Scand 2019;139:76-81.
20. Lemstra AW, de Beer MH, Teunissen CE, Schreuder C, Scheltens P, et al. Concomitant AD pathology affects clinical manifestation and survival in dementia with Lewy bodies. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 2017;88:113-8.
21. Bennett D, Schneider J, Bienias J, Evans DA, Wilson RS. Mild cognitive impairment is related to Alzheimer pathology and cerebral infarctions. Neurology 2005;64:834-41.
22. Galasko D, Hansen LA, Katzman R, Wiederholt W, Masliah E, et al. Clinical-neuropathological correlations in Alzheimer's disease and related dementias. Arch Neurol 1994;51:888-95.
23. Johnell K, Religa D, Eriksdotter M. Differences in drug therapy between dementia disorders in the Swedish dementia registry: a nationwide study of over 7,000 patients. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 2013;35:239-48.
24. Jellinger KA, Bancher C. Neuropathology of Alzheimer's disease: a critical update. J Neural Transm Suppl 1998;54:77-95.
25. Bancher C, Paulus W, Paukner K, Jellinger K. Neuropathologic diagnosis of Alzheimer disease: consensus between practicing neuropathologists? Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord 1997;11:207-19.
26. Forloni G. beta-Amyloid neurotoxicity. Funct Neurol 1993;8:211-25.
27. Iqbal K, Alonso A, Gong C, Khatoon S, Kudo T, et al. Molecular pathology of Alzheimer neurofibrillary degeneration. Acta Neurobiol Exp (Wars) 1993;53:325-35.
28. Choi BH. Oxidative stress and Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging 1995;16:675-8.
29. Smith-Swintosky VL, Mattson MP. Glutamate, beta-amyloid precursor proteins, and calcium mediated neurofibrillary degeneration. J Neural Transm Suppl 1994;44:29-45.
30. Stege GJ, Bosman GJ. The biochemistry of Alzheimer's disease. Drugs Aging 1999;14:437-46.
31. Gonzalez B, Abud EM, Abud AM, Poon WW, Gylys KH. Tau spread, apolipoprotein e, inflammation, and more: rapidly evolving basic science in Alzheimer disease. Neurol Clin 2017;35:175-90.
32. Rietdijk CD, van Wezel RJA, Garssen J, Kraneveld AD. Neuronal toll-like receptors and neuro-immunity in Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease and stroke. Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation 2016;3:27-37.
33. Burns LH, Wang HY. Altered filamin A enables amyloid beta-induced tau hyperphosphorylation and neuroinflammation in Alzheimer's disease. Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation 2017;4:263-71.
34. Rentzos M, Zoga M, Paraskevas GP, Kapaki E, Rombos A, et al. IL-15 is elevated in cerebrospinal fluid of patients with Alzheimer's disease and frontotemporal dementia. J Geriatr Psychiatry Neurol 2006;19:114-7.
35. Vandermeeren M, Mercken M, Vanmechelen E, Six J, van de Voorde A, et al. Detection of tau proteins in normal and Alzheimer's disease cerebrospinal fluid with a sensitive sandwich enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. J Neurochem 1993;61:1828-34.
36. Vanmechelen E, Vanderstichele H, Davidsson P, Van Kerschaver E, Van Der Perre B, et al. Quantification of tau phosphorylated at threonine 181 in human cerebrospinal fluid: a sandwich ELISA with a synthetic phosphopeptide for standardization. Neurosci Lett 2000;285:49-52.
37. Vanderstichele H, Van Kerschaver E, Hesse C, Davidsson P, Buyse MA, et al. Standardization of measurement of beta-amyloid(1-42) in cerebrospinal fluid and plasma. Amyloid 2000;7:245-58.
38. Blennow K, Wallin A, Agren H, Spenger C, Siegfried J, et al. Tau protein in cerebrospinal fluid: a biochemical marker for axonal degeneration in Alzheimer disease? Mol Chem Neuropathol 1995;26:231-45.
39. Vanderstichele H, De Vreese K, Blennow K, Andreasen N, Sindic C, et al. Analytical performance and clinical utility of the INNOTEST PHOSPHO-TAU181P assay for discrimination between Alzheimer's disease and dementia with Lewy bodies. Clin Chem Lab Med 2006;44:1472-80.
40. Sjögren M, Minthon L, Davidsson P, Granérus AK, Clarberg A, et al. CSF levels of tau, beta-amyloid(1-42) and GAP-43 in frontotemporal dementia, other types of dementia and normal aging. J Neural Transm (Vienna) 2000;107:563-79.
41. Paraskevas GP, Kapaki E, Liappas I, Theotoka I, Mamali I, et al. The diagnostic value of cerebrospinal fluid tau protein in dementing and nondementing neuropsychiatric disorders. J Geriatr Psychiatry Neurol 2005;18:163-73.
42. Hulstaert F, Blennow K, Ivanoiu A, Schoonderwaldt HC, Riemenschneider M, et al. Improved discrimination of AD patients using beta-amyloid(1-42) and tau levels in CSF. Neurology 1999;52:1555-62.
43. Kapaki E, Paraskevas GP, Zalonis I, Zournas C. CSF tau protein and beta-amyloid (1-42) in Alzheimer's disease diagnosis: discrimination from normal ageing and other dementias in the Greek population. Eur J Neurol 2003;10:119-28.
44. Paraskevas GP, Kapaki E, Papageorgiou SG, Kalfakis N, Andreadou E, et al. CSF biomarker profile and diagnostic value in vascular dementia. Eur J Neurol 2009;16:205-11.
45. Jack CR Jr, Holtzman DM. Biomarker modeling of Alzheimer's disease. Neuron 2013;80:1347-58.

46. Fagan AM, Xiong C, Jasielec MS, Bateman RJ, Goate AM, et al. Longitudinal change in CSF biomarkers in autosomal-dominant Alzheimer's disease. Sci Transl Med 2014;6:226ra30.
47. Buchhave P, Minthon L, Zetterberg H, Wallin AK, Blennow K, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid levels of β-amyloid 1-42, but not of tau, are fully changed already 5 to 10 years before the onset of Alzheimer dementia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 2012;69:98-106.
48. Park JE, Choi KY, Kim BC, Choi SM, Song MK, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers for the diagnosis of prodromal Alzheimer's disease in amnestic mild cognitive impairment. Dement Geriatr Cogn Dis Extra 2019;9:100-13.
49. Buchhave P, Blennow K, Zetterberg H, Stomrud E, Londos E, et al. Longitudinal study of CSF biomarkers in patients with Alzheimer's disease. PLoS One 2009;4:e6294.
50. Simonsen AH, Herukka SK, Andreasen N, Baldeiras I, Bjerke M, et al. Recommendations for CSF AD biomarkers in the diagnostic evaluation of dementia. Alzheimers Dement 2017;13:274-84.
51. Hansson O, Zetterberg H, Buchhave P, Londos E, Blennow K, et al. Association between CSF biomarkers and incipient Alzheimer's disease in patients with mild cognitive impairment: a follow-up study. Lancet Neurol 2006;5:228-34.
52. Engelborghs S, De Vreese K, Van de Casteele T, Vanderstichele H, Van Everbroeck B, et al. Diagnostic performance of a CSF-biomarker panel in autopsy-confirmed dementia. Neurobiol Aging 2008;29:1143-59.
53. Seeburger JL, Holder DJ, Combrinck M, Joachim C, Laterza O, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers distinguish postmortem-confirmed Alzheimer's disease from other dementias and healthy controls in the OPTIMA cohort. J Alzheimers Dis 2015;44:525-39.
54. Kapaki E, Liappas I, Paraskevas GP, Theotoka I, Rabavilas A. The diagnostic value of tau protein, beta-amyloid (1-42) and their ratio for the discrimination of alcohol-related cognitive disorders from Alzheimer's disease in the early stages. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry 2005;20:722-9.
55. Le Bastard N, Martin JJ, Vanmechelen E, Vanderstichele H, De Deyn PP, et al. Added diagnostic value of CSF biomarkers in differential dementia diagnosis. Neurobiol Aging 2010;31:1867-76.
56. Kapaki E, Paraskevas GP, Papageorgiou SG, Bonakis A, Kalfakis N, et al. Diagnostic value of CSF biomarker profile in frontotemporal lobar degeneration. Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord 2008;22:47-53.
57. Wallin A, Kapaki E, Boban M, Engelborghs S, Hermann DM, et al. Biochemical markers in vascular cognitive impairment associated with subcortical small vessel disease - A consensus report. BMC Neurol 2017;17:102.
58. Paraskevas GP, Bougea A, Constantinides VC, Bourbouli M, Petropoulou O, et al. In vivo prevalence of Alzheimer biomarkers in dementia with Lewy bodies. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 2019;47:289-96.
59. Kapaki EN, Paraskevas GP, Tzerakis NG, Sfagos C, Seretis A, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid tau, phospho-tau181 and beta-amyloid1-42 in idiopathic normal pressure hydrocephalus: a discrimination from Alzheimer's disease. Eur J Neurol 2007;14:168-73.
60. Ossenkoppele R, Mattsson N, Teunissen CE, Barkhof F, Pijnenburg Y, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers and cerebral atrophy in distinct clinical variants of probable Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging 2015;36:2340-47.
61. The Ronald and Nancy Reagan Research Institute of the Alzheimer's Association and the National Institute on Aging Working Group. Consensus report of the working Group on: "Molecular and Biochemical Markers of Alzheimer's Disease". Neurobiol Aging 1998;19:109-16.
62. Andreasen N, Minthon L, Davidsson P, Vanmechelen E, Vanderstichele H, et al. Evaluation of CSF-tau and CSF-Abeta42 as diagnostic markers for Alzheimer disease in clinical practice. Arch Neurol 2001;58:373-9.
63. Waldemar G, Dubois B, Emre M, Georges J, McKeith IG, et al. Recommendations for the diagnosis and management of Alzheimer's disease and other disorders associated with dementia: EFNS guideline. Eur J Neurol 2007;14:e1-26.
64. Albert MS, DeKosky ST, Dickson D, Dubois B, Feldman HH, et al. The diagnosis of mild cognitive impairment due to Alzheimer's disease: recommendations from the National Institute on Aging-Alzheimer's Association workgroups on diagnostic guidelines for Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimers Dement 2011;7:270-9.
65. Sperling RA, Aisen PS, Beckett LA, Bennett DA, Craft S, et al. Toward defining the preclinical stages of Alzheimer's disease: recommendations from the National Institute on Aging-Alzheimer's Association workgroups on diagnostic guidelines for Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimers Dement 2011;7:280-92.
66. Lewczuk P, Riederer P, O'Bryant SE, Verbeek MM, Dubois B, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid and blood biomarkers for neurodegenerative dementias: An update of the Consensus of the Task Force on Biological Markers in Psychiatry of the World Federation of Societies of Biological Psychiatry. World J Biol Psychiatry 2018;19:244-328.
67. Blennow K, Zetterberg H. The past and the future of Alzheimer's disease fluid biomarkers. J Alzheimers Dis 2018;62:1125-40.
68. Molinuevo JL, Ayton S, Batrla R, Bednar MM, Bittner T, et al. Current state of Alzheimer's fluid biomarkers. Acta Neuropathol 2018;136:821-53.
69. Isaac M, Vamvakas S, Abadie E, Jonsson B, Gispen C, et al. Qualification opinion of novel methodologies in the predementia stage of Alzheimer's disease: cerebro-spinal-fluid related biomarkers for drugs affecting amyloid burden-regulatory considerations by European Medicines Agency focusing in improving benefit/risk in regulatory trials. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 2011;21:781-8.
70. Cavedo E, Lista S, Khachaturian Z, Aisen P, Amouyel P, et al. The road ahead to cure Alzheimer's disease: development of biological markers and Neuroimaging methods for prevention trials across all stages and target populations. J Prev Alzheimers Dis 2014;1:181-202.
71. Jack CR Jr. PART and SNAP. Acta Neuropathol 2014;128:773-6.
72. Lewczuk P, Lelental N, Spitzer P, Maler JM, Kornhuber J. Amyloid b 42/40 CSF concentration ratio in the diagnostics of Alzheimer's disease: validation of two novel assays. J Alzheimers Dis 2015;43:183-91.
73. Jack CR Jr, Knopman DS, Chételat G, Dickson D, Fagan AM, et al. Suspected non-Alzheimer disease pathophysiology–concept and controversy. Nat Rev Neurol 2016;12:117-24.

74. Jack CR Jr, Bennett DA, Blennow K, Carrillo MC, Dunn B, et al. NIA-AA Research Framework: Toward a biological definition of Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimers Dement 2018;14:535-62.
75. van Steenoven I, Aarsland D, Weintraub D, Londos E, Blanc F, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid Alzheimer's disease biomarkers across the spectrum of Lewy body diseases: results from a large multicenter cohort. J Alzheimers Dis 2016;54:287-95.
76. McKeith IG, Boeve BF, Dickson DW, Halliday G, Taylor JP, et al. Diagnosis and management of dementia with Lewy bodies: Fourth consensus report of the DLB Consortium. Neurology 2017;89:88-100.
77. Skogseth R, Hortobágyi T, Soennesyn H, Chwiszczuk L, Ffytche D, et al. Accuracy of clinical diagnosis of dementia with Lewy bodies versus neuropathology. J Alzheimers Dis 2017;59:1139-52.
78. Rascovsky K, Hodges JR, Knopman D, Mendez MF, Kramer JH, et al Sensitivity of revised diagnostic criteria for the behavioural variant of frontotemporal dementia. Brain 2011;134:2456-77.
79. Lleó A, Irwin DJ, Illán-Gala I, McMillan CT, Wolk DA, et al. A 2-Step Cerebrospinal algorithm for the selection of frontotemporal lobar degeneration subtypes. JAMA Neurol 2018;75:738-45.
80. Lewczuk P, Zimmermann R, Wiltfang J, Kornhuber J. Neurochemical dementia diagnostics: a simple algorithm for interpretation of the CSF biomarkers. J Neural Transm 2009;116:1163-7.
81. Lewczuk P, Kornhuber J, Toledo JB, Trojanowski JQ, Knapik-Czajka M, et al. Validation of the Erlangen score algorithm for the prediction of the development of dementia due to Alzheimer's disease in pre-dementia subjects. J Alzheimers Dis 2015;48:433-41.
82. Teunissen CE, Verwey NA, Kester MI, van Uffelen K, Blankenstein MA. Standardization of assay procedures for analysis of the CSF biomarkers amyloid β(1-42), tau, and phosphorylated tau in Alzheimer's disease: report of an international workshop. Int J Alzheimers Dis 2010;2010:635053.
83. Mattsson N, Andreasson U, Persson S, Arai H, Batish SD, et al. The Alzheimer's Association external quality control program for cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers. Alzheimers Dement 2011;7:386-95.e6.
84. Kang JH, Korecka M, Toledo JB, Trojanowski JQ, Shaw LM. Clinical utility and analytical challenges in measurement of cerebrospinal fluid amyloid-β(1-42) and τ proteins as Alzheimer disease biomarkers. Clin Chem 2013;59:903-16.
85. Mattsson N, Andreasson U, Persson S, Carrillo MC, Collins S, et al.; Alzheimer's Association QC Program Work Group. CSF biomarker variability in the Alzheimer's Association quality control program. Alzheimers Dement 2013;9:251-61.
86. Vos SJ, Visser PJ, Verhey F, Aalten P, Knol D, et al. Variability of CSF Alzheimer's disease biomarkers: implications for clinical practice. PLoS One 2014;9:e100784.
87. Biomarkers for Alzheimer's disease and Parkinson's disease project of the Joint Programming Neurodegenerative Disease (JPND-BIOMARKAPD) 2012. Available from: http://www.neurodegenerationresearch.eu/fileadmin/Project_Fact_Sheets/PDFs/Biomarkers/BIOMARKAPD_Fact_Sheet_Template.pdf [Last accessed on 15 May 2020]
88. Engelborghs S, Niemantsverdriet E, Struyfs H, Blennow K, Brouns R, et al. Consensus guidelines for lumbar puncture in patients with neurological diseases. Alzheimers Dement 2017;8:111-26.
89. del Campo M, Mollenhauer B, Bertolotto A, Engelborghs S, Hampel H, et al. Recommendations to standardize preanalytical confounding factors in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's disease cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers: an update. Biomark Med 2012;6:419-30.
90. Le Bastard N, De Deyn PP, Engelborghs S. Importance and impact of preanalytical variables on Alzheimer disease biomarker concentrations in cerebrospinal fluid. Clin Chem 2015;61:734-43.
91. Bourbouli M, Kapaki E, Petropoulou O, Paraskevas GP. Improved Performance of CSF dementia biomarker measurements over time: the effect of quality control and harmonization programs. Biomark Applic 2018:BMAP-126.
92. Niemantsverdriet E, Goossens J, Struyfs H, Martin JJ, Goeman J, et al. Diagnostic impact of cerebrospinal fluid biomarker (pre-) analytical variability in Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimers Dis 2016;51:97-106.
93. Lifke V, Kollmorgen G, Manuilova E, Oelschlaegel T, Hillringhaus L, et al. Elecsys® Total-Tau and Phospho-Tau (181P) CSF assays: analytical performance of the novel, fully automated immunoassays for quantification of tau proteins in human cerebrospinal fluid. Clin Biochem 2019;72:30-8.
94. Junttila A, Kuvaja M, Hartikainen P, Siloaho M, Helisalmi S, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid TDP-43 in frontotemporal lobar degeneration and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis patients with and without the C9ORF72 hexanucleotide expansion. Dement Geriatr Cogn Dis Extra 2016;6:142-9.
95. Bourbouli M, Rentzos M, Bougea A, Zouvelou V, Constantinides VC, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid TAR DNA-binding protein 43 combined with Tau proteins as a candidate biomarker for amyotrophic lateral sclerosis and frontotemporal dementia spectrum disorders. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 2017;44:144-52.
96. Paraskevas GP, Bourbouli M, Zaganas I, Kapaki E. The emerging TDP-43 proteinopathy. Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation 2018;5:17.
97. Pijnenburg YA, Verwey NA, van der Flier WM, Scheltens P, Teunissen CE. Discriminative and prognostic potential of cerebrospinal fluid phosphoTau/tau ratio and neurofilaments for frontotemporal dementia subtypes. Alzheimers Dementia 2015;1:505-12.
98. Mollenhauer B, El-Agnaf OM, Marcus K, Trenkwalder C, Schlossmacher MG. Quantification of alpha-synuclein in cerebrospinal fluid as a biomarker candidate: review of the literature and considerations for future studies. Biomark Med 2010;4:683-99.
99. Schade S, Mollenhauer B. Biomarkers in biological fluids for dementia with Lewy bodies. Alzheimers Res Ther 2014;6:72.
100. Laske C, Fallgatter AJ, Stransky E, Hagen K, Berg D, et al. Decreased α-synuclein serum levels in patients with Lewy body dementia compared to Alzheimer's disease patients and control subjects. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 2011;31:413-6.
101. Aarsland D, Kurz M, Beyer M, Bronnick K, Piepenstock Nore S, et al. Early discriminatory diagnosis of dementia with Lewy bodies. The emerging role of CSF and imaging biomarkers. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 2008;25:195-205.
102. Kapaki E, Paraskevas GP, Emmanouilidou E, Vekrellis K. The diagnostic value of CSF alpha-synuclein in the differential diagnosis of

dementia with Lewy bodies vs. normal subjects and patients with Alzheimer's disease. PLoS One 2013;8:e81654.
103. Bougea A, Stefanis L, Paraskevas GP, Emmanouilidou E, Efthymiopoulou E, et al. Neuropsychiatric symptoms and α-Synuclein profile of patients with Parkinson's disease dementia, dementia with Lewy bodies and Alzheimer's disease. J Neurol 2018;265:2295-301.
104. Hansson O, Hall S, Ohrfelt A, Zetterberg H, Blennow K, et al. Levels of cerebrospinal fluid α-synuclein oligomers are increased in Parkinson's disease with dementia and dementia with Lewy bodies compared to Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimers Res Ther 2014;6:25.
105. Simonsen AH, Kuiperij B, El-Agnaf OM, Engelborghs S, Herukka SK, et al. The utility of alpha-synuclein as biofluid marker in neurodegenerative diseases: a systematic review of the literature. Biomark Med 2016;10:19-34.
106. Hampel H, O'Bryant SE, Castrillo JI, Ritchie C, Rojkova K, et al. Precision medicine - the golden gate for detection, treatment and prevention of Alzheimer's disease. J Prev Alzheimers Dis 2016;3:243-59.
107. Hampel H, O'Bryant SE, Molinuevo JL, Zetterberg H, Masters CL, et al. Blood-based biomarkers for Alzheimer disease: mapping the road to the clinic. Nat Rev Neurol 2018;14:639-52.
108. Milne R, Bunnik E, Diaz A, Richard E, Badger S, et al. Perspectives on communicating biomarker-based assessments of Alzheimer's disease to cognitively healthy individuals. J Alzheimers Dis 2018;62:487-98.
109. Bunnik EM, Richard E, Milne R, Schermer MHN. On the personal utility of Alzheimer's disease-related biomarker testing in the research context. J Med Ethics 2018;44:830-4.
110. Milne R, Diaz A, Badger S, Bunnik E, Fauria K, et al. At, with and beyond risk: expectations of living with the possibility of future dementia. Sociol Health Illn 2018;40:969-87.
111. Arnerić SP, Batrla-Utermann R, Beckett L, Bittner T, Blennow K, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers for Alzheimer's disease: a view of the regulatory science qualification landscape from the coalition against major diseases CSF biomarker team. J Alzheimers Dis 2017;55:19-35.

Walker. *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:194-214
DOI: 10.20517/2347-8659.2020.09

Neuroimmunology and Neuroinflammation

Review

Open Access

Defining activation states of microglia in human brain tissue: an unresolved issue for Alzheimer's disease

Douglas G. Walker[1,2]

[1]Molecular Neuroscience Research Center, Shiga University of Medical Science, Otsu 520-2172, Japan.
[2]Neurodegenerative Disease Research Center, Biodesign Institute, Arizona State University, Tempe, AZ 85497, USA.

Correspondence to: Dr. Douglas G. Walker, Molecular Neuroscience Research Center, Shiga University of Medical Science, Seta-Tsukinowa-cho, Otsu 520-2172, Japan. E-mail: walkerdg@gmail.com; walker@belle.shiga-med.ac.jp

How to cite this article: Walker DG. Defining activation states of microglia in human brain tissue: an unresolved issue for Alzheimer's disease. *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:194-214.
http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.09

Received: 24 Jan 2020 **First Decision:** 25 Mar 2020 **Revised:** 18 May 2020 **Accepted:** 28 May 2020 **Available online:** 12 Jul 2020

Science Editor: Jeffrey Bajramovic **Copy Editor:** Cai-Hong Wang **Production Editor:** Tian Zhang

Abstract

The development of concepts concerning the role of microglia in different brain diseases has relied on studies of animal models or human brain tissue, which primarily use antibodies and immunohistochemistry techniques to make observations. Since initial studies defined increased expression of the major histocompatibility complex II protein human leukocyte antigen-DR as a means of identifying reactive, and therefore by implication, damage-causing microglia in Alzheimer's disease (AD) or Parkinson's disease (PD), understanding and describing their activation states has evolved to an unexpected complexity. It is still difficult to ascertain the specific functions of individual microglia, particularly those associated with pathological structures, using a narrow range of antigenic markers. As many approaches to developing treatments for AD or PD are focused on anti-inflammatory strategies, a more refined understanding of microglial function is needed. In recent years, gene expression studies of human and rodent microglia have attempted to add clarity to the issue by sub-classification of messenger RNA expression of cell-sorted microglia to identify disease-associated profiles from homeostatic functions. Ultimately all newly identified markers will need to be studied in situ in human brain tissue. This review will consider the gaps in knowledge between using traditional immunohistochemistry approaches with small groups of markers that can be defined with antibodies, and the findings from cell-sorted and single-cell RNA sequencing transcription profiles. There have been three approaches to studying microglia in tissue samples: using antigenic markers identified from studies of peripheral macrophages, studying proteins associated with altered genetic risk factors for disease, and studying microglial proteins identified from mRNA expression analyses from cell-sorting and gene profiling. The technical aspects of studying microglia in human brain samples, inherent issues of working with antibodies, and findings of a range of different functional microglial markers will be reviewed. In particular, we will consider

© The Author(s) 2020. **Open Access** This article is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, for any purpose, even commercially, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license, and indicate if changes were made.

markers of microglia with expression profiles that do not definitively fall into the pro-inflammatory or anti-inflammatory classification. These additional markers include triggering receptor expressed on myeloid cells-2, CD33 and progranulin, identified from genetic findings, colony stimulating factor-1 receptor, purinergic receptor P2RY12, CD68 and Toll-like receptors. Further directions will be considered for addressing crucial issues.

Keywords: Neuropathology, RNA-sequencing, TREM2, microglia, activation states, immunohistochemistry

INTRODUCTION

Alzheimer's disease (AD) and Parkinson's disease (PD) have become the most significant and feared brain diseases of elderly populations who are now enjoying longer lifespans due to more effective treatments for cancer, cardiovascular and metabolic diseases. AD is the most common cause of cognitive decline and dementia in elderly populations[1], while PD can lead to severe loss of mobility and independence, amongst other features[2]. Both diseases are significant causes of morbidity in elderly populations and share many common pathological features involving the accumulation of aggregated proteins. In AD, it is extracellular amyloid and neurofibrillary-associated phosphorylated tau neurites and tangles[3], while in PD, it is aggregated/phosphorylated alpha-synuclein accumulated into pathological inclusions[4]. These diseases are distinctive on account of the degenerative changes occurring in different brain regions; however, one common feature is the appearance of "activated" microglia within brain regions showing degenerative changes. Inflammation has become one of the targets being investigated as treatment strategies for these diseases, and the importance of studying microglia in relation to many different brain diseases is widely appreciated[5-7].

Initial antibody-based observations on "activated" microglia in postmortem brain tissues were made 30 years ago and gave rise to the inflammatory hypotheses for neurodegeneration. This is illustrated in Figure 1 and suggests that initial cell death or accumulation of aberrant/aggregated proteins [amyloid beta (Aβ), tau or alpha-synuclein (α-syn)] results in proinflammatory activation of microglia, causing the production of toxic and/or inflammatory cytokines. The resulting neurotoxicity would then accelerate further inflammation, thus exacerbating the neurodegenerative process. These concepts developed in the 80's and 90's might now be considered imprecise based on more recent findings. However, it was from this hypothesis that treatments for AD and PD with anti-inflammatory agents were developed and tested. This approach was supported by data from epidemiological studies that patients who had long-term usage of anti-inflammatory drugs for inflammatory conditions such as arthritis, had less dementia, which appeared to support the inflammatory hypothesis of AD[8]. However, although many anti-inflammatory compounds and strategies have proven effective in AD animal models, clinical trials of AD patients have generally shown no significant effect[9]. The purpose of this review is to consider the approaches used to define changes in microglial phenotypes and neuroinflammation in brain tissue, and discuss how the role of microglia in neurodegeneration should be considered in light of a wider range of markers identified from recent transcriptional profiling of microglia. The focus of this review will be on studies relating to AD, but many of the concepts might be applicable to PD, multiple sclerosis (MS) or stroke. The aim for this review is to bridge the gap between the studies that have analyzed transcription in large numbers of samples or isolated cells with *in situ* studies in human brain samples with antibodies to define the microenvironments of microglia in the specialized neuroanatomy of the human brain[10-12]. Ultimately, the best way to define the microglia responsible for damaging inflammation in brain samples will be with a single or small panel of markers that can be studied reliably in widely available types of pathological brain samples.

METHODOLOGY FOR INVESTIGATING MICROGLIAL PHENOTYPES

Antibody-based methodology for *in situ* localization of microglial antigens

Pioneering observations on microglia by Rio-Hortega[13] used traditional metal-based histological stains to

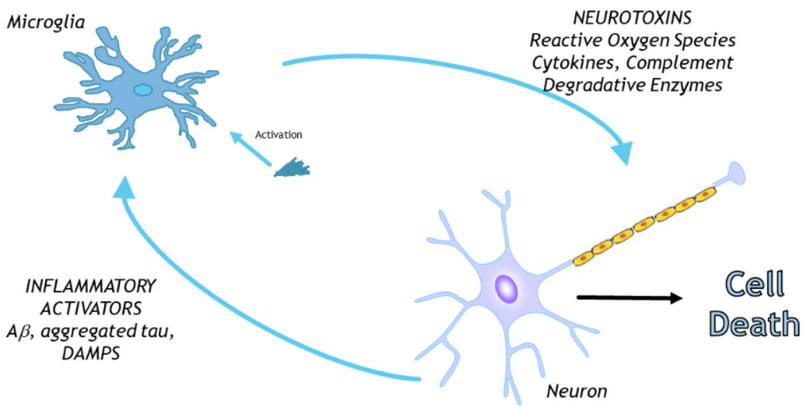


Figure 1. Hypothesis on the involvement of microglia in neurodegeneration

identify these cells. The fascinating history of their discovery has been reviewed by Tremblay *et al.*[14], but it was the use of specific antibodies in more recent times to sensitively identify microglia in human brain samples that re-launched this field of study. Studies by McGeer and colleagues employed an antibody to the major histocompatibility complex class II (MHCII) protein human leukocyte antigen-DR to identify what was described as "activated" or "reactive" microglia in AD and PD brain samples[15-18]. These types of microglia were enhanced around AD and PD pathological structures. Similar observations were made by Rogers and colleagues using the same marker[19]. Early studies highlighted recurring issues in the study of microglia in human autopsy tissue, namely with the antibodies used and the fixation methods of brain tissue samples for study[20]. Many microglial antigens, including human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-DR, are membrane-associated glycoproteins that are sensitive to tissue fixation with cross-linking fixatives such as paraformaldehyde/formalin and glutaraldehyde. The most widely available tissue samples for research are those taken for routine pathological examination and diagnosis at autopsy and usually involve long-term immersion fixation and paraffin-embedding using treatment with alcohols, xylene and similar solvents. Many validated monoclonal antibodies to macrophage/microglia antigens will not recognize them in tissue fixed in this manner, though a newer generation of antibodies, particularly monoclonal antibodies developed in rabbits, work more effectively when combined with different antigen-retrieval techniques[21]. Optimally-fixed tissue is tissue with short postmortem interval between death of donor subject and start of fixation, and a short period of fixation (48 h) of sliced brain coronal sections (not whole hemispheres) in buffered formalin/paraformaldehyde followed by preservation at 4 °C or -20 °C in an anti-freeze solution. Tissue preserved in this manner, which is then sectioned and processed for immunohistochemistry without paraffin embedding, has given optimal results for this investigator for detecting a number of different microglial proteins *in situ*[22,23].

Cell-sorting, nuclei-sorting, transcriptional profiling of inflammation and microglia

Expression profiling methods used to address this question have evolved rapidly over the last few years with RNA-sequencing becoming the predominant method of identification and quantification of genes expressed. There are now enormous amounts of data available online for carrying out analyses using various statistical criteria to identify the interactions of expressed microglial genes. For a more detailed understanding of these analytical approaches, the review of Chew and Petretto provides an overview of the different analytical approaches focusing on how the identification of transcriptional networks of microglia in AD can give insight into disease pathogenesis[10]. One observation by these authors was the lack of agreement between studies on which genes/markers should be the targets for tissue validation.

The findings from a number of RNA sequencing experiments of batch-sorted or single cell microglia isolated from AD or immune-stimulated animal models or human brain tissues will be considered. The

results have been analyzed comparing AD animals with non-transgenic control animals, or between AD and controls from aged human tissues[24]. Although the focus of this article is on understanding how to define activation states in human brains, findings from rodent models in this context have to be considered. Microglia can be directly isolated from the mouse brain by Dounce homogenization to break up tissue, filtering through 70 μm mesh, separation by magnetic beads conjugated with anti-myelin antibody to remove myelin, and then selected using a fluorescence-activated cell sorter with appropriate labeled antibodies (e.g., CD11b, CD45) to isolate immune cells, including microglia[25]. This basic approach will isolate populations of cells that can be diluted to allow the isolation of single cells or analysis in bulk. Refinements to these techniques have allowed the sorting and RNA profiling of cellular nuclei from frozen human and animal tissue samples[11,26]. Different approaches for microglial profiling are illustrated in Figure 2.

Using these approaches, it was shown that trans-membrane protein 119 (TMEM119) was a specific marker for microglia in mouse and human brains[25]. The isolation of microglia from human brains using the same methodology is possible but has some limitations. Human brain tissue is not usually amenable to Dounce homogenization and requires additional enzymatic digestion to dissociate tissue into single cells, and density gradient centrifugation to separate the myelin content from the cellular components[27]. Studies using these approaches aimed to define genes that are unique to microglia and not expressed, or expressed at low levels in blood monocytes/macrophages[28-31].

Recent important studies relating to inflammatory changes in AD brains identified a type of "disease-associated microglia" (DAM) that appear to be associated primarily with preventing inflammatory pathology rather than enhancing it[26,32,33]. Another key study involved the meta-analyses of multiple different gene profiling studies related to brain inflammation[24]. Amongst other findings, these studies confirmed TMEM119, purinergic receptor P2YR12 and fractalkine receptor CX3CR1 as markers with highly enriched expression in microglia compared to monocytes/macrophages.

DAM

The identification of DAM was primarily carried out using single cell microglia RNA sequencing in AD model mice (5xFAD) of different ages followed by validation in human tissue samples. The progressive changes in microglia phenotypes was from homeostatic (non-activated) to stage 1 DAM, which represents a state of proinflammatory activation, to stage 2 DAM, an altered phenotype that restricts neurodegenerative changes. Based on results that included the use of mice that are gene deficient (knockout) for the crucial triggering receptor expressed on myeloid cells (TREM2), it was shown that the transition from stage 1 to stage 2 DAM was dependent on Trem2 signaling. These data have implied that the activation of Trem2 signaling was protective rather than pathogenic[32]. [Gene identification primarily from studies using rodents will use the lower case abbreviation; genes primarily identified in human will use the upper-case abbreviation]. This study defined expression of genes Hexb (Beta-hexosaminidase subunit beta), Cst3 (Cystatin C), Cx3cr1 (Fractalkine receptor), Ctsd (Cathepsin D), Csf1r (Colony stimulating factor-1 receptor), Ctss (Cathepsin S), Sparc (Osteonectin), Tmsb4x (Thymosin beta-4), P2ry12 (Purinergic P2Y receptor 12), C1qa (Complement C1q subunit A), C1qb (Complement C1q subunit B) as features of homeostatic microglia. Activation and transition to stage 1 DAM involved downregulation of identified homeostatic genes Cx3cr1 (Fractalkine), P2ry12 (Purinergic 2Y receptor 12) and TMEM119 (Transmembrane Protein 119), along with P2ry13 (Purinergic P2Y receptor 13), Tgfbr1 (Transforming growth factor receptor beta 1), Txnip (Thioredoxin-interacting protein) and Glu1 (Glucoamylase 1), and upregulation of Tyrobp (TYRO protein tyrosine kinase binding protein - DAP12), Ctsb (Cathepsin B), Cstb (Cytstatin B), Ctsd (Cathepsin D) Apoe (Apolipoprotein E), B2m (Beta-2 microglobulin), Fth1 (Ferritin heavy chain-1), Timp2 (Tissue inhibitor of metalloprotease-2), H2-D1 (H2 class 1 histocompatability antigen) and Lyz2 (Lysozyme C-2). The expression of homeostatic genes C1qc (Complement C1q subunit C), C1qb, C1qa, Ctss, Hexb, Olfml3 (Olfactomedin-like 3), Csf1r and

Table 1. List of key genes described associated with disease-associated microglia

Gene	Gene	Gene
Homeostatic Microglia	**Stage 1 DAM**	**Stage 2 DAM**
[a]*Hexb*	[b]*CD33*	[c]*Trem2*
[a]*Cst3*	[b]*Cx3cr1*	[c]*Ankh*
[a]*Cx3cr1*	[b]*P2ry12*	[c]*Cd63*
Ctsd	[b]*P2ry13*	[c]*Cd9*
Csf1r	[b]*Tgfbr1*	[c]*Serpine2*
Ctss	[b]*Txnip*	[c]*Ctsz*
Sparc	[b]*Glu1*	[c]*Cd68*
Tmsb4x	[b]*Tmem119*	[c]*Cadm1*
Tmem119	[c]*Tyrobp*	[c]*Spp1*
P2ry12	[c]*Ctsb*	[c]*Cd52*
C1qa	[c]*Cstb*	[c]*Ctsa*
C1qb	[c]*Ctsd*	[c]*Clec7a*
	[c]*Apoe*	[c]*Axl*
	[c]*B2m*	[c]*Cts1*
	[c]*Fth1*	[c]*Lpl*
	[c]*Timp2*	[c]*Ccl6*
	[c]*H2-d1*	[c]*Csf1*
	[c]*Lyz2*	[c]*Hif1a*
		[c]*Cusb*
		[c]*Itgax*

See text for gene identification. [a]Core homeostatic Genes; [b]Down regulated genes; [c]Upregulated genes. DAM: disease-associated microglia

Cst3 remained unchanged between the different classes of microglia. Transition to stage 2 DAM involved upregulation of Trem2, Ankh (Progressive ankylosis protein), Cd9 (Tetraspanin), Cd63 (Tetraspanin-30), Serpine2 (Serine Protease inhibitor-2), Ctsz, Cd68 (macrosialin), Cadm1 (Cell-adhesion molecule-1), Spp1 (Secreted phosphoprotein-1), Cd52 (CD52), Ctsa, Clec7a (C-type lectin domain family 7 member A), Axl (AXL receptor tyrosine kinase), Ctsl, Lpl (Lipoprotein lipase), Ccl6 (C-C chemokine 6), Csf1 (Colony stimulating factor-1), Hif1a (Hypoxia inducible factor-1 alpha), Cusb (Cation efflux system protein CusB), Itgax (Integrin Subunit Alpha X) and Cst7 and downregulation of Cx3cr1, P2ry12, CD33 and TMEM119[32,33]. This study showed that Trem2 expression levels increased progressively upon activation from homeostatic to stage 1 and stage 2 DAM. This study chose Lpl (lipoprotein lipase), Timp2 (Tissue inhibitor of metalloprotease-2) and Itgax (CD11c) for antibody validation in human AD brain sections and showed strong expression in AD plaque-associated microglia. Lipoprotein lipase functions as a homodimer, and has the dual functions of triglyceride hydrolase and ligand/bridging factor for receptor-mediated lipoprotein uptake. Its expression is not specific for microglia/macrophage cells. Other stage 2 DAM markers that have been studied in human AD brains include TREM2 (see separate section below), CD68 and ITGAX (CD11c). There has been controversy about the significance of CD68 expression by microglia. This is a monocyte specific lysosomal-associated membrane protein that becomes upregulated with increased phagocytosis[34]. It has been considered an activation marker, but this does raise the question whether phagocytosis markers are genuine proinflammatory markers or whether increased phagocytosis is a reparative response. CD11c (a complement C3b integrin receptor CR4) is a cell adhesion and phagocytosis marker for dendritic cells. An earlier study had shown that CD11c was constitutively expressed by microglia in brain with some upregulation in reactive microglia in AD brains[35,36]. It has been considered an activation marker, but this does raise the Table 1. List of key genes associated with Disease-Associated Microglia.

The identification of ApoE as a microglial activation marker does not concur with previous immunohistochemistry results. Possession of the APOE allele e4 is the most significant risk factor for developing sporadic AD[37,38]. Subjects homozygous for APOE e4 have up to a 7-fold greater risk of

developing AD but the mechanism(s) are still unclear. The possession of APOE e4 allele has also been associated with increased inflammation in the brain but immunohistochemistry studies have identified ApoE protein in neurofibrillary tangles, amyloid plaques and reactive astrocytes[39-42], not in microglia[43]. This is surprising as human microglia in culture and isolated brain microglia express high levels of APOE mRNA and protein. It is possible that the protein is rapidly secreted by microglia after synthesis, but evidence to date does not support ApoE as a marker for describing microglial activation states in human brain tissue. Complement C1q protein has also been studied in relation to AD pathogenesis. Antibodies to C1q have reactivity with amyloid plaques and neurofibrillary tangles in human brains[44,45]. Similar to ApoE, cultured brain-isolated microglia express high levels of complement C1q protein[46], but the reason microglia do not show immunoreactivity to ApoE or C1q in brain sections is unclear.

Core transcriptional signature of human microglia

A different approach to address the question of an AD-specific microglial gene signature was carried out by analyzing 9 different datasets obtained from profiling either sorted cells or brain tissue using unbiased correction network analysis[12]. Despite the heterogeneity between the datasets, a consensus list of 249 genes was identified, and when used to compare AD *vs*. age-matched controls, 52 genes were identified. Key genes from this list were CD84 (Signaling Lymphocytic activation molecule-5), dedicator of cytokinesis 2 (DOCK2), hepatitis A virus cellular receptor 2 (HAVCR2), Fc fragment of IgG receptor IIa (FCGR2A), linker for activation of T cells family member 2 (LAT2), CD86 (B7-2), phosphatidylinositol-4,5-bisphosphate 3-kinase catalytic subunit gamma (PIK3CG), apoptosis-associated speck-like protein containing a CARD (PYCARD), tetraspanin-26 (CD37), myosin IF (MYO1F), leukocyte immunoglobulin like receptor A2 (LILRA2), protein tyrosine phosphatase receptor type C - CD45 (PTPRC), inositol polyphosphate-5-phosphatase D (INPP5D), CD33, Toll-like receptor-5 (TLR5), SH3 domain and nuclear localization signals 1 (SAMSN1), integrin alpha M chain - CD11b (ITGAM), dedicator of cytokinesis 8 - Zir3 (DOCK8), ribosomal protein S6 kinase A1 (RPS6KA1), colony stimulator factor-3 receptor (CSF3R), SLC7A7 (Y+L amino acid transporter 1), Oxidized low-density lipoprotein receptor 1 (OLR1), chemokine-like factor (CKLF), Parkin co-regulated gene protein (PARCG), lysozyme (LYZ), lymphocyte antigen 86 (LY86), arachidonate 5-lipoxygenase activating protein (ALOX5AP), Ras and Rab interactor 3 (RIN3), regulator of G-protein signaling 18 (RGS18), colony stimulating factor 2 receptor beta common subunit (CSF2RB), Rho GTPase activating protein 15 (ARHGAP15), Rho GTPase activating protein 45 (ARHGAP45), regulator of G-protein signaling 10 (RGS10), interleukin 10 receptor subunit A (IL10RA), macrophage scavenger receptor-1 (MSR1), bridging integrator-2 (BIN2), and cytokine-like 1 (CYTL1). Most of these have not been studied in AD brain tissues. Another study addressed the issue of microglial specific genes by performing meta-analysis of a number of different datasets[47]. This study only examined rodent gene datasets. Thirteen microglia-enriched genes were identified and 14 genes were differentially expressed in monocytes/macrophages.

Meta-analyses of multiple microglial-inflammation profiling studies

Complex analyses of a number of different gene expression profiling studies of different disease animal models, human diseased tissue and sorted murine and human cells identified multiple signatures (modules) for microglia associated with neurodegeneration. In human material, there appeared to be elevated expression of genes that were not observed in animal models. The microglia cluster of genes contain those more highly expressed in microglia compared to other myeloid cells, but these are not necessarily microglia-specific. The cluster contained Rho GTPase Activating Protein-5 (Arhgap5), C-C Chemokine receptor-5 (Ccr5), Sialomucin core protein 24 (Cd164), CUB and sushi multiple domains 3 (Csmd3), Cst3, Cx3cr1, Gcnt1 (Beta-1,3-galactosyl-O-glycosyl-glycoprotein beta-1,6-N-acetylglucosaminyltransferase), Golgi membrane protein-1 (Golm1), G protein-coupled receptor 155 (Gpr155), G protein-coupled receptor 34 (Gpr34), G protein-coupled receptor 56 (Gpr56), General Transcription Factor IIH Subunit 2 (Gtf2h2), LPS responsive beige-like anchor protein (LRBA), leucine-

rich repeat-containing protein (Lrrc3), Geranyltranstransferase (FPPS), microfibril-associated glycoprotein 3 (Mfap3), P2ry12, P2ry13, Plexin domain-containing protein 1 (Plxdc1), prostate transmembrane protein, androgen induced 1 (Prmepa1), Ras-related protein Rab-39 (Rab39), Spalt-like transcription factor 1 (Sali1), Selectin-P ligand, CD162 (Selplg), Siglech (SIGLEC-H), Toll-like receptor-3 (Tlr3), and TMEM119. A panel of 134 neurodegeneration-related genes were defined (for complete list refer to supplementary data in reference[24]). It was noted that 75% of these genes were associated with plasma membrane or extracellular space proteins. It was concluded that this was due to changes in the way microglia interact with the degenerative environment. Other genes included transcription factors Bhihe40 (Clast-5), retinoid X receptor gamma (Rxrγ), Hif1a and melanocyte inducing transcription factor (MITF), and 10 lysosome-associated genes including cathepsins (Ctsb, Ctsl and Ctsz). In a number of the models analyzed, increased expression of ApoE was consistently detected, and microglial responses to Aβ were highly dependent on Trem2 signaling. The central role for TREM2 in microglial responses has been demonstrated in network analysis showing TYROBP (DAP12), the essential adaptor protein that mediates TREM2 signaling, is a central hub gene for many of the above-listed inflammatory genes[31,48].

A recent publication employing single-nucleus transcriptomics combined with proteomic validation studies comparing AD model mice and human AD materials[26] showed that there were large differences in the glial phenotypes between AD mice and human AD samples. These investigators confirmed that the "Disease Associated Microglia" signature was dependent on expression of TREM2. There was increased expression of a number of "homeostatic" genes, including P2RY12, TMEM119 and CX3CR1, which have been downregulated in AD mouse models. This study also identified an amyloid-driven oligodendrocyte signature showing disruption in myelination, possibly driven by enhanced white-matter inflammation. In addition to the previously mentioned TREM2, APOE, HLA-DRA, and Alpha-2 macroglobulin (A2M), this study identified a number of additional markers that could be characterized in AD brains. These include Suppressor of Cytokine Signaling-6 (SOCS6), ZFP36 ring finger protein like 2 (ZFP36L2), SELPLG (Selectin-P ligand, CD162), sortilin related receptor 1 (SORL1), and chitinase-3-like protein 1 (CHI3L1), which were upregulated, and SLC11A1 (natural resistance-associated macrophage protein-1), S100A8 (S100 calcium binding protein A8), HAMP (Hepcidin), FTH1, SLC2A3 (Glucose transporter-3), Interleukin-1 beta (IL1B), Interferon Induced Transmembrane Protein 2 (IFITM2), S100 Calcium Binding Protein A9 (S100A9), regulator of G-protein signaling 1 (RGS1) and SLC25A37.

Differences between old and middle-aged human microglia

Noticeable differences in gene expression profiles were identified in microglia isolated from middle aged (young-mean age 53) and old brains (aged-mean age 94)[49]. This study produced RNA sequencing profiles of aged brain microglia and compared the results with those in another published study to show that 1060 genes were significantly upregulated in aged microglia and 1174 were downregulated[50]. Many of the significantly upregulated genes included those with genetic associations to AD risk [Table 2].

Prominent in the upregulated group were Cathepsin D (CTSD), Progranulin (GRN), Lymphotoxin beta receptor (LTBR), Translocator protein (TSPO), Cytochrome B245 alpha (CYBA), CD14 (LPS receptor), C1QA, C1QC and interferon regulatory factor-7 (IRF7), while prominent in the downregulated group were CD83, FLT1 (vascular endothelial growth factor receptor-1), nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells (NFKB), interleukin-1 beta (IL1B), cycloxygenase-2 (PTGS2), CCL4 (macrophage inflammatory protein-1 beta), CCL2 (monocyte chemoattractant protein-1), CCL3 (macrophage inflammatory protein-1 alpha), Toll-like receptor-4 (TLR4), prostaglandin E receptor-1 (PTGER1), transforming growth factor beta receptor 2 (TGFBR2) and mannose receptor C-type 1-CD206 (MRC1).

A similar approach was carried out comparing the RNA sequencing profiles of aged human microglia bulk isolated from the human parietal cortex in 39 autopsy cases. Data were compared with available datasets

Table 2. Prominent microglia genes that are altered with age[50]

Upregulated	Downregulated
CTSD	*CD83*
GRN	*FLT1*
LTBR	*ILIB*
TSPO	*PTGS2*
CYBA	*CCL4*
CD14	*CCL2*
C1QA	*CCL3*
C1QC	*TLR4*
IRF7	*PTGER1*
	TGFBR2
	MRC1

Table 3. Human microglia associated genes that change with aging[51]

Cell adhesion/axonal guidance		Cell surface receptors	
Upregulated	**Downre gulated**	**Upregulated**	**Downregulated**
CAECAM1	*ADGRE5*	*CD163*	*IFNGR1*
CDH3	*CDH12*	*CLEC2B*	*IL6R*
DOCK1/5	*CDH19*	*CLEC5A*	*LPAR1*
NLGN2	*CHL1*	*CXCR4*	*LPAR5*
NRP1/2	*ICAM3*	*IGF2R*	*MRC2*
PLXNC1	*ROBO2*	*P2RX1*	*MST1R*
PCDHGA2/4-8	*SEMA3C*	*TNFRSF14*	*NTRK2*
PDHGB2-4	*SEMA7A*	*IL15*	*P2YR12*
PTK7			*CLEC17A*
ROBO4			*TLR10*
SE MA4A			*TREML4*

of human and rodent microglia[51]. The paper contained large datasets of differentially expressed microglia genes with aging but the key finding was the altered expression of genes associated with cell adhesion, cell motility and different cell surface receptors [Table 3].

The microglia genes related to cell adhesion and axonal guidance were altered in aged microglia. Upregulated genes were: carcinoembryonic antigen-related cell adhesion molecule 1-CD66a (CAECAM1), cadherin-3 (CDH3), dedicator of cytokinesis-1/-5 (DOCK1/5), neuroligin-2 (NLGN2), neuropilin-1/-2 (NRP1/2), Plexin C1 (PLXNC1), protocaderin gamma -2,-4, 8 (PCDHGA2/4/8), protocadherin beta-2, -4 (PCDHGB-2, -4), protein tyrosine kinase-7 (PTK7), roundabout guidance receptor 4 (ROBO4), and Semaphorin 4A (SEMA4A). Downregulated genes were: ADGRE5 (Adhesion G-protein-coupled receptor CD97), Cadherin-12 (CDH12), CHL1, intercellular adhesion molecule-3 (ICAM3), roundabout guidance receptor 2 (ROBO2), Semaphorin 3A (SEMA3C), and Semaphorin 7A (SEMA7A). Immune receptor-related genes were also altered in aged microglia. Upregulated genes were: CD163 (Hemoglobin scavenger receptor), C-type lectin domain family 2B (CLEC2B), C-type lectin domain family 5A (CLEC5A), Chemokine receptor type 4 (CXCR4), insulin growth factor 2 receptor (IGF2R), purinergic receptor X1 (P2RX1), tumor necrosis factor receptor superfamily14 (TNFRSF14), and interleukin-15 (IL15). Downregulated genes were: interferon gamma receptor 1 (IFNGR1), interleukin 6 receptor (IL6R), lysophosphatidic acid receptor 1 (LPAR1), lysophosphatidic acid receptor 5 (LPAR5), mannose receptor C type 2 (MRC2), macrophage stimulating 1 receptor (MST1R), neurotrophic receptor tyrosine kinase 2 (NTRK2), purinergic receptor Y12 (P2RY12), C-type lectin domain family 17A (CLEC17A), toll-like receptor 10 (TLR10) and triggering receptor expressed on myeloid cells like-4 (TREML4).

ROLE OF CLASSICAL PRO-INFLAMMATORY CYTOKINES IN AD NEUROINFLAMMATION

The early theories of the role of neuroinflammation in AD suggested the involvement of classical

proinflammatory cytokines and chemokines such as interleukin (IL)-1α, IL-1β, IL-6, IL-8, tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), interferon-gamma (IFN-γ) and CCL-2. Demonstration of cytokines IL-1α, IL-1β and TNF-α in AD brain microglia has been reported but these are not widely-used markers for describing microglia in tissue[52-55]. There appears to be technical difficulties in localizing these secreted cytokines in tissue, and it should be noted that these classical cytokines do not prominently feature in the microglial disease-associated gene signatures of recent studies[10,11,24,32]. In the paper of Friedman *et al.*[24], they provide supplementary data from gene expression profiles of two studies comparing control and AD samples; neither of these detected increased expression of these classical cytokines in AD samples (supplementary data file in reference[24]).

DISCREPANCIES BETWEEN GENE PROFILING RESULTS AND TISSUE STUDIES OF MICROGLIA

Apolipoprotein E and Complement C1q

Apolipoprotein E (APOE/Apoe) and the three complement C1q genes (C1QA/C1qa, C1QB/C1qb, C1QC/C1qc) have been identified as microglial markers by expression studies, but these proteins have not been identified in microglia in AD tissue sections. APOE and C1Q proteins can be detected and are associated with Aβ plaques in AD brains[42,44], with expression of C1Q protein being detectable in neurons[45,56]. Recent experimental studies with mouse models showed that the majority of C1QA proteins in mouse brain was derived from microglia[57], and that C1Q overexpression can have a neuroprotective rather than pathogenic role[58]. As the majority of microglial gene profiling studies used rodent AD models, it is possible that these discrepancies are due to species differences in gene expression of human compared to rodent cells.

TREM2

TREM2 has become the most widely studied inflammatory/microglia marker for studies linking inflammation and AD. This came about due to the identification of heterozygous single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNP)/mutations associated with increased risk of developing AD[59,60]; and studies of Nasu-Hakola disease (NHD), which is associated with homozygous mutations in TREM2 gene or TYROBP gene[61]. TYROBP gene encodes DAP12, the essential adaptor protein that mediates TREM2 signaling. Patients with NHD, also known as polycystic lipomembranous osteodysplasia with sclerosing leukoencephalopathy (PLOSL), develop a type of dementia similar to frontotemporal dementia. This dementia appears to be directly caused by microglial dysfunction resulting from the loss of function of TREM2 signaling. The function of TREM2 has been extensively characterized as a receptor for lipids, lipoprotein[62-64], including Apoe[65], heat shock protein 60 (HSP60), and Aβ peptide[66]. TREM2 appears to be a pattern recognition type of receptor rather than being ligand sequence specific. It is still not clear whether TREM2 is recognizing Aβ in plaques, or one of the many different plaque-associated proteins or lipids that accumulate, including lipoproteins such as ApoE and ApoJ (clusterin)[67]. An interaction of TREM2 and APOE signaling pathways has been implicated in altering microglia to a more damaging phenotype[68]. However, there are still inconsistencies about whether TREM2 signaling functions in a pro-inflammatory (damaging) or anti-inflammatory (reparative) manner[32].

If one now considers the theme of this review as to whether TREM2 expression can be used to describe the phenotypes of microglia in human brain tissue, findings on this have been scarce and divergent. Studies have consistently shown that TREM2 mRNA is highly expressed in human and animal brains and in microglia, and many mechanistic studies of TREM2 associated with disease assume that all microglia express TREM2. However, few studies have successfully localized TREM2 expression to microglia in human or rodent brain tissue. An earlier study using aged Aβ plaque-developing mice showed TREM2 expression by microglia associated with plaques[69], but two studies that used hard-fixed paraffin embedded human brain tissue with antigen retrieval concluded that TREM2 was not expressed by human brain

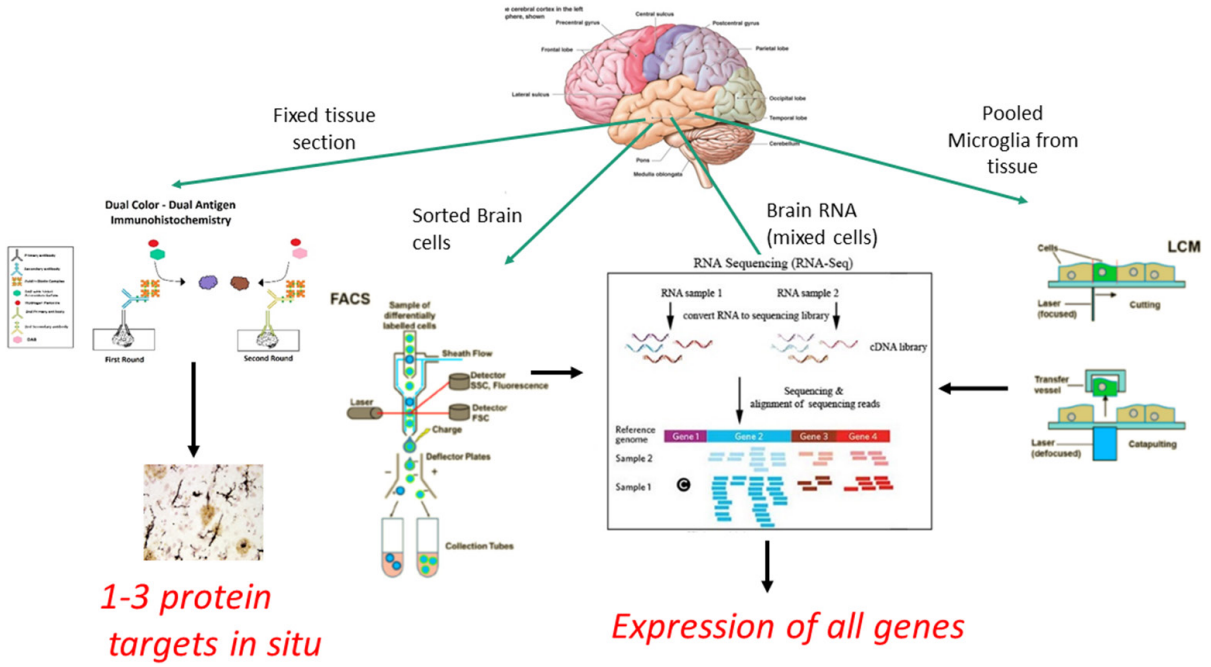


Figure 2. Technical approaches to characterizing microglia phenotypes in human brain tissue. Figure 2 illustrates different methodological approaches for defining microglia phenotypes using established immunohistochemistry methods compared to RNA gene expression profiling in sorted or single cell microglia populations, or microglia that had been laser micro-dissected from brain tissue sections

microglia[70,71]. One study that included characterization of a number of different commercial antibodies to TREM2 concluded that its expression was primarily in blood monocytes and possibly neurons[70]. Another study similarly concluded that TREM2 was expressed by monocytes or infiltrating macrophages and not by microglia[71]. These authors did not report neuronal staining[71]. The discrepancies found in these studies need to be resolved. Both of these studies carefully characterized the specificity of the TREM2 antibodies used and included positive control samples that demonstrated positive staining in blood or spleen monocytes[70,71]. By contrast, our laboratory was able to identify TREM2 immunoreactivity in different types of microglia, particularly those associated with plaques and tangles in AD brains. In our study, the expression of TREM2 by microglia was not extensive or robust, and small cells with shorter processes were identified, which is not typical of the features of tissue microglia identified with antibodies to HLA-DR or IBA-1[72].

These plaque-associated microglia might still represent infiltrating macrophages and further studies would be needed, but their localization in brain neuropil and morphology were consistent with microglia. Our study used a validated antibody, but the major difference between studies was our use of brain tissues that had not been hard-fixed or paraffin-embedded. These findings do illustrate the technical difficulties of showing TREM2-positive microglia in human brains. In further follow up studies, the demonstration of TREM2 immunolocalization using antibody AF1828 (R&D Systems, Minneapolis, MN, USA) was repeatable, but demonstration of positive TREM2 staining was not consistent, with some sections showing good microglial staining while others showing none (Figure 3: unpublished observations). Figure 3 demonstrates types of TREM2-positive microglia in an AD case (temporal cortex). In Figure 3B, the demonstration of colocalization of P2RY12 expression (brown) in TREM2 positive cells appears to define the phenotype of TREM2 expression as non-activated. P2RY12 expression has been defined to identify homeostatic microglia with this marker being downregulated with activation[28]. Our study showed increased levels of TREM2 protein in AD cases compared to control cases as measured by Western blotting[72], a finding repeated by others[73], though this latter paper did not demonstrate TREM2 immunoreactivity in microglia in tissue sections.

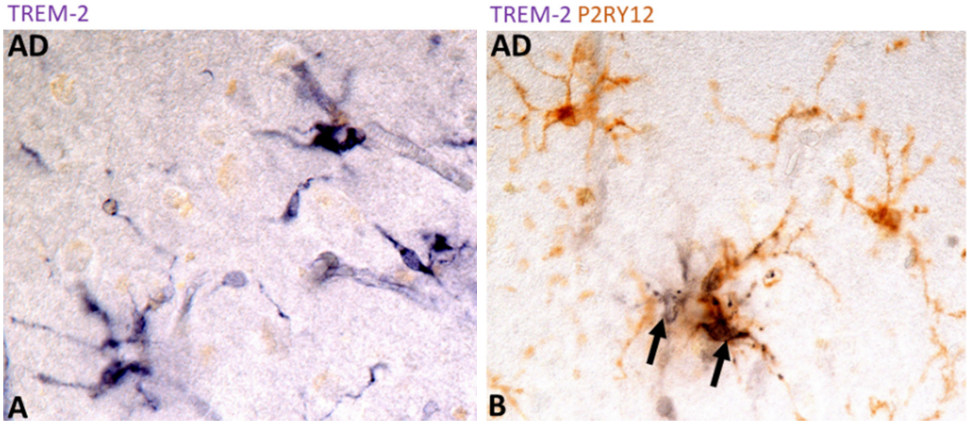


Figure 3. TREM2 expression by microglia in AD brain tissue sections. Immunohistochemical localization of TREM2 protein using antibody AF1828 (R&D systems). Sections from an AD case are shown: (A) single-stained section showing microglial-like structures immunoreactive for TREM2. Purple represents reaction with nickel-enhanced diaminobenzidine substrate; (B) double-staining (TREM2 - purple - P2RY12- brown) of AD section showing colocalization of TREM2 and P2RY12. Arrows indicate TREM2 positive microglia (purple) adjacent to P2RY12 microglia

A more recent paper suggested that there was a decrease in TREM2 protein levels in AD brains, and that neuronal and microglial TREM2 staining was also observable. These authors posited the hypothesis that brain TREM2 was derived from soluble forms of TREM2 from peripheral erythromyeloid cells and monocyte/macrophages that had trafficked into the brain[74]. These authors did not provide details on the type and fixation of the brain tissue samples employed. Replication of these findings by others would clarify the questions raised. Overall, we have demonstrated that TREM2 expression can be observed with appropriately fixed materials and a verified antibody, however, there are still inconsistencies that need to be addressed with optimal fixation methods and the availability of higher affinity antibodies. Due to the significance that experimental and gene expression studies have placed on TREM2 in AD inflammation, reliable methods to detect TREM2 *in situ* are needed to adequately define the phenotypes of TREM2-expressing microglia.

CD33

CD33, also known as Sialic acid-binding Ig-like lectin 3 (Siglec-3) is a myeloid specific cell-surface protein that is activated by binding with sialic acid-modified proteins or lipoproteins. The rs3865444 SNP resulting in a substitution of A for C in the 5' untranslated region of CD33 mRNA was found to be protective for developing AD[75]. Based on animal studies, it was concluded that high levels of microglial expression of CD33 inhibited phagocytosis of Aβ, while lower levels of CD33 present in subjects with the minor A variant of rs3865444[76] was associated with increased phagocytosis of Aβ[77]. We demonstrated by immunohistochemistry of brain sections that increased microglial expression of CD33 was evident in AD cases, particularly in plaque-associated microglia. Similar plaque-associated CD33-positive microglia were demonstrated in another study[78]. CD33 expression does not fit into the established parameters of pro- or anti-inflammatory phenotypic markers as *in vitro* activation of cultured microglia resulted in significant down-regulation of expression[76]. In addition, CD33 functions as an inhibitory receptor resulting in activation of its immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motif (ITIM) that results in downregulation of inflammatory signaling. CD33 is not itself an Aβ phagocytic receptor, but activation could inhibit functioning of other known Aβ binding/phagocytic receptors. It has been suggested that increased expression of CD33 could be pathogenic in AD, but there is evidence that the opposite should be considered. Studies of CD33 expression in macrophages from diabetics, where expression is downregulated, showed lower CD33 expression correlated with increased levels of proinflammatory cytokine TNFα[79].

Increased levels of CD33 in AD brains might function to restrict inflammatory activation as well as inhibiting phagocytic receptors, but blocking CD33 activation could result in enhanced neuroinflammation. A clear demonstration of the interaction of CD33 and TREM2 signaling occurred in experimental mouse models[80]. The loss of CD33 in these models resulted in increased levels of key proinflammatory cytokines. Significant information on whether these proteins interact in AD brains could be obtained if high-resolution immunohistochemistry could show microglia staining for both proteins *in vivo*. The phenotypes of CD33 or TREM2 positive microglia have not been rigorously investigated to determine if they primarily express pro-inflammatory or reparative/homeostatic markers.

Progranulin

Increased expression of progranulin by microglia has also been observed in AD brains[81-83]. This protein has multiple functions including neurotrophic, anti-inflammatory and lysosomal function regulation[84]. Progranulin expression is not restricted to myeloid cells with abundant neuronal expression having been characterized. Mutations in GRN (progranulin gene) can cause some forms of frontotemporal dementia (FTD), a neurodegenerative disease associated with neurodegeneration in the frontal and temporal cortex. The mechanism for this degeneration has been associated with enhanced microglial inflammation caused by partial loss of progranulin protein and its associated activity[85]. This protein appears to be present in most brain microglia, colocalizing with lysosomal proteins in brain sections, with increased levels in plaque-associated microglia[83]. As increased levels of progranulin can be protective, upregulated expression in AD would be suggestive of a reparative stress-associated response to neurodegenerative changes. As a marker to define microglial phenotypes, progranulin has limited utility, but its continued expression by different types of microglia would suggest it is having an anti-inflammatory effect in AD affected tissue. A recent gene profiling study of middle aged compared to old brain-derived microglia showed that GRN mRNA expression was significantly higher in older microglia[49].

Toll-like receptors

Toll-like receptors (TLR) are a class of ten pattern recognition receptors associated with identifying ligands from bacteria, viruses and fungi. However, they have also been identified to have a large range of cellular ligands. Due to their demonstrated interactions with aggregated Aβ and α-synuclein, TLR2 and TLR4 have been implicated in AD and PD, though immunohistochemistry for TLR4 has demonstrated neuronal, not microglial, localization[86-88]. Activation of TLR9 by its ligand unmethylated double-stranded DNA caused increased microglial phagocytosis of Aβ in experimental AD models[89]; however, there have been no demonstrations of its localization in microglia in human brains. In a recent study focused on TLR3, native ligand double-stranded RNA and the neuronal protein stathmin[90], we demonstrated distinct microglial expression of TLR3 in human brains with increased expression in plaque-associated microglia, and in endothelial cells, but not neurons or astrocytes[91]. These results were different from previous studies and dependent on the antibody used for immunohistochemistry. TLR3 had previously been defined as a specific marker for dendritic myeloid cells including microglia[92].

Colony stimulating factor-1 receptor

The survival and proliferation of microglia is primarily dependent on the action of colony stimulating factor-1 (CSF1) and IL34, ligands for CSF1R[93]. Binding of these growth factors to CSF1R results in microglial proliferation. These growth factors have distinct structures and though their expression is regulated differently, they have overlapping properties. CSF1R expression in the brain is mainly restricted to microglia. Studies using different CSF1R antagonist administered to mice resulted in knockout of microglia from tissue with a variety of mostly therapeutic effects, although it can also be detrimental in some circumstances depending on the disease model[94-99]. These studies have defined the significance of CSF1R to microglial function. There has only been a single definitive study demonstrating localization of CSF1R in microglia in human brains[100]. This study showed that all microglia constitutively expressed CSF1R

and this was increased in pathology-associated microglia in AD brains[100]. This original finding of CSF1R expression by microglia is now 25 years old and requires replication using modern microscopic techniques to define the phenotypes of expressing microglia. We recently demonstrated increased expression of CSF1R and CSF1 mRNA in AD brains that correlated with severity of pathology, but reduced expression of IL34 mRNA in these samples[101]. One study has shown that CSF1R can be expressed in neurons in lesioned rat brains, but this finding has not been replicated[102]. Further characterization of CSF1R in AD tissue would be helpful to map the sites of microglial proliferation in tissues. These studies could be combined with markers and transcription factors associated with microglial proliferation (e.g., PU.1, Ki67).

CD14-Lipopolysaccharide receptor

A number of blood macrophage markers that have been defined are expressed at increased levels in activated cells (reviewed[103]). These defining studies have generally utilized strong activation agents such as bacterial proinflammogens including lipopolysaccharide (LPS) and IFN-γ that induce strong inflammatory responses for killing invading microorganisms. One of the activation receptors is CD14, along with Toll-like receptor (TLR)-4, one of the components of the LPS receptor[104]. CD14 has been considered a constitutive marker for macrophages and microglia, but it is noticeable that its expression in human AD brains has only been described in a single study[105]. This study identified increased CD14 expression of plaque-associated microglia. In Figure 4, we show examples of CD14 staining of microglia, but only in AD cases. Studies characterizing the expression of CD14 in microglia freshly isolated from human brains showed low levels of constitutive expression that increased significantly when isolated microglia were cultured for 2-4 days *in vitro*[106,107]. This culture-associated increase in CD14 mRNA expression was not observed for TLR4, but culture-associated decreases of a number of genes (P2RY12, CX3CR1, TNFα, TGFβ HLA-DRA, CD11b, FCγR3) were detected[107]. Increased expression of CD14 was detected by immunohistochemistry in microglia and infiltrating monocytes in sections from cases with traumatic brain injury[108].

The immunohistochemistry results presented here that follow up the earlier findings[105] suggest that using CD14 as a marker to define pro-inflammatory activation phenotypes in human brain should be reassessed. As had been encountered for other markers, successful CD14 staining was dependent on the antibody used, and also the use of antigen-retrieval methods (pH 8.0, 80 °C, 30 min). Other CD14 antibodies tested did not produce this staining of microglia under the same conditions.

CD68

There has been some controversy in the literature about the status of CD68 (designated macrosialin for rodents) as an activation or functional phagocytic marker. CD68 is a myeloid cell-specific lysosomal associated membrane protein (LAMP) whose expression is increased in cells associated with elevated phagocytic and degradative activity. Under appropriate conditions, by employing antigen retrieval methods on free-floating sections, we can demonstrate CD68 positive structures in most microglia. We have recently demonstrated that the majority of progranulin-positive, P2RY12-positive and TLR3-positive microglia were CD68 positive to some extent, irrespective of whether the sections being examined were from non-demented control or AD cases[83,91,109]. Without antigen retrieval, there was a noticeable decrease in sensitivity of detection for CD68 with many microglia showing no reactivity (unpublished observations). It is clear that being able to optimize the sensitivity of detection of CD68 (and other antigens) has a significant effect on identifying the phenotypes of cells expressing this marker.

This is a good context to discuss semi-quantitative histological findings on the expression of a series of microglial markers, including CD68, carried out in a large series of cases by Boche and colleagues[34,110,111]. These investigators were able to examine the expression of microglial markers in samples from subjects who had received the Aβ vaccine as treatment to produce circulating levels of Aβ antibodies[110]. There were significantly decreased numbers of microglia positive for CD68, CD64, CD32 and MSR-1, but not IBA-1

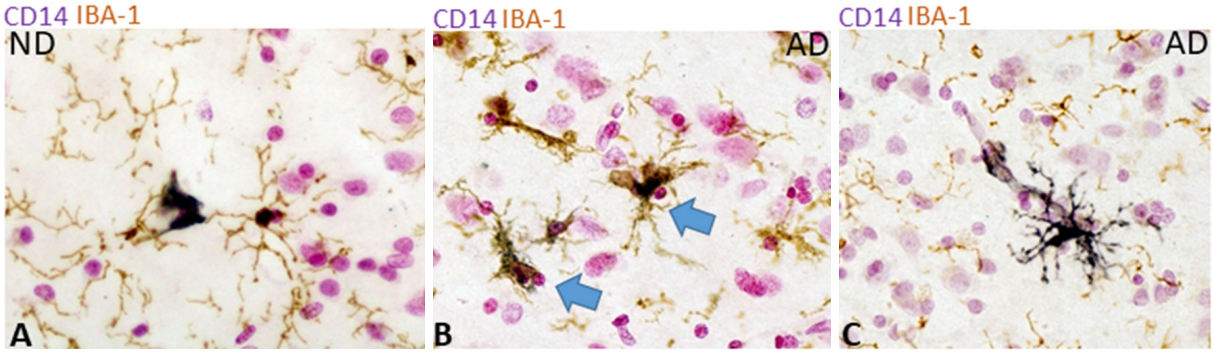


Figure 4. CD14 expression by microglia in ND and AD brain tissue sections. Immunohistochemical localization of CD14 protein using CD14 antibody (Clone 18D11, Biolegend # 812401). Sections from an ND AD case are shown: (A) Double-stained section showing strong CD14 immunoreactivity of blood monocyte (purple) but not IBA-1 positive microglia (brown). Purple represents reaction with nickel-enhanced diaminobenzidine substrate; (B, C) Double-staining (CD14 - purple - IBA-1- brown) of AD sections showing localization of CD14 and IBA-1; (B) Colocalization of CD14 and IBA-1 in microglia cells in AD case (blue arrows); (C) Strong CD14 staining of a perivascular microglia in AD section

in sections from immunized cases compared to control non-immunized subjects. The immunized cases had significantly reduced levels of Aβ[110]. In a follow-up study employing samples from 130 non-demented cases and 83 cases with AD pathology, the expression of markers CD68 (as an indicator of phagocytosis), HLA-DR, CD64, MSR1 and IBA-1 were quantified as a percentage of microglial load, and correlated with pathological and clinical indices. There were positive correlations between dementia status and microglial load for CD68, MSR-1, CD64, and a negative correlation with IBA-1 load; there was no correlation between HLA-DR load and dementia status[34]. It should be pointed out that the difference in mean load for CD68 between non-dementia and dementia with AD pathology was only 10%, confirming widespread expression of CD68 even in non-dementia brains. A similar study that focused on microglia expressing CD68, HLA-DR and IBA-1 in sections of white matter and gray matter from MS and AD cases showed stronger CD68 staining in normal white matter compared to gray matter with an increase in white matter showing MS-related demyelination[112]. Due to its intracellular location, these authors concluded that CD68 was not a good marker to describe morphological features of microglial activation.

Defining microglia by expression of homeostatic markers (TMEM119, P2RY12)

Transmembrane protein 119 (TMEM119)

TMEM119 has been identified to have a function in bone formation by promoting the differentiation of myeloblasts to osteoclasts. Its function in microglia has not been defined, but this marker was repeatedly shown to be expressed at much higher levels by microglia than macrophages, making it a good marker for specifically identifying microglia[25,28,47,113,114]. The only published report of TMEM119 expression in AD and non-demented brains demonstrated increased expression of TMEM119 mRNA in AD cases and no significant difference in the density of TMEM119 immunoreactive microglia or total protein levels in AD cases. There appeared to be an increased expression of TMEM119 in AD plaque-associated microglia[113]. This finding is contrary to the expected change in expression of TMEM119 mRNA, identified from gene expression profiling studies reported above, where microglial TMEM119/Tmem119 expression was decreased upon activation. A different result for TMEM119 was demonstrated in sections from multiple sclerosis cases with active and chronic white matter lesions. In these areas, there was a noticeable overall decrease in microglial immunoreactivity for TMEM119, but not in areas defined as pre-active white matter lesions[115].

Purinergic receptor P2RY12

P2RY12 is a receptor for adenosine triphosphate (ATP) and adenosine diphosphate (ADP). This receptor is primarily restricted to platelets and microglia. The activation of P2RY12 by ligands induces microglial

chemotaxis to sources that can include necrotic and apoptotic neurons. P2RY12 has also been identified by most microglia gene profiling studies as being a specific marker for microglia. Its expression is highest in homeostatic microglia with significant downregulation upon inflammatory activation[30]. Recent studies of P2RY12 expression by microglia in multiple sclerosis tissue sections showed downregulation in areas of active white matter lesions, similar to TMEM119, but less in areas with gray matter lesions[28,115,116]. In addition, it was observed that microglia around many Aβ plaques had reduced or no P2RY12 immunoreactivity[116]. However, our recent study further characterized P2RY12 expression by microglia in AD brains, and observed that the pathological environment (diffuse or mature plaques) had an effect on microglial P2RY12 expression[109]. Our results were noticeably different from others. We have concluded, based on these observations of increased P2RY12 expressing microglia with activation morphologies, particularly in AD brains, that this marker could be identifying other classes of microglia in addition to homeostatic/resting microglia[109]. We observed that most P2RY12 positive microglia expressed CD68 and progranulin. It was observed that highly activated appearing microglia, but also expressing P2RY12, were frequently interacting with Aβ plaques. Although our results agreed that there was an overall decrease in P2RY12 immunoreactivity, the positive cells suggest an additional function besides as a marker for homeostatic microglia.

"Alternative activation" markers (CD200 receptor, CD206, CD163)

Additional markers that have been studied for defining microglial phenotypes are CD200 receptor (CD200R), CD206 and CD163. These antigens have been defined as markers for alternative activation. CD200R was shown to be induced in cultured microglia by IL-4 and IL-13, defining it as an alternative activation marker[117,118]. CD200R has been the focus of a number of mechanistic and experimental studies because activation of this microglia/monocyte by its ligand CD200 results in downregulation of inflammatory activation signaling[119]. Activation of this receptor has significant neuroprotective effects. We showed that there was significantly decreased expression of CD200R mRNA in AD brains[117]. Despite having validated antibodies to CD200R, we could not detect CD200R protein in microglia in any brain tissue sections examined[117]. A study employing tissue from multiple sclerosis cases also could not demonstrate microglial staining of CD200R[120]. It appears then that freshly isolated microglia from human brains have very low levels of CD200R expression[120,121].

CD206 (macrophage mannose receptor C) is another widely used marker for alternative activation. Increased levels of this receptor are associated with phagocytic activity. Preliminary studies of ND and AD tissue sections with a validated antibody have failed to identify CD206-positive microglia. In our results, we can detect strong staining of vascular macrophages and perivascular macrophages [Figure 5] but not in microglia. These findings would suggest a deficit in levels of IL-4 in brain parenchyma.

However, the localization of another alternative activation marker, the phagocytic receptor CD163 has been observed in microglia in AD and PD brains, and brains affected by human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)[113,122,123]. CD163 is a high-affinity scavenger receptor for hemogloblin-haptoglobin and a low-affinity receptor for hemoglobin alone. CD163 has been widely defined as a marker of macrophages rather than microglia, particularly those that infiltrate brain tissue following stroke. It can be highly expressed by macrophages but its role in neurodegeneration is unclear. Microglia strongly expressing CD163 were shown to be plaque-associated, and CD163 immunoreactivity was present in CD68-positive microglia, suggesting a phagocytic role, and also in TMEM119-positive microglia, a homeostatic role[122]. It should be mentioned that the description of microglia based on morphology is unreliable and so, CD163 immunoreactive microglia might be infiltrating macrophages.

SUMMARY

At present, it is unresolved from studies of human brain tissues whether "activated' microglia, defined in

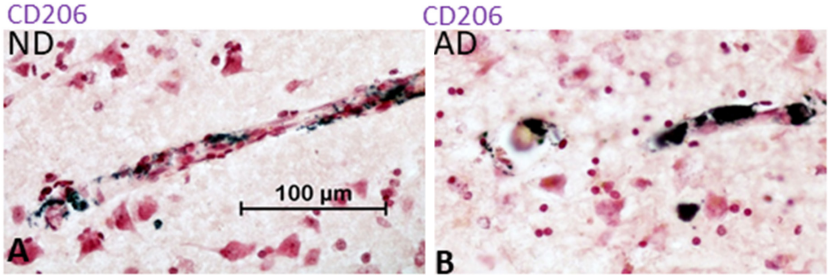


Figure 5. CD206 immunoreactivity by macrophages but not microglia in ND and AD brain tissue sections. Immunohistochemical localization of CD206 protein using antibody AF2534 (R&D systems). Sections from an ND and AD case are shown: (A) Single-stained section showing strong CD206 immunoreactivity of blood monocyte (purple). Purple represents reaction with nickel-enhanced diaminobenzidine substrate; (B) Single staining of AD section showing immunoreactivity of vascular and perivascular macrophages for CD206. No cells with morphologies of microglia were observed in sections examined. Similar findings observed by other investigators[122]

many studies based on morphology, have a predominantly pro-inflammatory phenotype or an alternative activation reparative phenotype. This remains an important issue for defining neuroinflammation in AD or other neurodegenerative diseases. Moving forward, investigators of the issues raised in this review need to consider using modern immunohistochemistry techniques that can localize multiple antigen markers to properly phenotype microglia associated with neuropathology (examples[124-126]).

CONCLUSION

Over thirty years of studies of tissue microglia in human brains and animal models of diseases have shown the increasingly complex behavior of microglial function in tissue, suggesting that classification into M1 or M2 schemes, or classical and alternative activation, is too simplistic to reflect this complexity in disease processes[127].

Recent gene expression profiling studies have shown (not unexpectedly) that there are significant differences between human and rodent microglia. This is particularly applicable when comparing microglia in diseased human brains, which have taken decades to develop a disease-phenotype, while microglia in mice brains develop disease phenotypes over weeks. Caution is thus needed in the interpretation of results from rodent models with aged humans.

Gene profiling technologies have now been applied to isolated microglia and these studies have challenged the hypothesis that there is an acute-type (microbial driven) of inflammation in human brains causing accelerated proinflammatory damage in AD. These studies have shown that many of the microglia genes expressed at increased levels reflect responses to restore homeostasis and limit inflammatory damage.

To fully understand the large amount of data from gene profiling technologies, ultimately there is the need for antibody-based studies to determine where a particular microglial marker is being expressed in the brain in relation to characteristic plaque and tangle pathology. Gene profiling studies have now identified a large number of new microglial antigenic markers that can be combined with established markers for phenotyping pathology-associated microglia.

To successfully accomplish immunohistochemistry in human brains, greater appreciation is needed for differences in the specificity and sensitivity of antibodies being used and the consequences of differences in tissue being examined (fixation, cause of death, postmortem autolysis).

To obtain consistency between laboratories in human tissue studies of microglia, some established protocols are needed to ensure that results do not simply reflect technical differences in tissue fixation and preparation, quality of antibodies being used, and sensitivity in detection of antigenic signals.

DECLARATIONS

Acknowledgments

The author thanks the support from the Banner Sun Health Research Institute (BSHRI) and their Brain and Body Donation Program (BBDP) for providing high quality brain samples for studies on human brain microglia over the last 20 years that have allowed him to make these comments and observations.

Authors' contributions

Conceived and wrote this article, took responsibility for the ideas presented: Walker DG

Availability of data and materials

Not applicable

Financial support and sponsorship

None.

Conflicts of interest

The author declared that there are no conflicts of interest.

Ethical approval and consent to participate

The author's publications that are referenced in this review article utilized human brain tissue samples provided by the Brain Bank, BSHRI. Most of the studies referenced refer to anonymous tissue studies carried out in the USA, which are considered non-human subject research under U.S. federal regulations. Some of these studies were completed in Japan using the same tissue samples that had been transferred to Japan with the author. Tissue studies carried out in Japan were approved by the Shiga University of Medical Science Ethical Committee (Certificate No. 29-114).

Consent for publication

Not applicable.

Copyright

© The Author(s) 2020.

REFERENCES

1. Ulep MG, Saraon SK, McLea S. Alzheimer disease. J Nurse Pract 2018;14:129-35.
2. Simon DK, Tanner CM, Brundin P. Parkinson disease epidemiology, Pathology, genetics, and pathophysiology. Clin Geriatr Med 2020;36:1-12.
3. DeTure MA, Dickson DW. The neuropathological diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease. Mol Neurodegener 2019;14:32.
4. Kim WS, Kagedal K, Halliday GM. Alpha-synuclein biology in Lewy body diseases. Alzheimers Res Ther 2014;6:73.
5. Heppner FL, Ransohoff RM, Becher B. Immune attack: the role of inflammation in Alzheimer disease. Nat Rev Neurosci 2015;16:358-72.
6. Salter MW, Stevens B. Microglia emerge as central players in brain disease. Nat Med 2017;23:1018-27.
7. Wang Q, Liu Y, Zhou J. Neuroinflammation in Parkinson's disease and its potential as therapeutic target. Transl Neurodegener 2015;4:19.
8. in t' Veld BA, Ruitenberg A, Hofman A, Launer LJ, van Duijn CM, et al. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs and the risk of Alzheimer's disease. N Engl J Med 2001;345:1515-21.
9. Wang J, Tan L, Wang HF, Tan CC, Meng XF, et al. Anti-inflammatory drugs and risk of Alzheimer's disease: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis. J Alzheimers Dis 2015;44:385-96.
10. Chew G, Petretto E. Transcriptional networks of microglia in Alzheimer's disease and insights into pathogenesis. Genes (Basel) 2019;10.
11. Mathys H, Adaikkan C, Gao F, Young JZ, Manet E, et al. Temporal tracking of microglia activation in neurodegeneration at single-cell resolution. Cell Rep 2017;21:366-80.
12. Patir A, Shih B, McColl BW, Freeman TC. A core transcriptional signature of human microglia: derivation and utility in describing region-dependent alterations associated with Alzheimer's disease. Glia 2019;67:1240-53.

13. Rio-Hortega P. Del the Microglia. Lancet 1939;233:1023-6.
14. Tremblay ME, Lecours C, Samson L, Sanchez-Zafra V, Sierra A. From the cajal alumni achucarro and Rio-Hortega to the rediscovery of never-resting microglia. Front Neuroanat 2015;9:45.
15. McGeer PL, Itagaki S, McGeer EG. Expression of the histocompatibility glycoprotein HLA-DR in neurological disease. Acta Neuropathol 1988;76:550-7.
16. McGeer PL, Itagaki S, Tago H, McGeer EG. Reactive microglia in patients with senile dementia of the Alzheimer type are positive for the histocompatibility glycoprotein HLA-DR. Neurosci Lett 1987;79:195-200.
17. McGeer PL, Itagaki S, Boyes BE, McGeer EG. Reactive microglia are positive for HLA-DR in the substantia nigra of Parkinson's and Alzheimer's disease brains. Neurology 1988;38:1285-91.
18. Itagaki S, McGeer PL, Akiyama H, Zhu S, Selkoe D. Relationship of microglia and astrocytes to amyloid deposits of Alzheimer disease. J Neuroimmunol 1989;24:173-82.
19. Rogers J, Luber-Narod J, Styren SD, Civin WH. Expression of immune system-associated antigens by cells of the human central nervous system: relationship to the pathology of Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging 1988;9:339-49.
20. Mattiace LA, Davies P, Dickson DW. Detection of HLA-DR on microglia in the human brain is a function of both clinical and technical factors. Am J Pathol 1990;136:1101-14.
21. Nakagawa T, Ohnishi K, Kosaki Y, Saito Y, Horlad H, et al. Optimum immunohistochemical procedures for analysis of macrophages in human and mouse formalin fixed paraffin-embedded tissue samples. J Clin Exp Hematop 2017;57:31-6.
22. Beach TG, Adler CH, Sue LI, Serrano G, Shill HA, Walker DG, et al. Arizona Study of Aging and Neurodegenerative Disorders and Brain and Body Donation Program. Neuropathology 2015;35:354-89.
23. Beach TG, Sue LI, Walker DG, Roher AE, Lue L, et al. The sun health research institute brain donation program: description and experience, 1987-2007. Cell Tissue Bank 2008;9:229-45.
24. Friedman BA, Srinivasan K, Ayalon G, Meilandt WJ, Lin H, et al. Diverse brain myeloid expression profiles reveal distinct microglial activation states and aspects of Alzheimer's disease not evident in mouse models. Cell Rep 2018;22:83247.
25. Bennett ML, Bennett FC, Liddelow SA, Ajami B, Zamanian JL, et al. New tools for studying microglia in the mouse and human CNS. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2016;113:E1738-46.
26. Zhou Y, Song WM, Andhey PS, Swain A, Levy T, et al. Human and mouse single-nucleus transcriptomics reveal TREM2-dependent and TREM2-independent cellular responses in Alzheimer's disease. Nat Med 2020;26:131-42.
27. van der Poel M, Ulas T, Mizee MR, Hsiao CC, Miedema SSM, et al. Transcriptional profiling of human microglia reveals grey-white matter heterogeneity and multiple sclerosis-associated changes. Nat Commun 2019;10:1139.
28. Zrzavy T, Hametner S, Wimmer I, Butovsky O, Weiner HL, et al. Loss of "homeostatic" microglia and patterns of their activation in active multiple sclerosis. Brain 2017;140:1900-13.
29. Li Q, Cheng Z, Zhou L, Darmanis S, Neff NF, et al. Developmental heterogeneity of microglia and brain myeloid cells revealed by deep single-cell RNA sequencing. Neuron 2019;101:207-23.e10.
30. Butovsky O, Jedrychowski MP, Moore CS, Cialic R, Lanser AJ, et al. Identification of a unique TGF-beta-dependent molecular and functional signature in microglia. Nat Neurosci 2014;17:131-43.
31. Hickman SE, Kingery ND, Ohsumi TK, Borowsky ML, Wang L, et al. The microglial sensome revealed by direct RNA sequencing. Nat Neurosci 2013;16:1896-905.
32. Keren-Shaul H, Spinrad A, Weiner A, Matcovitch-Natan O, Dvir-Szternfeld R, et al. A unique microglia type associated with restricting development of Alzheimer's disease. Cell 2017;169:1276-90.e17.
33. Deczkowska A, Keren-Shaul H, Weiner A, Colonna M, Schwartz M, et al. Disease-associated microglia: a universal immune sensor of neurodegeneration. Cell 2018;173:1073-81.
34. Minett T, Classey J, Matthews FE, Fahrenhold M, Taga M, et al. Microglial immunophenotype in dementia with Alzheimer's pathology. J Neuroinflammation 2016;13:135.
35. Akiyama H, McGeer PL. Brain microglia constitutively express beta-2 integrins. J Neuroimmunol 1990;30:81-93.
36. McGeer PL, Kawamata T, Walker DG, Akiyama H, Tooyama I, et al. Microglia in degenerative neurological disease. Glia 1993;7:84-92.
37. Strittmatter WJ, Saunders AM, Goedert M, Weisgraber KH, Dong LM, et al. Isoform-specific interactions of apolipoprotein E with microtubule-associated protein tau: implications for Alzheimer disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1994;91:11183-6.
38. Saunders AM, Schmader K, Breitner JC, Benson MD, Brown WT, et al. Apolipoprotein E epsilon 4 allele distributions in late-onset Alzheimer's disease and in other amyloid-forming diseases. Lancet (London, England) 1993;342:710-1.
39. Sanan DA, Weisgraber KH, Russell SJ, Mahley RW, Huang D, et al. Apolipoprotein E associates with beta amyloid peptide of Alzheimer's disease to form novel monofibrils. Isoform apoE4 associates more efficiently than apoE3. J Clin Invest 1994;94:860-9.
40. Yamaguchi H, Ishiguro K, Sugihara S, Nakazato Y, Kawarabayashi T, et al. Presence of apolipoprotein E on extracellular neurofibrillary tangles and on meningeal blood vessels precedes the Alzheimer beta-amyloid deposition. Acta Neuropathol 1994;88:413-9.
41. Diedrich JF, Minnigan H, Carp RI, Whitaker JN, Race R, et al. Neuropathological changes in scrapie and Alzheimer's disease are associated with increased expression of apolipoprotein E and cathepsin D in astrocytes. J Virol 1991;65:4759-68.
42. Namba Y, Tomonaga M, Kawasaki H, Otomo E, Ikeda K. Apolipoprotein E immunoreactivity in cerebral amyloid deposits and neurofibrillary tangles in Alzheimer's disease and kuru plaque amyloid in Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease. Brain Res 1991;541:163-6.
43. Uchihara T, Duyckaerts C, He Y, Kobayashi K, Seilhean D, et al. ApoE immunoreactivity and microglial cells in Alzheimer's disease brain. Neurosci Lett 1995;195:5-8.
44. McGeer PL, Akiyama H, Itagaki S, McGeer EG. Activation of the classical complement pathway in brain tissue of Alzheimer patients.

Neurosci Lett 1989;107:341-6.
45. Afagh A, Cummings BJ, Cribbs DH, Cotman CW, Tenner AJ. Localization and cell association of C1q in Alzheimer's disease brain. Exp Neurol 1996;138:22-32.
46. Walker DG, Kim SU, McGeer PL. Complement and cytokine gene expression in cultured microglial derived from postmortem human brains. J Neurosci Res 1995;40:478-93.
47. Haage V, Semtner M, Vidal RO, Hernandez DP, Pong WW, et al. Comprehensive gene expression meta-analysis identifies signature genes that distinguish microglia from peripheral monocytes/macrophages in health and glioma. Acta Neuropathol Commun 2019;7:20.
48. Mukherjee S, Klaus C, Pricop-Jeckstadt M, Miller JA, Struebing FL. A microglial signature directing human aging and neurodegeneration-related gene networks. Front Neurosci 2019;13:2.
49. Olah M, Patrick E, Villani AC, Xu J, White CC, et al. A transcriptomic atlas of aged human microglia. Nat Commun 2018;9:539.
50. Zhang Y, Sloan SA, Clarke LE, Caneda C, Plaza CA, et al. Purification and characterization of progenitor and mature human astrocytes reveals transcriptional and functional differences with mouse. Neuron 2016;89:37-53.
51. Galatro TF, Holtman IR, Lerario AM, Vainchtein ID, Brouwer N, et al. Transcriptomic analysis of purified human cortical microglia reveals age-associated changes. Nat Neurosci 2017;20:1162-71.
52. Sheng JG, Mrak RE, Griffin WS. Glial-neuronal interactions in Alzheimer disease: progressive association of IL-1alpha+ microglia and S100beta+ astrocytes with neurofibrillary tangle stages. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 1997;56:285-90.
53. Sheng JG, Griffin WS, Royston MC, Mrak RE. Distribution of interleukin-1-immunoreactive microglia in cerebral cortical layers: implications for neuritic plaque formation in Alzheimer's disease. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol 1998;24:278-83.
54. Li Y, Liu L, Barger SW, Griffin WST. Interleukin-1 mediates pathological effects of microglia on tau phosphorylation and on synaptophysin synthesis in cortical neurons through a p38-MAPK pathway. J Neurosci 2003;23:1605-11.
55. Dickson DW, Lee SC, Mattiace LA, Yen SH, Brosnan C. Microglia and cytokines in neurological disease, with special reference to AIDS and Alzheimer's disease. Glia 1993;7:75-83.
56. Terai K, Walker DG, McGeer EG, McGeer PL. Neurons express proteins of the classical complement pathway in Alzheimer disease. Brain Res 1997;769:385-90.
57. Fonseca MI, Chu SH, Hernandez MX, Fang MJ, Modarresi L, et al. Cell-specific deletion of C1qa identifies microglia as the dominant source of C1q in mouse brain. J Neuroinflammation 2017;14:48.
58. Benoit ME, Tenner AJ. Complement protein C1q-mediated neuroprotection is correlated with regulation of neuronal gene and microRNA expression. J Neurosci 2011;31:3459-69.
59. Jonsson T, Stefansson H, Steinberg S, Jonsdottir I, Jonsson PV, et al. Variant of TREM2 associated with the risk of Alzheimer's disease. N Engl J Med 2013;368:107-16.
60. Korvatska O, Leverenz JB, Jayadev S, McMillan P, Kurtz I, et al. R47H variant of TREM2 associated with alzheimer disease in a large late-onset family: clinical, genetic, and neuropathological study. JAMA Neurol 2015;72:920-7.
61. Paloneva J, Manninen T, Christman G, Hovanes K, Mandelin J, et al. Mutations in two genes encoding different subunits of a receptor signaling complex result in an identical disease phenotype. Am J Hum Genet 2002;71:656-62.
62. Yeh FL, Wang Y, Tom I, Gonzalez LC, Sheng M. TREM2 Binds to apolipoproteins, including APOE and CLU/APOJ, and thereby facilitates uptake of amyloid-beta by microglia. Neuron 2016;91:328-40.
63. Atagi Y, Liu CC, Painter MM, Chen XF, Verbeeck C, et al. Apolipoprotein E is a ligand for triggering receptor expressed on myeloid cells 2 (TREM2). J Biol Chem 2015;290:26043-50.
64. Kosack L, Gawish R, Lercher A, Vilagos B, Hladik A, et al. The lipid-sensor TREM2 aggravates disease in a model of LCMV-induced hepatitis. Sci Rep 2017;7:11289.
65. Bailey CC, DeVaux LB, Farzan M. The triggering receptor expressed on myeloid cells 2 binds apolipoprotein E. J Biol Chem 2015;290:26033-42.
66. Zhao Y, Wu X, Li X, Jiang LL, Gui X, et al. TREM2 is a receptor for beta-amyloid that mediates microglial function. Neuron 2018;97:1023-31.e7.
67. Wang Y, Cella M, Mallinson K, Ulrich JD, Young KL, et al. TREM2 lipid sensing sustains the microglial response in an Alzheimer's disease model. Cell 2015;160:1061-71.
68. Krasemann S, Madore C, Cialic R, Baufeld C, Calcagno N, et al. The TREM2-APOE pathway drives the transcriptional phenotype of dysfunctional microglia in neurodegenerative diseases. Immunity 2017;47:566-81.e9.
69. Frank S, Burbach GJ, Bonin M, Walter M, Streit W, et al. TREM2 is upregulated in amyloid plaque-associated microglia in aged APP23 transgenic mice. Glia 2008;56:1438-47.
70. Satoh JI, Kawana N, Yamamoto Y, Ishida T, Saito Y, et al. A survey of TREM2 antibodies reveals neuronal but not microglial staining in formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded postmortem Alzheimer's brain tissues. Alzheimers Res Ther 2013;5:30.
71. Fahrenhold M, Rakic S, Classey J, Brayne C, Ince PG, et al. TREM2 expression in the human brain: a marker of monocyte recruitment? Brain Pathol 2017; doi: 10.1111/bpa.12564.
72. Lue LF, Schmitz CT, Serrano G, Sue LI, Beach TG, et al. Brain Pathol 2015;25:469-80.
73. Perez SE, Nadeem M, He B, Miguel JC, Malek-Ahmadi MH, et al. Neocortical and hippocampal TREM2 protein levels during the progression of Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging 2017;54:133-43.
74. Raha-Chowdhury R, Henderson JW, Raha AA, Stott SRW, Vuono R, et al. Erythromyeloid-derived TREM2: a major determinant of Alzheimer's disease pathology in down syndrome. J Alzheimers Dis 2018;61:1143-62.
75. Naj AC, Jun G, Beecham GW, Wang LS, Vardarajan BN, et al. Common variants at MS4A4/MS4A6E, CD2AP, CD33 and EPHA1 are

associated with late-onset Alzheimer's disease. Nat Genet 2011;43:436-41.
76. Walker DG, Whetzel AM, Serrano G, Sue LI, Beach TG, et al. Association of CD33 polymorphism rs3865444 with Alzheimer's disease pathology and CD33 expression in human cerebral cortex. Neurobiol Aging 2015;36:571-82.
77. Griciuc A, Serrano-Pozo A, Parrado AR, Lesinski AN, Asselin CN, et al. Alzheimer's disease risk gene CD33 inhibits microglial uptake of amyloid beta. Neuron 2013;78:631-43.
78. Bradshaw EM, Chibnik LB, Keenan BT, Ottoboni L, Raj T, et al. CD33 Alzheimer's disease locus: altered monocyte function and amyloid biology. Nat Neurosci 2013;16:848-50.
79. Gonzalez Y, Herrera MT, Soldevila G, Garcia-Garcia L, Fabian G, et al. High glucose concentrations induce TNF-alpha production through the down-regulation of CD33 in primary human monocytes. BMC Immunol 2012;13:19.
80. Griciuc A, Patel S, Federico AN, Choi SH, Innes BJ, et al. TREM2 Acts downstream of CD33 in modulating microglial pathology in Alzheimer's disease. Neuron 2019;103:820-35.e7.
81. Pereson S, Wils H, Kleinberger G, McGowan E, Vandewoestyne M, et al. Progranulin expression correlates with dense-core amyloid plaque burden in Alzheimer disease mouse models. J Pathol 2009;219:173-81.
82. Minami SS, Min SW, Krabbe G, Wang C, Zhou Y, et al. Progranulin protects against amyloid beta deposition and toxicity in Alzheimer's disease mouse models. Nat Med 2014;20:1157-64.
83. Mendsaikhan A, Tooyama I, Bellier JP, Serrano GE, Sue LI, et al. Characterization of lysosomal proteins progranulin and prosaposin and their interactions in Alzheimer's disease and aged brains: increased levels correlate with neuropathology. Acta Neuropathol Commun 2019;7:215.
84. Mendsaikhan A, Tooyama I, Walker DG. Microglial progranulin: involvement in Alzheimer's disease and neurodegenerative diseases. Cells 2019;8.
85. Lui H, Zhang J, Makinson SR, Cahill MK, Kelley KW, et al. Progranulin deficiency promotes circuit-specific synaptic pruning by microglia via complement activation. Cell 2016;165:921-35.
86. Reed-Geaghan EG, Savage JC, Hise AG, Landreth GE. CD14 and toll-like receptors 2 and 4 are required for fibrillar A{beta}-stimulated microglial activation. J Neurosci 2009;29:11982-92.
87. Chen K, Iribarren P, Hu J, Chen J, Gong W, et al. Activation of Toll-like receptor 2 on microglia promotes cell uptake of Alzheimer disease-associated amyloid beta peptide. J Biol Chem 2006;281:3651-9.
88. Tang SC, Lathia JD, Selvaraj PK, Jo DG, Mughal MR, et al. Toll-like receptor-4 mediates neuronal apoptosis induced by amyloid beta-peptide and the membrane lipid peroxidation product 4-hydroxynonenal. Exp Neurol 2008;213:114-21.
89. Scholtzova H, Chianchiano P, Pan J, Sun Y, Goni F, et al. Amyloid beta and Tau Alzheimer's disease related pathology is reduced by Toll-like receptor 9 stimulation. Acta Neuropathol Commun 2014;2:101.
90. Bsibsi M, Bajramovic JJ, Vogt MHJ, van Duijvenvoorden E, Baghat A, et al. The microtubule regulator stathmin is an endogenous protein agonist for TLR3. J Immunol 2010;184:6929-37.
91. Walker DG, Tang TM, Lue LF. Increased expression of toll-like receptor 3, an anti-viral signaling molecule, and related genes in Alzheimer's disease brains. Exp Neurol 2018;309:91-106.
92. Muzio M, Bosisio D, Polentarutti N, D'amico G, Stoppacciaro A, et al. Differential expression and regulation of toll-like receptors (TLR) in human leukocytes: selective expression of TLR3 in dendritic cells. J Immunol 2000;164:5998-6004.
93. Baghdadi M, Umeyama Y, Hama N, Kobayashi T, Han N, et al. Interleukin-34, a comprehensive review. J Leukoc Biol 2018;104:931-51.
94. Elmore MRP, Najafi AR, Koike MA, Dagher NN, Spangenberg EE, et al. Colony-stimulating factor 1 receptor signaling is necessary for microglia viability, unmasking a microglia progenitor cell in the adult brain. Neuron 2014;82:380-97.
95. Spangenberg EE, Lee RJ, Najafi AR, Rice RA, Elmore MRP, et al. Eliminating microglia in Alzheimer's mice prevents neuronal loss without modulating amyloid-beta pathology. Brain 2016;139:1265-81.
96. Spangenberg E, Severson PL, Hohsfield LA, Crapser J, Zhang J, et al. Sustained microglial depletion with CSF1R inhibitor impairs parenchymal plaque development in an Alzheimer's disease model. Nat Commun 2019;10:3758.
97. Nissen JC, Thompson KK, West BL, Tsirka SE. Csf1R inhibition attenuates experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis and promotes recovery. Exp Neurol 2018;307:24-36.
98. Bennett RE, Bryant A, Hu M, Robbins AB, Hopp SC, et al. Partial reduction of microglia does not affect tau pathology in aged mice. J Neuroinflammation 2018;15:311.
99. Olmos-Alonso A, Schetters STT, Sri S, Askew K, Mancuso R, et al. Pharmacological targeting of CSF1R inhibits microglial proliferation and prevents the progression of Alzheimer's-like pathology. Brain 2016;139:891-907.
100. Akiyama H, Nishimura T, Kondo H, Ikeda K, Hayashi Y, et al. Expression of the receptor for macrophage colony stimulating factor by brain microglia and its upregulation in brains of patients with Alzheimer's disease and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Brain Res 1994;639:171-4.
101. Walker DG, Tang TM, Lue LF. Studies on colony stimulating factor receptor-1 and ligands colony stimulating factor-1 and Interleukin-34 in Alzheimer's disease brains and human microglia. Front Aging Neurosci 2017;9:244.
102. Luo J, Elwood F, Britschgi M, Villeda S, Zhang H, et al. Colony-stimulating factor 1 receptor (CSF1R) signaling in injured neurons facilitates protection and survival. J Exp Med 2013;210:157-72.
103. Martinez FO, Helming L, Gordon S. Alternative activation of macrophages: an immunologic functional perspective. Annu Rev Immunol 2009;27:451-83.
104. Jiang Q, Akashi S, Miyake K, Petty HR. Lipopolysaccharide induces physical proximity between CD14 and toll-like receptor 4 (TLR4) prior to nuclear translocation of NF-kappa B. J Immunol 2000;165:3541-4.

105. Liu Y, Walter S, Stagi M, Cherny D, Letiembre M, et al. LPS receptor (CD14): a receptor for phagocytosis of Alzheimer's amyloid peptide. Brain 2005;128:1778-89.
106. Melief J, Sneeboer MAM, Litjens M, Ormel PR, Palmen SJMC, et al. Characterizing primary human microglia: a comparative study with myeloid subsets and culture models. Glia 2016;64:1857-68.
107. Mizee MR, Miedema SSM, van der Poel M, Adelia Schuurman KG, van Strien ME, et al. Isolation of primary microglia from the human post-mortem brain: effects of ante- and post-mortem variables. Acta Neuropathol Commun 2017;5:16.
108. Beschorner R, Nguyen TD, Gozalan F, Pedal I, Mattern R, et al. CD14 expression by activated parenchymal microglia/macrophages and infiltrating monocytes following human traumatic brain injury. Acta Neuropathol 2002;103:541-9.
109. Walker DG, Tang TM, Mendsaikhan A, Tooyama I, Serrano GE, et al. Patterns of expression of purinergic receptor P2RY12, a putative marker for non-activated microglia, in aged and Alzheimer's disease brains. Int J Mol Sci 2020;21.
110. Zotova E, Bharambe V, Cheaveau M, Morgan W, Holmes C, et al. Inflammatory components in human Alzheimer's disease and after active amyloid-beta42 immunization. Brain 2013;136:2677-96.
111. Gomez-Nicola D, Boche D. Post-mortem analysis of neuroinflammatory changes in human Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimers Res Ther 2015;7:42.
112. Hendrickx DAE, van Eden CG, Schuurman KG, Hamann J, Huitinga I. Staining of HLA-DR, Iba1 and CD68 in human microglia reveals partially overlapping expression depending on cellular morphology and pathology. J Neuroimmunol 2017;309:12-22.
113. Satoh J, Kino Y, Asahina N, Takitani M, Miyoshi J, et al. TMEM119 marks a subset of microglia in the human brain. Neuropathology 2016;36:39-49.
114. Gonzalez Ibanez F, Picard K, Bordelau M, Sharma K, Bisht K, et al. Immunofluorescence staining using IBA1 and TMEM119 for microglial density, morphology and peripheral myeloid cell infiltration analysis in mouse brain. J Vis Exp 2019; doi: 10.3791/60510.
115. van Wageningen TA, Vlaar E, Kooij G, Jongenelen CAM, Geurts JJG, et al. Regulation of microglial TMEM119 and P2RY12 immunoreactivity in multiple sclerosis white and grey matter lesions is dependent on their inflammatory environment. Acta Neuropathol Commun 2019;7:206.
116. Mildner A, Huang H, Radke J, Stenzel W, Priller J. P2Y12 receptor is expressed on human microglia under physiological conditions throughout development and is sensitive to neuroinflammatory diseases. Glia 2017;65:375-87.
117. Walker DG, Dalsing-Hernandez JE, Campbell NA, Lue LF. Decreased expression of CD200 and CD200 receptor in Alzheimer's disease: a potential mechanism leading to chronic inflammation. Exp Neurol 2009;215:5-19.
118. Koning N, van Eijk M, Pouwels W, Brouwer MSM, Voehringer D, et al. Expression of the inhibitory CD200 receptor is associated with alternative macrophage activation. J Innate Immun 2010;2:195-200.
119. Lyons A, Downer EJ, Crotty S, Nolan YM, Mills KHG, et al. CD200 ligand receptor interaction modulates microglial activation in vivo and in vitro: a role for IL-4. J Neurosci 2007;27:8309-13.
120. Koning N, Swaab DF, Hoek RM, Huitinga I. Distribution of the immune inhibitory molecules CD200 and CD200R in the normal central nervous system and multiple sclerosis lesions suggests neuron-glia and glia-glia interactions. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 2009;68:159-67.
121. Melief J, Koning N, Schuurman KG, Van De Garde MDB, Smolders J, et al. Phenotyping primary human microglia: tight regulation of LPS responsiveness. Glia 2012;60:1506-17.
122. Pey P, Pearce RKB, Kalaitzakis ME, Griffin WST, Gentleman SM. Phenotypic profile of alternative activation marker CD163 is different in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's disease. Acta Neuropathol Commun 2014;2:21.
123. Roberts ES, Masliah E, Fox HS. CD163 identifies a unique population of ramified microglia in HIV encephalitis (HIVE). J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 2004;63:1255-64.
124. Darmanis S, Gallant CJ, Marinescu VD, Niklasson M, Segerman A, et al. Simultaneous multiplexed measurement of RNA and proteins in single cells. Cell Rep 2016;14:380-9.
125. Genshaft AS, Li S, Gallant CJ, Darmanis S, Prakadan SM, et al. Multiplexed, targeted profiling of single-cell proteomes and transcriptomes in a single reaction. Genome Biol 2016;17:188.
126. Morrison LE, Lefever MR, Behman LJ, Leibold T, Roberts EA, et al. Brightfield multiplex immunohistochemistry with multispectral imaging. Lab Invest 2020; doi: 10.1038/s41374-020-0429-0.
127. Ransohoff RM. A polarizing question: do M1 and M2 microglia exist? Nat Neurosci 2016;19:987-91.

Reyes *et al*. *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:215-33
DOI: 10.20517/2347-8659.2020.13

Neuroimmunology and Neuroinflammation

Review

Open Access

Microbiome meets microglia in neuroinflammation and neurological disorders

Rachel E. N. Reyes, Zeyu Zhang, Lei Gao, Liana Asatryan

School of Pharmacy, University of Southern California, Los Angeles, CA 90033, USA.

Correspondence to: Dr. Liana Asatryan, School of Pharmacy, University of Southern California, 1985 Zonal Ave, Los Angeles, CA 90033, USA. E-mail: asatryan@usc.edu

How to cite this article: Reyes REN, Zhang Z, Gao L, Asatryan L. Microbiome meets microglia in neuroinflammation and neurological disorders. *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:215-33.
http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.13

Received: 2 Feb 2020 **First Decision**: 27 Feb 2020 **Revised**: 6 Mar 2020 **Accepted**: 25 Mar 2020 **Available online**: 16 Jun 2020

Science Editor: Jeffrey Bajramovic **Copy Editor**: Jing-Wen Zhang **Production Editor**: Tian Zhang

Abstract

One of the emerging hot topics in biosciences is the intriguing link between gut microbial communities and its influences outside the gastrointestinal tract, such as the central nervous system (CNS), including its cognitive activities and immune responses. Beyond its neuroprotective properties, microglia are also critical for neuronal synaptic pruning and neural remodeling during CNS development. Prolonged microglia activation and neuroinflammation are considered key contributors to neurological disorders. In this regard, it is becoming increasingly important to consider the potential influences underlying the crosstalk between the intestinal microbiota ecosystem and host when determining biomarkers of disease and treatment efficacy. The commensal microbiota is critical for immune development and continuous function through the recognition of bacteria-produced and regulated metabolites. In cases of microbial dysbiosis and microglial dysfunction, chronic neuroinflammation may persist, leading to the propagation of neurological disorders. To address potential mechanisms, this review focuses on the microbiota-gut-brain axis as it relates to communication pathways that have been linked to aberrant CNS immune activity and pathology. We also address anti-inflammatory and neuroprotective mediators which may counteract these detrimental activities. Finally, we explore the potential benefits of current and novel microbiome-targeted approaches to treat neuroinflammation and consequential neurological disease.

Keywords: Microglia, neuroinflammation, neurological disorders, microbiota, gut-brain axis, vagus nerve, short chain fatty acids, hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axes, hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axes, therapeutic interventions

© The Author(s) 2020. **Open Access** This article is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, for any purpose, even commercially, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license, and indicate if changes were made.

INTRODUCTION

Microglia are the central nervous system (CNS) resident macrophages responsible for initiating innate immune responses to a variety of different stress and damage signals in the brain[1]. For example, when less mobile "resting" microglia recognize these signals with actively surveying processes, they become highly motile and assume an activated phenotype, facilitating the release of pro-inflammatory and cell-recruiting cytokines (e.g., IL-6, IL-12, IL-1β, and TNF-α) at the damage site[2]. After isolating and resolving the problem, it becomes critical for microglia to reestablish homeostatic conditions through the release of anti-inflammatory cytokines (e.g., IL-4, IL-10, and TGF-β) and return to the sentinel deactivated state[3]. On the other hand, prolonged microglial activation has been linked to harmful inflammatory states leading to dysfunctional brain activity and irreversible tissue damage, such as within Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases[4,5]. Beyond their immune functions, microglia are also important regulators of synaptic pruning and neural patterning during development and throughout adulthood[6]. Despite its evident importance in health and disease, it remains unclear whether signals to modulate microglia activity originate within the CNS only or may also occur externally from other organ/tissue systems. Identification of these additional factors related to microglial function will warrant a better understanding of causes of neuroinflammation and its relationship to CNS disorders.

Recently, one such factor has made a surprisingly strong debut within the scientific community: the vast microflora inhabiting the gastrointestinal (GI) tract has emerged as a critical player connected to multiple host systems, including those outside the GI tract. The gut microbiome (GMB) is able to modulate mucosal immunity and systemic immune activity as well as immune responses within the CNS. For example, the GMB has been demonstrated to affect the development and ongoing activity of microglia[7]. Aberrant changes to the microbiota ("dysbiosis") and dysregulated microglial activity have both been linked to some of the same neurodevelopmental, neurobehavioral and neurodegenerative disorders, including autism spectrum disorder, anxiety, depression, and Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases[8-12]. Of note, the GMB and its relationship to immune system maturation and developmental disorders have been extensively described in multiple reviews and are not discussed in detail within this article[13-15]. This review instead focuses on the multidirectional pathways and microbial metabolites within the microbiota-gut-brain axis as they specifically relate to neuroinflammation-induced neuropathologies. Finally, we discuss recent and novel microbiome-targeted strategies as potential treatment options for neurological disorders.

MICROBIOME, MICROGLIA AND NEUROLOGICAL DISORDERS

A mother's womb is aseptic, and, as such, we begin to develop our microbiome environments within the first few days after being born, and several factors, including method of birth, institution of breastfeeding or formula diet, and exposure to different environmental elements, determine initial microbiota compositions and continual adaptations[16]. The presence of early microbial colonization is essential for the maturation and healthy function of numerous CNS systems. The innate immune system require microbiota-induced epithelial signaling in order to correctly respond to pathogenic exposure[17]. For example, Erny *et al.*[7] demonstrated that adult germ-free (GF) mice were found to have major deficits in neuroimmune response compared to conventional controls, such as expressing reduced repertoire of cytokine and chemokine related genetic changes and inactivated microglial morphology (e.g., "failed to display rounded perikarya and small processes") in response to lipopolysaccharide (LPS) exposure. Furthermore, they were able to demonstrate that reestablishing microbiota diversity and supplementation with microbial-derived short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs), rather than total bacterial abundance load was important for partial recovery of microglial function[7]. In another example, Sudo *et al.*[18] showed that sterile-bred GF mice, devoid of microbiota, express hyperresponsive irregular hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) activity in response to stress compared to conventionally bred laboratory mice. The HPA axis is considered one of the main relay stations between the GMB and host CNS immune responses, which has been linked to

the development of neuropsychiatric disorders later in life[19]. Another study by Thion *et al.*[20] found that mice born from GF maternal mice expressed changes in genes regulating LPS recognition and processing *in utero* and continued to exhibit sex-specific alterations in microglial-related gene expressions postnatally. It is important to note that the timeframe when the human GMB begins to stabilize and resemble an adult composition, i.e., around three years of age, also overlaps with critical periods of CNS development, synaptic pruning, and neural remodeling[21-23]. These observations support the assertion that a complex commensal microbiota ecosystem and their metabolites are integral to the early programming of key host physiological systems.

Continuous microbiota-gut-brain axis communication may also play an important role during progression of neurological disorders occurring later in life. Clinical analyses have revealed common comorbidities and correlations between neurological symptoms and GI dysfunction, such as anxiety levels corresponding with irritable bowel syndrome symptoms[24] and GI-related symptoms associated with Parkinson's disease[25]. Furthermore, "sickness behavior" is a phenomenon descriptive of subjective changes in mood and behavior commonly found in humans and animal models of infection and illness[26]. These relationships highly suggest that GI activity, immunity and microbiome are linked to the CNS function and psychiatric disorders.

There are various methods to modulate the microbiome in order to study its direct impact on health and diseases, ranging from GF, sterile bred rodent models with overt developmental aberrations to antibiotic treatment and fecal matter transplantation (FMT)[27,28]. FMT studies have begun to reveal potential causal and therapeutic roles for the GMB through its ability to endow phenotypes from donor subjects to recipients, such as transferring anxiety-like behaviors and depressive symptoms within rodent models[29,30]. Furthermore, within the past 6 years, FMT has become a standard of care for patients suffering from recurrent *C. difficile* infections who were unresponsive to antibiotic treatments but responded favorably to the induction of healthy donor microbiota cultures[31]. Colonic samples from healthy donors were also able to improve GI and behavioral symptoms in a small ($n = 18$) cohort of children diagnosed with autism spectrum disorders[32]. Although the exact mechanisms directing microbiota-gut-brain axis influences in neurological disorders are still being investigated, communication pathways and components have been identified which are related to the systemic immune system, vagus nerve signaling, and neuroendocrine system[33].

THE MICROBIOTA-GUT-BRAIN AXIS AND IMMUNE SYSTEM

The gut microbiota, intestinal immune tolerance and homeostasis

Due to lifelong cohabitation with the intestinal microbiota, mucosal immune tolerance becomes important in differentiating between commensal and pathogenic bacteria[34]. The GMB is not hidden from immune systems but is instead active in maintaining homeostasis through "tolerogenic" signaling[35]. Toll-like receptors (TLRs) on the membrane of epithelial cells and lymphoid cells are responsible for recognizing different broad microbe-associated patterns, including bacterial membrane components, endotoxins such as LPS, and bacterial DNA[36]. TLR stimulation releases nuclear factor kappa-light-chain enhancer of activated B cells (NF-κβ) and involves activation of signaling chemokines, cytokines, and other effector proteins of humoral immune activity[37]. TLR signaling is decreased during the early weeks of development while the GMB ecosystem is being established, and immune-tolerance of bacteria is achieved when recognition of commensal bacteria-produced antigens inhibits inflammatory activation[38]. Specifically, TLR activation on the apical, microbiota-exposed membrane of epithelial cells, rather than on the basolateral membrane, inhibits the inflammatory cascade and limits immune response to microbial antigens found within the GI lumen[39]. Incorrect or incomplete immune-tolerance development can lead to autoimmune diseases, chronic inflammation, and tissue damage. The importance of the GMB in promoting immune homeostasis opens the possibility of microbiota-targeted therapeutics to reduce inflammation in response to GI diseases, such as colon cancer and colitis[40].

Microbiota-derived LPS and neural-immune interactions

The brain and connected CNS have previously been regarded as "privileged" and immunologically isolated from the rest of the body[41]. Consequently, we assumed the peripheral immune system was in place to assure healthy functioning and security for the rest of the body. Despite this separation, we have begun to identify factors outside the CNS which directly impact neurology and behaviors.

The commensal gut microbiota confers colonization protection from pathogens through nutrient and spatial niche competition, in addition to their ability to interact with the mucosal immune system and influence release of soluble IgA antibodies, antimicrobial peptides, and defensins against invaders[42,43]. However, damage to the mucosal wall, for example due to antibiotic-induced microbiota dysbiosis, overgrowth of opportunistic pathogens, and chronic inflammation, can lead to increased susceptibility to infection and permeability of the intestinal epithelial layer, known as "leaky gut", allowing luminal contents to escape into circulation and induce systemic inflammation[44,45].

The Gram-negative bacterial membrane component LPS is an endotoxin commonly utilized to study the effects of inflammation on behavior in rodent models, including voluntary ethanol intake, anxiety-like behaviors, and blood-brain barrier integrity[46-49]. Studies have demonstrated the direct effects of LPS on microglial activation and subsequent neurological pathologies and behaviors. For example, systemically introduced LPS has been shown to induce depressive-like behaviors in animals, similar to "sickness behavior" commonly comorbid with human infection diseases[50]. Biesmans *et al.*[50] showed that intraperitoneal injection of LPS increased serum levels of cytokines, including IL-1β, IL-6, TNF-α, IL-10, and MCP-1, peaking at 2 h after administration. This correlated with upregulation of CNS astrocytic immune activity biomarker glial fibrillary acidic protein, decreased locomotion, and reduced sucrose preference which indicates anhedonia associated with sickness behavior[50]. In another example, Hoogland *et al.*[51] demonstrated increased microglial activation after 48 h of LPS administration and 72 h after live *E.coli* injection. Furthermore, they found increased inflammatory cytokines within brain homogenates (TNF-α, IL-1β, MCP-1, and M-CSF) at 3 h after LPS stimulation compared to 20 h after *E. coli* infection. This indicates that *E. coli*-associated LPS endotoxins induced neuroinflammation before circulatory introduction of LPS-producing bacteria, suggesting the importance of bacterial substrates in triggering immune responses. Furthermore, blocking TLR4-LPS recognition in a rat model prevented sickness behavior following LPS challenge[52]. While unclear of its origin, whether having migrated from the gut microbiome or being derived from a brain microbiome, bacterial LPS has also been identified within the neuronal parenchyma of Alzheimer's patients[53]. Zhao *et al.*[54] observed that LPS tended to self-associate and congregate around neurons, indicated by neuronal marker NeuN- and DAPI (nuclear)-staining, within brain tissues from patients with Alzheimer's Disease compared to age-matched controls that instead expressed more punctate and dispersed LPS. Furthermore, they were able to show that primary co-cultures of human neuronal-glial cells significantly reduced DNA transcription factors when incubated with LPS[54]. Collectively, these observations suggest the critical role of the GMB and microbial endotoxins in influencing systemic and CNS inflammation related to neurological disorders.

THE GUT AND VAGUS NERVE SYSTEM INTERACTIONS

Vagal afferents and chemosensing through G-protein coupled receptors

The vagus nerve allows for bidirectional communication between the gut and brain, where afferent signaling conveys sensory information from the gut to a mesh-like system of neurons in the brain. Microglia are sensitive to intestinal microbiome changes and are effective at receiving signals from the vagus nerve to regulate neuroimmune activity and function. Gut endocrine cells (EECs) play important roles in mediating intestinal information to the CNS. They serve as chemosensors that integrate extrinsic and intrinsic signals within the gut. EECs interact with the vagus nerve by responding to different stimuli, such as nutrients, harmful toxins, and bacterial products. Through this cell-mediated sensing mechanism, EECs interact with vagus afferents by releasing serotonin, gut hormones (CCK, PYY, ghrelin, leptin,

and GLP-1) and SCFAs that target receptors located on vagus fibers. Long chain fatty acids (LCFAs) also interact with vagus receptors through cholecystokinin-dependent mechanisms.

Direct measurements of EEC activities have been challenging due to their location in the gut wall. Recently, the lab of Reimann *et al.*[55] has developed a method to directly investigate EEC activity by genetically tagging EECs with a fluorescent protein which expresses under the control of the promoter for a peptide hormone precursor proglucagon, GLP-1. Using this approach, they established the important role of G-protein coupled receptors (GPCRs) in chemosensing and their ability to activate EECs leading to the secretion of peptide hormones. GPCRs are critical for a variety of physiological functions, such as regulation of immune system, autonomic nervous system regulation, sensory (taste and smell) functions, and maintaining energy homeostasis. Recently, some GPCR chemoreceptors were found to be activated by bile acids, SCFAs, and LCFAs, which are also linked to EECs[56]. It was shown that the LCFA receptors GPR40 and GPR120 and the bile acid receptor GPR131 (TGR5) are all expressed on the surface of EECs[55]. In addition, Samuel *et al.*[57] found that isolated EECs express GPR41, a receptor for SCFAs. It has been shown that these chemosensors are located on the basolateral membrane of of EECs, which interact with the circulatory system[58]. In addition, it is likely that GPCRs co-store and co-release with gut-derived hormones, which indicate that GPCRs may be regulated by associated intestinal hormones. SCFAs and LCFAs, released from gut microbiota or derived nutritionally, can activate release of CKK hormone, which can bind to CCK-A and CCK-B receptors (CCK-r) on vagal afferents that signal the brain[59]. In response, the brain develops immune responses and triggers vagal efferent fibers to release acetylcholine (ACh), which is the principal parasympathetic neurotransmitter[60]. These observations suggest that gut dysbiosis can result in pathological changes in the levels of gut hormones and metabolites, thus influencing GPCR function and dysregulating the vagus nerve and subsequent CNS activities.

The interactions between gamma-aminobutyric acid and vagus nerve

Gut microbiota also produce a number of neurotransmitters similar to mammalian physiological systems, including dopamine, norepinephrine, serotonin, and gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA). GABA is the major inhibitory neurotransmitter in the CNS; however, GABA receptors are expressed throughout the body, including on the vagus nerve[61]. In human intestines, GABA is produced by the microbiota populations *Lactobacillus brevis* and *Bifidobacterium dentium*. GF animals were shown to have reduced levels of GABA, suggesting that the gut microbiota is able to influence GABA levels. Furthermore, altered GABA levels have also been associated with neurological conditions, such as depression, anxiety, autism, and schizophrenia[62,63]. For example, studies into rodents were found to have reduced depressive and anxiety-like behaviors after receiving chronic administration of the probiotic *Lactobacillus rhamnosus*, which was accompanied by decreases in GABA receptor subunit mRNA expression and corticosterone levels[64]. The GABA-related reductions in behavioral effects did not occur in vagotomized rats and mice[65]. Considering this effect existed only when the vagus nerve was intact, it suggests that intestinal microorganisms regulate GABA signaling through the vagus nerve. In support of this conclusion, animal studies by Takanaga *et al.*[66] demonstrated that GABA produced by intestinal bacteria are able to cross the blood-brain barrier and influence CNS activities. In addition, the impairment of GABA-mediated neuronal inhibition associated with epilepsy might contribute to the therapeutic efficacy of vagus nerve stimulation, as was demonstrated in patients with drug-resistant partial epilepsy[67].

Vagus nerve pathways in controlling inflammation

The microbiota-gut-brain interaction through the vagus nerve plays a major role in regulating inflammation. The anti-inflammatory properties of vagus nerve function is mediated through several debated pathways, such as the cholinergic anti-inflammatory pathway, the HPA axis and the splenic-sympathetic nerve anti-inflammatory pathway.

Previous studies demonstrated that the cholinergic anti-inflammatory pathway (CAP) plays a pivotal role in controlling neuroinflammation. The CAP modulates inflammation through vagal efferent fibers that

synapse onto enteric neurons surrounding the GI tract, which can release acetylcholine[68,69]. Acetylcholine binds to α-7-nicotinic acetylcholine receptors on macrophages, including microglia, and inhibit the release of the pro-inflammatory cytokine TNF-α[70]. Other studies also illustrate the ability of the vagal nerve to regulate neuroinflammation by sensing increased peripheral pro-inflammatory cytokines[71]. As a negative feedback loop, pro-inflammatory cytokine release is prevented if increased levels of inflammation are detected through the acetylcholine-mediated anti-inflammatory signaling system[71]. Wang *et al.*[72] observed that electrical stimulation of the vagus nerve can inhibit TNF synthesis in wild-type mice but not in α-7-nicotinic acetylcholine receptor-deficient mice. Collectively, these results support the critical role of the vagus nerve in regulating microglia activity and neuroinflammation through CAP signaling.

Studies of vagus nerve stimulation have provided additional evidence for vagus nerve afferent involvement in neuroimmune modulation. For example, non-invasive vagus nerve stimulation is widely used in the treatment of drug resistant depression and has been shown to increase levels of norepinephrine[73,74]. The locus coeruleus is an aminergic brain stem nucleus which represents the main source of norepinephrine in the brain and plays a critical role as a neurotransmitter and neuroimmune modulator, including regulation of microglial activity. By activating β-receptors on the cell surface, norepinephrine affects microglia cell dynamics, which then influence neuronal activity[75,76]. These observations indicate the potential of vagus nerve stimulation to regulate microglial activity.

Recently, the inflammatory reflex was found to be located where vagus afferent fibers activate vagus efferent fibers. Borovikova *et al.*[77] reported that septic shock was prevented by vagus nerve stimulation of the distal end of the vagus nerve after injection of LPS. This effect is due to CAP activation and the binding of acetylcholine to α-7-nicotinic acetylcholine receptors in order to inhibit macrophages from releasing pro-inflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α[72]. However, the interaction between the vagus nerve and intestinal immune system is indirect because the vagus nerve does not directly interact with resident macrophages in the gut. Therefore, Rosas-Ballina *et al.*[78] suggested that the vagus nerve tends to activate the splenic sympathetic nerve through a vago-sympathetic co-activation of ventricular contractility and heart rate[78,79]. It is hypothesized that released norepinephrine from the distal end of the spleen can bind to the β2 adrenergic receptor of splenic lymphocytes. Its binding leads to the release of acetylcholine, which in turn binds to α-7-nicotinic acetylcholine receptors on splenic macrophages and inhibits the release of TNF-α[80]. However, this hypothesis is still being debated due to the controversial interaction between the spleen and the vagus nerve[81]. Furthermore, some studies demonstrate the spleen receives not only sympathetic inputs but parasympathetic inputs as well. The sympathetic inputs relay information to the spleen via the arteries while the parasympathetic inputs transfer signals at the tips of the spleen.

The vagus nerve also plays an important role within the neuroendocrine-immune axis, which can regulate coordinated neural, behavioral, and endocrine responses with the immune system in order to prevent chronic neuroinflammation. The vagus nerve recognizes peripheral pro-inflammatory cytokines released by macrophages, such as IL-1, IL-6, and TNF-α and conveys this information to the neurons within HPA pathway in order to decrease peripheral inflammation[82]. Overall, the vagus nerve has anti-inflammatory properties both through its afferent end (activation of HPA axis) and through its efferent end (activation of CAP).

THE GUT AND THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

In addition to the vagus nerve, intestinal microbiota are able to communicate with the CNS through hormones secreted by glands within the endocrine system. Steroid hormones take part in many critical physiological processes in our body, such as survival of stress, injury, metabolism, inflammation, salt and water balance, immune functions, and development of sexual characteristics. Studies show that gut microbiota are also able produce and regulate these hormones to affect brain activity, including the state of microglia and neuroinflammation.

Glucocorticoids through HPA axis

The HPA axis is a complex set of direct pathways and feedback interactions which include the hypothalamus, the pituitary gland, and the adrenal glands. The hypothalamus produces and releases corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), which can induce the pituitary to release adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH). ACTH then stimulates the adrenal cortex, producing glucocorticoid hormones. Each of these hormones can in turn act back on the hypothalamus and pituitary in a negative feedback cycle. Glucocorticoids are corticosteroids which bind to glucocorticoid receptors present in almost every vertebrate animal cell. They can reduce certain aspects of immune activities through a feedback mechanism. Cortisol is the most important human glucocorticoid which has a variety of cardiovascular, metabolic, immunologic, and homeostatic functions. The influence of microbiota on the HPA axis depends on many factors including bacterial strain, host age and sex, and different mouse strains[83-89]. Individual strains of bacteria can regulate the HPA axis and the microbiota as a whole participate in developmentally programming stress responses[90]. Conversely, microglial activity can also affect hormone release through HPA axis. In response to cerebral insults, microglia secrete a variety of inflammatory molecules, such as cytokines, stimulating neuronal activity within the paraventricular nucleus of the hypothalamus to activate the HPA axis anti-inflammatory feedback loop to reduce prolonged neuroinflammation.

Glucocorticoids released by the HPA axis bind to glucocorticoid receptors, which are highly expressed in neurons and microglia to affect cellular responses[85,90]. Glucocorticoids work to suppress both stress and immune responses by binding to specific glucocorticoid receptors and mineralocorticoid receptors in CNS and immune cells[91]. Studies have demonstrated that acute stress induced higher levels of ACTH and corticosterone in the serum of GF mice compared to conventionally-raised control mice[85-87]. Recent targeted microarray analysis found 23 upregulated glucocorticoid receptor pathway genes in the hippocampus of GF mice compared to controls, of which six genes (*Slc22a5*, *Aqp1*, *Stat5a*, *Ampd3*, *Plekhf1*, and *Cyb561*) were confirmed by PCR validation[87]. Among these six genes, two (*Stat5a* and *Ampd3*) were upregulated in *E. coli*-derived LPS-treated mice. The GF mice demonstrated reduced anxiety-like behaviors in response to acute stress, whereas LPS-treated control mice demonstrated anti-depressive but not anti-anxiety behavior and a decrease in the basal serum cortisol levels. LPS-induced abnormal behavior was consistent with previous findings that *E. coli* colonization in GF mice enhanced the HPA axis response to stress[86]. In another study, plasma ACTH and corticosterone hormones were decreased in mice monocolonized with *Bifidobacterium infantis,* but were increased in *E. coli*-monocolonized mice. In addition, after receiving fecal samples from patients diagnosed with severe depression ("depression microbiota"), control mice exhibited anxiety- and depressive-like behaviors with parallel downregulation of *Stat5a* gene in their hippocampus compared with "healthy microbiota" recipient mice[92]. *Stat5a* is a member of STAT family encoded transcription factors, mediating signals for a broad spectrum of cytokines. The JAK2-STAT5 signaling pathway plays a critical role in mediating IL-3-induced activation of microglia[93]. Furthermore, STAT5 may play a protective role in damaged nerve cells and has been implicated in cellular functions of proliferation, differentiation, and apoptosis with relevance to processes including hematopoiesis and immunoregulation[92]. Collectively, these observations suggest that microbiota related STAT5 levels may influence neuroinflammation and related disorders.

CRH and glucocorticoids from the HPA axis have been shown to directly affect microglia activity by binding to functional CRH-R1 receptors on microglia and initiate apoptosis of microglia[94]. In that study, Ock *et al.*[94] demonstrated that CRH-induced apoptosis did not induce nitric oxide production or increase expression of pro-inflammatory genes, which indicates that CRH does not affect inflammatory activation of microglia. This mechanism has been linked to the mitochondrial pathway and induction of reactive oxygen species (ROS) production, which can damage microglia cells and promote apoptosis[95]. In support, the antioxidant *N*-acetyl cysteine inhibited CRH-induced microglial cell death suggesting that ROS was a main cause of apoptosis.

Glucocorticoid levels are strongly related to the activation of the HPA axis, and distinctively affect macrophage function. Low levels of corticosterone enhanced pro-inflammatory factors, while high corticosterone concentrations suppressed macrophage activation[96]. Steroid hormones directly target mature microglia; glucocorticoids predominantly modulate expression of glucocorticoid receptors to regulate microglial inflammatory activity[97]. Anti-inflammatory effect of glucocorticoids on microglia can reverse the pro-inflammatory function of CRH by attenuating the production of TNF-α, IL-6, and nitric oxide from LPS + IFN-γ-activated murine microglia. Physical or emotional stress may induce microglial activation in the brain as determined by changes in morphology[98,99]. The stress-induced elevation of glucocorticoids can activate microglia in rats, and chronic stress can cause a marked transition from a resting to non-resting state[100]. Temporal treatment of glucocorticoids can exhibit the opposite results[101]. Stress and administration of glucocorticoids prior to peripheral immune stimuli exerted pro-inflammatory effects on microglia, while exposure to glucocorticoids after stimuli had anti-inflammatory effects in a rodent model[101]. Corticosteroids limit microglial activation that occurs during acute stress, serving as an important endogenous suppressive signal limiting neuroinflammation[98,99]. Moreover, glucocorticoid level increases and microglial morphological complexity decreases with aging[88]. Increasing glucocorticoid levels in young mice enhanced microglial ramifications, pointing to their increased neuroprotective function. The opposite, amoeboid state of microglia renders them to move freely in the brain tissue and is indicative of inflammatory activation. Amoeboid microglia occur more frequently with aging. The effects of glucocorticoids or corticosteroids on microglia morphology are dependent on treatment time and concentration of glucocorticoids.

Estrogen through hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis

The hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis (HPG axis) plays an important role in the reproductive and immune systems, and controls development, reproduction, and aging in animal models. The hypothalamus secretes gonadotropin-releasing hormone, the pituitary gland produces luteinizing hormone and follicle-stimulating hormone, and the gonads release estrogen and testosterone. Although the HPG axis has not been as deeply studied as the HPA axis, strong evidence suggests that estrogen has the capacity to inhibit neuroinflammatory processes and can impact immune cells, including microglial functions.

Estradiol (E2) is an estrogen steroid hormone and the major female sex hormone. Studies show that 17β-estradiol (E2) inhibits microglia activation[102] and reduces the expression of inflammatory mediators[102]. For example, E2 was able to inhibit Aβ-induced expression of scavenger receptor-A in microglia cells from an animal model of Alzheimer's disease[102]. Ovarian hormone deprivation can alter the expression of major components of estrogen and neuronal inhibitory signaling, participating in the control of microglia reactivity[103]. Moreover, aging is related to exaggerated responses to acute inflammatory stimuli, modulated by the duration of hormone deprivation. This deprivation is due to decreased estrogen receptor activity, which, despite the continuous synthesis of the receptors, induces neuroinflammation[89].

SHORT-CHAIN FATTY ACIDS IN THE GUT AND NEUROINFLAMMATION

Microbiota are able to influence brain functions through the production of metabolites such as SCFAs. In addition to being derived from dietary sources, SCFAs are also produced by the microflora in the distal small intestine and colon though the fermentation of dietary fibers. The most abundant SCFAs in the human gut are acetate, propionate, and butyrate. Acetate is used for host synthesis of lipids and cholesterol, and propionate is mostly absorbed by the liver and serves as a substrate during gluconeogenesis. Butyrate functions as the main energy source for colonic enterocytes[104]. SCFAs are mainly absorbed in both the small and large intestine through similar mechanisms, such as diffusion of the dissociated forms and through active transport by SCFA transporters[105].

High doses of systemic or locally injected butyrate has been found to exert neuroprotective effects, such as memory enhancement and cognitive function restoration[106,107]. Physiological levels of butyrate may

influence and improve neuroinflammation through different mechanisms. Butyrate is a known inhibitor of histone deacetylases (HDACs)[108,109], which control the innate inflammatory system by regulating the number of microglia cells and astrocytes[110]. Histone acetylation is a post-translational modification through epigenetic process and causes the chromatin structure to loosen by weakening electrostatic attraction between the histone proteins and DNA backbone. Activation of microglia are suppressed by this process. Therefore, increased HDACs have been shown to be involved in neurodegenerative disorders, such as Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases[110,111].

Butyrate is one of the most important microbial end-products of the human colon fermentation process which displays several physiological effects via different mechanisms. One function is mentioned above: butyrate is a well-established HDAC inhibitor. In addition to having a significant impact on the transcriptional system, butyrate also serves as the energy substrate. Butyrate is the primary source of energy in the colon and microbiome, which accounts for nearly 70% of ATP produced. It may appear that metabolic events in the colon are disconnected with that of the brain. However, it is impossible to ignore the immense energy demand of the brain. In this regard, energy imbalance in the brain has been noted at early stages of neurodegenerative disease such as Alzheimer's disease[112]. Another function of butyrate is its ability to activate GPCRs, as described in detail above, within the vagus nerve system section[113]. Butyrate can signal through GPR109a, which is widely expressed in colonocytes, T cells and has also been found in microglia. Butyrate is sensed by FFA2 (previously GPR43) and FFA3 (previously GPR41), which modulate the relationship between SCFAs and gut, as well as the whole body energy use[114,115].

Many studies have shown that butyrate can serve as an anti-inflammatory agent, improving gut barrier function, protecting against colon cancer and neurodegenerative diseases, such as Alzheimer's disease[116-118]. These studies demonstrate that treatment with butyrate inhibited pro-inflammatory cytokines (IFN-γ, TNF-α, IL-1β, IL-6, and IL-8) and upregulated anti-inflammatory cytokines (IL-10 and TGF-β). This effect may be partly due to the inhibition of transcription factor NF-κB that controls the transcription of DNA, cytokine production, and cell survival. Aguilar *et al.*[119] demonstrated that butyrate suppressed the NF-κB signaling pathway by rescuing the redox machinery and controlling ROS, which also regulate NF-κB activation. In addition, butyrate is known to enhance and repair barrier function of intestinal epithelial cells. *In vitro* experiments have illustrated that butyrate plays an important role in the maintenance of gut-barrier integrity in order to block the translocation of LPS, which can cause immune activation[120]. For instance, butyrate leads to the upregulation of mucin 2, the most prominent mucin protein, and enhances the protection of the mucosal layer[121]. These effects of butyrate were demonstrated in Caco-2 cell cultures, which are human epithelial colorectal adenocarcinoma cells, and can form confluent monolayers *in vitro* that both structurally and functionally resemble the small intestinal epithelium. For instance, butyrate leads to the upregulation of mucin 2, the most prominent mucin protein, and enhances the protection of the mucosal layer[121].

Gut dysbiosis and reduced levels of SCFAs have been observed within neurological disease, including Pelizaeus–Merzbacher disease[122]. Unger *et al.*[123] found changes in gut microbiota and SCFAs in patients diagnosed with Parkinson's disease. Fecal SCFA concentrations were significantly reduced in Parkinson's patients compared to controls. This was associated with reduced microbiota populations of *Bacteroidetes* and *Prevotellaceae*[123]. Furthermore, some studies have demonstrated beneficial effects of SCFAs during neuronal pathologies, such as against formation of neurotoxic Aβ aggregation, which occurs during the pathogenesis of Alzheimer's disease[124]. SCFAs have been reported to increase the expression level of retinotic acid in the GI tract, which inhibits Th17 cell differentiation and promotes Treg proliferation, limiting prolonged neuroinflammation[125]. SCFAs, especially butyrate, are able to modulate immune cells and influence cell proliferation and apoptosis. For example, high concentration of butyrate induces cell apoptosis while low concentration will enhance cell proliferation[126]. Collectively, these observations support the ability of SCFAs to have a therapeutic effect on many neurodegenerative disorders.

MICROBIOME-TARGETED THERAPEUTICS ADDRESSING NEUROLOGICAL DISEASES

The conclusion of the 10-year NIH Human Microbiome Project has been integral in providing resources, methods, and discoveries linking humans and their microbiomes to health and disease[127]. The study utilized a combination of shotgun metagenomics, untargeted metabolomics, and immunoprofiling to determine host-microbiota interactions manifest in largely diverse ways, and sampling large population sizes is critical for accurately determining potential mechanisms of microbiome-linked diseases[127]. They demonstrated that microbiome composition alone was not always an accurate representation of host phenotype, and necessitated the consideration of microbial functions of the microbiota ecosystem as they interacted with host immunity, metabolism, and other interconnected activities[128]. Through this accomplishment, microbiome-targeted strategies have begun to gain interest in both studying mechanistic relationships within animal models and in the treatment of pathologies, including those related to the gut-brain axis.

Antibiotics: non-absorbable "eubiotic" rifaximin

Beyond their bacteriostatic and bactericidal effects in treating GI infections, antibiotics have been shown to negatively affect the intestinal flora, a phenomenon considered "collateral damage". Antibiotic treatment can have long-lasting negative effects on the GMB, which has been shown to decrease diversity and reduce beneficial bacteria, leading to increased susceptibility to pathogens, such as *Salmonella* and *Clostridium difficile*[129,130]. Alternatively, rifaximin, a broad-spectrum, non-absorbable antibiotic, prescribed to treat irritable bowel syndrome and traveler's diarrhea caused by *E. coli,* has shown unique qualities related to the GMB and symptoms beyond the GI tract[131]. The mechanism of rifaximin action to reduce pathogens is through binding the β-subunit of microbial RNA polymerase and inhibition of bacterial RNA synthesis[132]. However, unlike other antibiotics which commonly reduce microbiota diversity and promote dysbiosis, rifaximin exerts anti-inflammatory properties and has the "eubiotic" ability to enrich beneficial microbiota populations[133]. For example, Maccaferri *et al.*[134] found that *in vitro* treatment with rifaximin increased levels of *Bifidobacteria*, *Atopobium*, and *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii* cultured from colonic samples of patients with Crohn's disease. These changes were also accompanied by increases in SCFAs, microbial metabolites known to be important in host health, metabolism, and immune homeostasis[135]. In a rodent model of ankylosing spondylitis spinal joint inflammation, rifaximin treatment was able to inhibit TLR-4/NF-κβ signaling and decrease levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as TNF-α, IL-6, IL-17A, and IL-21[136]. Another important commensal GMB population and producer of the SCFA lactate, *Lactobacillus,* was increased in a rat model of visceral hyperalgesia with rifaximin treatment[137]. Furthermore, hepatic encephalopathy is a common complication of patients with acute or chronic liver disease that is detected through neuropsychological testing and presents as neurocognitive decline: forgetfulness, confusion, irritability, and coma at its most severe forms[138]. These symptoms are mainly a result of elevated levels of ammonia. Rifaximin was able to reduce levels of ammonia-producing intestinal bacteria without decreasing GMB diversity, while also significantly reducing hospital stay, mortality rate, and improving psychometric test performance in patients with mild and severe hepatic encephalopathy compared to other treatments[139]. These observations support alternate uses for rifaximin which may be related to beneficial changes in microbiota and SCFAs, including its indication for CNS-related disorders.

Microbial-derived metabolites: sodium butyrate

Beyond directly targeting and supplementing live bacteria in the GMB, the Human Microbiome Project stressed the importance of microbiota functions in influencing host immunity and pathologies. As a HDAC inhibitor, sodium butyrate can change the balance between two types of enzymes, histone acetylase and HDACs[140]. These two enzymes control acetylation, which is an important process in chromatin structure and gene expression associated with many diseases, such as diabetes, Alzheimer's disease, and various cancers[141-143]. Physiological doses of sodium butyrate (0.25-4.00 mM) were observed to inhibit glioblastoma cell proliferation and induce cancer cell senescence *in vitro*[143]. Pharmacological treatment of sodium

butyrate was also shown to significantly increase survival rate and delay the neuropathological sequelae in the R6/2 transgenic mouse model of Huntington's disease[106]. The findings of Arnoldussen *et al.*[144] demonstrated the beneficial effect of dietary butyrate intervention on the detrimental effects of high fat diet, including relieving high fat diet-induced cognitive impairment and dementia in humans. In addition to serving as a therapeutic agent in some specific diseases, sodium butyrate can have complementary effects when administered with other agents, such as metformin. Metformin is the most prescribed oral anti-diabetic agent, whose potential benefit in many diseases has been investigated. Recent research demonstrates that metformin is able to increase butyrate-producing populations within the gut microbiome[145,146]. Additional data indicate metformin and butyrate have anti-inflammatory effects in relation to physiological functions, including transcription, replication, and repair in the process of tumorigenesis[147]. Other SCFAs also have therapeutic effects. For example, glatiramer acetate serves as immunomodulator to reverse detrimental immune reactivity in two murine models of irritable bowel disorder. Collectively, these findings point to the therapeutic potential of sodium butyrate and other SCFAs in the treatment of various pathologies including neurological disorders.

Targeting the vagus nerve

Lewy body aggregates, constituted mainly by α-synuclein and ubiquitin, and GI dysfunctions are physiopathological characteristics of early development of Parkinson's disease[148]. Braak *et al.*[149] hypothesized that these early biomarkers initiate within the gut and then progress to the CNS via the vagus nerve and spinal cord. In support, vagus nerve-mediated brain migration of α-synuclein injected into the intestinal wall has been found in a rodent model[150]. Sander and his colleagues further indicated the correlation between the vagus nerve and cognitive fatigue in multiple sclerosis patients[151]. It is thought to be the result of the vagus nerve stimulation due to the pro-inflammatory cytokines causing changes in neural activity in brainstem and hypothalamus[152]. Furthermore, the stimulation of the vagus nerve is used in the treatment of drug resistant depression, which is the major factor for developing Alzheimer's disease. Experiments in APP/PS1 (a murine model of Alzheimer's disease) animals were performed to induce morphological changes in microglia towards a neuroprotective phenotype, which was mediated by vagus nerve activation[153]. Therefore, due to its important role in regulating the gut-brain axis through transferring microbial metabolites and neurotransmitters, such as SCFAs and GABA, manipulation of vagus nerve signaling may play a key role in modulation of some neurological conditions, including Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease, and multiple sclerosis.

LIFE-STYLE INTERVENTIONS

Lifestyle interventions can affect gut microbiome composition, which influence brain activity and immune responses. Since neuroinflammation is strongly linked to neurodegenerative diseases, lifestyle alterations, such as dietary supplement and exercise, are able to play an important role in improving disease states.

Pre-/probiotic supplementation

Probiotics are living beneficial microorganisms (bacteria and yeasts), and prebiotics are the indigestible fibers which feed them[154]. Probiotics have been widely marketed and consumed as dietary supplements or as functional foods, such as "live" yogurts[154]. Probiotic treatments with *Lactobacillus acidophilus*, *L. casei*, and *L. rhamnosus* were able to affect transcription of host genes related to mucosal immunity in healthy human volunteers, supporting the ability of live bacterial cultures to affect host activities[155]. D'Mello *et al.*[26] demonstrated a probiotic mixture, VSL#3, was able to reduce "sickness behavior" by increasing novel social investigation in a liver inflammation rodent model, which was related to an increase in circulating G-CSF, reduction in TNF-α, and a decrease in activated microglia. In an *in vitro* study, peripheral blood mononuclear cells isolated from patients with Parkinson's disease were co-cultured with probiotic bacteria, *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium*, to investigate changes in innate immune cell release of inflammatory signaling markers. Probiotic strains were able to significantly reduce pro-inflammatory (TNF-α, IL-6, and IL-17A) and increase

anti-inflammatory cytokines (IL-4 and IL-10)[156]. In another study of a randomized, double-blind trial, patients diagnosed with Alzheimer's disease given a probiotic mixture for 12 weeks, exhibited a significant score improvement on the mini-mental state examination compared to controls[157].

High fiber prebiotic with or without probiotic supplementation can be a non-invasive strategy to treat neurological conditions. High fiber diets can affect gut microbiota abundance. For example, inulin is a prebiotic fiber and inulin-type fructan supplementation on the fecal microbiota is able to selectively change abundance of specific colon bacteria strains, such as *Anaerostipes*, *Bilophila*, and *Bifidobacterium*[158]. As such, high fiber supplementation has been shown to counter age-related microbiota dysbiosis[159]. Feeding mice with inulin has been shown to beneficially alter gut microbiome resulting in improved neurological outcomes through affecting gut microbiota-produced SCFAs. In support, high fiber diets, in which SCFAs can be derived, have numerous reported health benefits in reducing risk of type 2 diabetes, obesity, stroke, and cardiovascular disease. High fiber diets have been shown to increase circulating levels of butyrate, which may affect CNS function directly[160]. Collectively, these studies provide exciting evidence and demonstrate the need for further investigations into the ability of live bacteria with or without prebiotic supplementation to treat inflammation and neurological pathologies.

Diet

The microbiota composition and diversity are sensitive to host dietary habits[23,161]. Dietary factors may have pro-inflammatory or anti-inflammatory effects[162], which can indirectly affect gut microbiota by providing multiple nutrients and specific compounds. For example, data suggest that the modified Mediterranean-ketogenic diet can modulate the gut microbiome and metabolites in association with improved Alzheimer's disease biomarkers in cerebrospinal fluid[163]. The abundance of *Enterobacteriaceae*, *Akkermansia*, *Slackia*, *Christensenellaceae*, and *Erysipelotriaceae* increases while that of *Bifidobacterium* and *Lachnobacterium* reduces after modified Mediterranean-ketogenic diet treatment in subjects. A bad dietary habit, such as chronic alcohol intake, can induce neuroinflammation and neurodegeneration. Reduction of intestinal bacterial load was able to attenuate alcohol-associated CNS and gut inflammation[164]. Alcohol activated microglia and modified its cell morphology, taking on an amoeboid shape with enlarged soma and shortened peripheral processes[164].

Exercise

Exercise is considered as a protective treatment for neurodegenerative diseases[165]. Both voluntary and controlled exercise can alter the gut microbiota[166]. The microbiota composition of exercised rats was notably different from the sedentary rats with a significantly higher butyrate concentration[167]. Voluntary running has neuroprotective effects in an α-synuclein rat model of Parkinson's disease[168]. It can protect rats against neuronal loss, increase enteric glial expression, and modify gut microbiome composition in the Parkinson's disease model[169]. Exercise is also considered to enhance immune system. The vagus nerve regulates gastrointestinal inflammatory tone. Parasympathetic neuroimmune reflex depends on vagal afferent neurons for the local release of intestinal inflammatory mediators in response to pathogenic gut bacteria. For this reason, elevated vagal tone and parasympathetic influence in the resting state of athletes foster a preferential anti-inflammatory milieu through conditionally influencing microbial composition[170].

CONCLUSION AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Recent discoveries link the GBM and neurological disorders through the microbiota-gut-brain axis. It is also increasingly recognized that disruptions in the GBM ecosystem and its function may directly or indirectly impact CNS disease states, implicating the involvement of microglial-induced neuroinflammation and neurodegeneration. In this respect, there is bidirectional communication between the GBM and the brain, which is achieved through several pathways [Figure 1]. This communication involves the immune system, which not only supports the tolerance towards the microbiome ecosystem residing in the GI

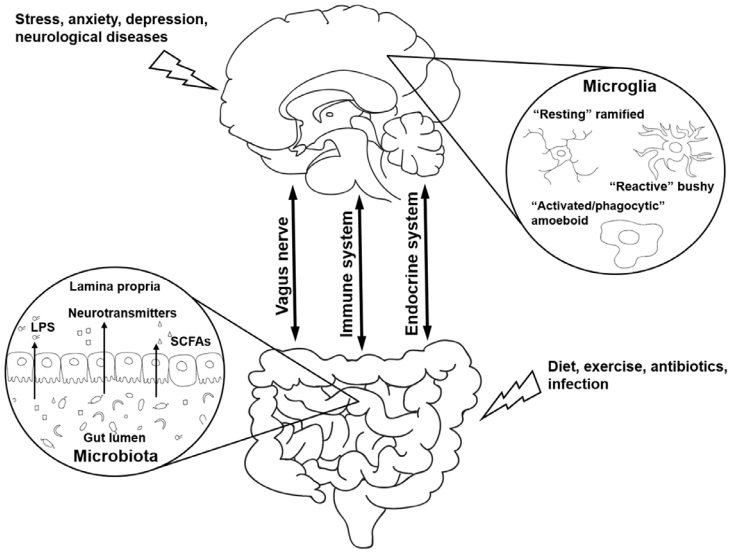


Figure 1. A schematic summarizing the pathways of gut-brain bidirectional communication with the emphasis on the immune system, the vagus nerve, and the endocrine system. The importance of the gut bacterial metabolites in this communication as well as lifestyle changes that affect microglia functioning in normal physiology and during neurological diseases with neuroinflammatory component are indicated. LPS: lipopolysaccharide; SCFAs: short-chain fatty acids

tract but also can react to dysbiosis and "leaky" gut, thus relaying this information to the CNS. On the other hand, there is the involvement of the vagus nerve in the microbiota-gut-brain interactions, which have several afferent and efferent pathways involving a variety of factors such as gut endocrine cells, neurotransmitters, and receptors. Importantly, the vagus nerve plays an important function in controlling inflammation through cholinergic and splenic-sympathetic anti-inflammatory pathways and the HPA axis. The role of hormones in the microbiota-brain bidirectional communication is also deemed important through regulation of the HPA and HPG axes. In addition, microbiota-derived metabolites, such as SCFAs and LCFAs, are integral in maintaining intestinal health and have been shown to also impact neurological health.

The GMB's critical influence on host development, immune homeostasis, and metabolism as well as involvement in the development of the CNS disorders, makes it an ideal candidate for novel preventative therapies and treatments. These strategies include the use of beneficial "eubiotic" antibiotics or other means such as lifestyle interventions (diet and exercise) aimed at reversing microbiota "dysbiosis" by targeting microbiota and their metabolites. Although in its infancy, studies into the efficacy of the microbiome-targeted manipulation and FMT to treat diseases, including those beyond the GI tract, promise interesting insights into the importance and impact of the vast and diverse microcosm residing within us every day of our lives from birth to old age and death.

Certainly, we are still in the beginning of the research trying to reveal the causative links between the GMB and brain function as it relates to neurological disorders. There is a huge untapped potential in this area of microbiome in human health and disease, which will be more appreciated with the improvement of new technologies and methods of GMB research.

DECLARATIONS

Authors' contributions

Designed the focus and scope of the review and substantially contributed to the bulk of the manuscript: Reyes REN, Asatryan L

Contributed to different sections of the review and all participated in editing and finalizing the manuscript: Reyes REN, Zhang Z, Gao L, Asatryan L

Availability of data and materials

Not applicable.

Financial support and sponsorship

Rose Hills Foundation Innovator Grant, USC School of Pharmacy and USC Good Neighbors.

Conflicts of interest

All authors declared that there are no conflicts of interest.

Ethical approval and consent to participate

Not applicable.

Consent for publication

Not applicable.

Copyright

© The Author(s) 2020.

REFERENCES

1. Aloisi F. Immune function of microglia. Glia 2001;36:165-79.
2. Lively S, Schlichter LC. Microglia responses to pro-inflammatory stimuli (LPS, IFNγ + TNFα) and reprogramming by resolving cytokines (IL-4, IL-10). Front Cell Neurosci 2018;12:215.
3. Franco R, Fernandez-Suarez D. Alternatively activated microglia and macrophages in the central nervous system. Prog Neurobiol 2015;131:65-86.
4. Krause DL, Muller N. Neuroinflammation, microglia and implications for anti-inflammatory treatment in Alzheimer's disease. Int J Alzheimers Dis 2010;2010:732806.
5. Hunot S, Hirsch EC. Neuroinflammatory processes in Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 2003;53:S58-60.
6. Harry GJ. Microglia during development and aging. Pharmacol Ther 2013;139:313-26.
7. Erny D, Hrabě de Angelis AL, Jaitin D, Wieghofer P, Staszewski O, et al. Host microbiota constantly control maturation and function of microglia in the CNS. Nat Neurosci 2015;18:965-77.
8. Golubeva AV, Joyce SA, Moloney G, Burokas A, Sherwin E, et al. Microbiota-related changes in bile acid & tryptophan metabolism are associated with gastrointestinal dysfunction in a mouse model of autism. EBioMedicine 2017;24:166-78.
9. Foster JA, Rinaman L, Cryan JF. Stress & the gut-brain axis: regulation by the microbiome. Neurobiol Stress 2017;7:124-36.
10. Caspani G, Kennedy S, Foster JA, Swann J. Gut microbial metabolites in depression: understanding the biochemical mechanisms. Microb Cell 2019;6:454-81.
11. Minter MR, Zhang C, Leone V, Ringus DL, Zhang X, et al. Antibiotic-induced perturbations in gut microbial diversity influences neuro-inflammation and amyloidosis in a murine model of Alzheimer's disease. Sci Rep 2016;6:30028.
12. Parashar A, Udayabanu M. Gut microbiota: implications in Parkinson's disease. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 2017;38:1-7.
13. Lebovitz Y, Ringel-Scaia VM, Allen IC, Theus MH. Emerging developments in microbiome and microglia research: implications for neurodevelopmental disorders. Front Immunol 2018;9:1993.
14. Verdu EF, Hayes CL, O' Mahony SM. Chapter 9 - Importance of the microbiota in early life and influence on future health. The Gut-Brain Axis; 2016. pp. 159-84.
15. Kelly JR, Minuto C, Cryan JF, Clarke G, Dinan TG. Cross talk: the microbiota and neurodevelopmental disorders. Front Neurosci 2017;11:490.
16. Wampach L, Heintz-Buschart A, Hogan A, Muller EEL, Narayanasamy S, et al. Colonization and succession within the human gut microbiome by archaea, bacteria, and microeukaryotes during the first year of life. Front Microbiol 2017;8:738.
17. Dabbagh K, Dahl ME, Stepick-Biek P, Lewis DB. Toll-like receptor 4 is required for optimal development of Th2 immune responses: role of dendritic cells. J Immunol 2002;168:4524.
18. Sudo N. Chapter 13 - The hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis and gut microbiota: a target for dietary intervention? The Gut-Brain Axis; 2016. pp. 293-304.
19. Kato TA, Hayakawa K, Monji A, Kanba S. Missing and possible link between neuroendocrine factors, neuropsychiatric disorders, and microglia. Front Integr Neurosci 2013;7:53.
20. Thion MS, Low D, Silvin A, Chen J, Grisel P, et al. Microbiome influences prenatal and adult microglia in a sex-specific manner. Cell

2018;172:500-16.e16.
21. Hensch TK. Critical period regulation. Annu Rev Neurosci 2004;27:549-79.
22. Knudsen EI. Sensitive periods in the development of the brain and behavior. J Cogn Neurosci 2004;16:1412-25.
23. Yatsunenko T, Rey FE, Manary MJ, Trehan I, Dominguez-Bello MG, et al. Human gut microbiome viewed across age and geography. Nature 2012;486:222-7.
24. Blanchard EB, Scharff L, Schwarz SP, Suls JM, Barlow DH. The role of anxiety and depression in the irritable bowel syndrome. Behav Res Ther 1990;28:401-5.
25. Yan F, Chen Y, Li M, Wang Y, Zhang W, et al. Gastrointestinal nervous system alpha-synuclein as a potential biomarker of Parkinson disease. Medicine (Baltimore) 2018;97:e11337.
26. D'Mello C, Ronaghan N, Zaheer R, Dicay M, Le T, et al. Probiotics improve inflammation-associated sickness behavior by altering communication between the peripheral immune system and the brain. J Neurosci 2015;35:10821-30.
27. Luczynski P, McVey Neufeld KA, Oriach CS, Clarke G, Dinan TG, et al. Growing up in a bubble: using germ-free animals to assess the influence of the gut microbiota on brain and behavior. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 2016;19.
28. Lundberg R, Toft MF, August B, Hansen AK, Hansen CHF. Antibiotic-treated versus germ-free rodents for microbiota transplantation studies. Gut Microbes 2016;7:68-74.
29. Li N, Wang Q, Wang Y, Sun A, Lin Y, et al. Fecal microbiota transplantation from chronic unpredictable mild stress mice donors affects anxiety-like and depression-like behavior in recipient mice via the gut microbiota-inflammation-brain axis. Stress 2019;22:592-602.
30. Kelly JR, Borre Y, O'Brien C, Patterson E, El Aidy S, et al. Transferring the blues: Depression-associated gut microbiota induces neurobehavioural changes in the rat. J Psychiatr Res 2016;82:109-18.
31. Hui W, Li T, Liu W, Zhou C, Gao F. Fecal microbiota transplantation for treatment of recurrent C. Difficile infection: an updated randomized controlled trial meta-analysis. PloS One 2019;14:e0210016.
32. Kang DW, Adams JB, Gregory AC, Borody T, Chittick L, et al. Microbiota transfer therapy alters gut ecosystem and improves gastrointestinal and autism symptoms: an open-label study. Microbiome 2017;5:10.
33. Berthoud HR. Vagal and hormonal gut-brain communication: from satiation to satisfaction. Neurogastroenterol Motil 2008;20:64-72.
34. Thaiss CA, Zmora N, Levy M, Elinav E. The microbiome and innate immunity. Nature 2016;535:65-74.
35. Rescigno M. Gut commensal flora: tolerance and homeostasis. F1000 Biol Rep 2009;1:9.
36. McClure R, Massari P. TLR-dependent human mucosal epithelial cell responses to microbial pathogens. Front Immunol 2014;5:386.
37. Spiljar M, Merkler D, Trajkovski M. The immune system bridges the gut microbiota with systemic energy homeostasis: focus on TLRs, mucosal barrier, and SCFAs. Front Immunol 2017;8:1353.
38. Rakoff-Nahoum S, Pglino J, Eslami-Varzaneh F, Edberg S, Medzhitov R. Recognition of comensal microflora by toll-like receptors in required for intestinal homeostasis. Cell 2004;118:229-41.
39. Lee J, Gonzales-Navajas JM, Raz E. The "polarizing-tolerizing" mechanism of intestinal epithelium: its relevance to colonic homeostasis. Semin Immunopathol 2008;30:3-9.
40. Lazar V, Ditu LM, Pircalabioru GG, Gheorghe I, Curutiu C, et al. Aspects of gut microbiota and immune system interactions in infectious diseases, immunopathology, and cancer. Front Immunol 2018;9:1830.
41. Carson MJ, Doose JM, Melchior B, Schmid CD, Ploix CC. CNS immune privilege: hiding in plain sight. Immunol Rev 2006;213:48-65.
42. Mukherjee S, Hooper Lora V. Antimicrobial defense of the intestine. Immunity 2015;42:28-39.
43. Taur Y, Pamer EG. The intestinal microbiota and susceptibility to infection in immunocompromised patients. Curr Opin Infect Dis 2013;26:332-7.
44. Croswell A, Amir E, Teggatz P, Barman M, Salzman NH. Prolonged impact of antibiotics on intestinal microbial ecology and susceptibility to enteric Salmonella infection. Infect Immun 2009;77:2741-53.
45. Baraona E, Julkunen R, Tannenbaum L, Lieber CS. Role of intestinal bacterial overgrowth in ethanol production and metabolism in rats. Gastroenterology 1986;90:103-10.
46. Wieczorek M, Swiergiel AH, Pournajafi-Nazarloo H, Dunn AJ. Physiological and behavioral responses to interleukin-1β and LPS in vagotomized mice. Physiol Behav 2005;85:500-11.
47. Blednov YA, Benavidez JM, Geil C, Perra S, Morikawa H, et al. Activation of inflammatory signaling by lipopolysaccharide produces a prolonged increase of voluntary alcohol intake in mice. Brain Beh Immun 2011;25:S92-105.
48. Fields CT, Chassaing B, Castillo-Ruiz A, Osan R, Gewirtz AT, et al. Effects of gut-derived endotoxin on anxiety-like and repetitive behaviors in male and female mice. Biol Sex Differ 2018;9:7.
49. Chastre A, Belanger M, Nguyen BN, Butterworth RF. Lipopolysaccharide precipitates hepatic encephalopathy and increases blood-brain barrier permeability in mice with acute liver failure. Liver Int 2014;34:353-61.
50. Biesmans S, Meert TF, Bouwknecht JA, Acton PD, Davoodi N, et al. Systemic immune activation leads to neuroinflammation and sickness behavior in mice. Mediators Inflamm 2013;2013:271359.
51. Hoogland ICM, Westhoff D, Engelen-Lee JY, Melief J, Valls Serón M, et al. Microglial activation after systemic stimulation with lipopolysaccharide and Escherichia coli. Front Cell Neurosci 2018;12:110.
52. Hines DJ, Choi HB, Hines RM, Phillips AG, MacVicar BA. Prevention of LPS-induced microglia activation, cytokine production and sickness behavior with TLR4 receptor interfering peptides. PloS One 2013;8:e60388.
53. Zhao Y, Cong L, Jaber V, Lukiw WJ. Microbiome-derived lipopolysaccharide enriched in the perinuclear region of Alzheimer's disease brain. Front Immunol 2017;8:1064.
54. Zhao Y, Cong L, Lukiw WJ. Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) accumulates in neocortical neurons of Alzheimer's disease (AD) brain and impairs transcription in human neuronal-glial primary co-cultures. Front Aging Neurosci 2017;9:407.
55. Reimann F, Habib AM, Tolhurst G, Parker HE, Rogers GJ, et al. Glucose sensing in L cells: a primary cell study. Cell Metab 2008;8:532-9.

56. White KL, Eddy MT, Gao ZG, Han GW, Lian T, et al. Structural connection between activation microswitch and allosteric sodium site in GPCR signaling. Structure 2018;26:259-69.e5.
57. Samuel BS, Shaito A, Motoike T, Rey FE, Backhed F, et al. Effects of the gut microbiota on host adiposity are modulated by the short-chain fatty-acid binding G protein-coupled receptor, Gpr41. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2008;105:16767-72.
58. Karaki S, Mitsui R, Hayashi H, Kato I, Sugiya H, et al. Short-chain fatty acid receptor, GPR43, is expressed by enteroendocrine cells and mucosal mast cells in rat intestine. Cell Tissue Res 2006;324:353-60.
59. Whited KL, Thao D, Lloyd KC, Kopin AS, Raybould HE. Targeted disruption of the murine CCK1 receptor gene reduces intestinal lipid-induced feedback inhibition of gastric function. Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol 2006;291:G156-62.
60. Yuan M, Han B, Xia Y, Liu Y, Wang C, et al. Augmentation of peripheral lymphocyte-derived cholinergic activity in patients with acute ischemic stroke. BMC Neurol 2019;19:236.
61. Bravo J, Forsythe P, Chew M, Escaravage E, Savignac H, et al. From the cover: ingestion of lactobacillus strain regulates emotional behavior and central GABA receptor expression in a mouse via the vagus nerve. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2011;108:16050-5.
62. Panzanelli P, Gunn BG, Schlatter MC, Benke D, Tyagarajan SK, et al. Distinct mechanisms regulate GABAA receptor and gephyrin clustering at perisomatic and axo-axonic synapses on CA1 pyramidal cells. J Physiol 2011;589:4959-80.
63. Glykys J, Mody I. Hippocampal network hyperactivity after selective reduction of tonic inhibition in GABA A receptor alpha5 subunit-deficient mice. J Neurophysiol 2006;95:2796-807.
64. Liu GX, Cai GQ, Cai YQ, Sheng ZJ, Jiang J, et al. Reduced anxiety and depression-like behaviors in mice lacking GABA transporter subtype 1. Neuropsychopharmacology 2007;32:1531-9.
65. Bravo JA, Forsythe P, Chew MV, Escaravage E, Savignac HM, et al. Ingestion of Lactobacillus strain regulates emotional behavior and central GABA receptor expression in a mouse via the vagus nerve. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2011;108:16050-5.
66. Takanaga H, Ohtsuki S, Hosoya K, Terasaki T. GAT2/BGT-1 as a system responsible for the transport of gamma-aminobutyric acid at the mouse blood-brain barrier. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 2001;21:1232-9.
67. Marrosu F, Serra A, Maleci A, Puligheddu M, Biggio G, et al. Correlation between GABA(A) receptor density and vagus nerve stimulation in individuals with drug-resistant partial epilepsy. Epilepsy Res 2003;55:59-70.
68. Wang H, Yu M, Ochani M, Amella CA, Tanovic M, et al. Nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha7 subunit is an essential regulator of inflammation. Nature 2003;421:384-8.
69. Báez-Pagán CA, Delgado-Vélez M, Lasalde-Dominicci JA. Activation of the macrophage α7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor and control of inflammation. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol 2015;10:468-76.
70. Frasch MG, Szynkaruk M, Prout AP, Nygard K, Cao M, et al. Decreased neuroinflammation correlates to higher vagus nerve activity fluctuations in near-term ovine fetuses: a case for the afferent cholinergic anti-inflammatory pathway? J Neuroinflammation 2016;13:103.
71. Goehler LE, Gaykema RP, Nguyen KT, Lee JE, Tilders FJ, et al. Interleukin-1beta in immune cells of the abdominal vagus nerve: a link between the immune and nervous systems? J Neurosci 1999;19:2799-806.
72. Wang H, Yu M, Ochani M, Amella CA, Tanovic M, et al. Nicotinic acetylcholine receptor alpha7 subunit is an essential regulator of inflammation. Nature 2003;421:384-8.
73. Hassert DL, Miyashita T, Williams CL. The effects of peripheral vagal nerve stimulation at a memory-modulating intensity on norepinephrine output in the basolateral amygdala. Behav Neurosci 2004;118:79-88.
74. Follesa P, Biggio F, Gorini G, Caria S, Talani G, et al. Vagus nerve stimulation increases norepinephrine concentration and the gene expression of BDNF and bFGF in the rat brain. Brain Res 2007;1179:28-34.
75. Stowell RD, Sipe GO, Dawes RP, Batchelor HN, Lordy KA, et al. Noradrenergic signaling in the wakeful state inhibits microglial surveillance and synaptic plasticity in the mouse visual cortex. Nat Neurosci 2019;22:1782-92.
76. Liu YU, Ying Y, Li Y, Eyo UB, Chen T, et al. Neuronal network activity controls microglial process surveillance in awake mice via norepinephrine signaling. Nat Neurosci 2019;22:1771-81.
77. Borovikova LV, Ivanova S, Zhang M, Yang H, Botchkina GI, et al. Vagus nerve stimulation attenuates the systemic inflammatory response to endotoxin. Nature 2000;405:458-62.
78. Rosas-Ballina M, Ochani M, Parrish WR, Ochani K, Harris YT, et al. Splenic nerve is required for cholinergic antiinflammatory pathway control of TNF in endotoxemia. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2008;105:11008-13.
79. Paton JFR, Boscan P, Pickering AE, Nalivaiko E. The yin and yang of cardiac autonomic control: vago-sympathetic interactions revisited. Brain Res Brain Res Rev 2005;49:555-65.
80. Olofsson PS, Katz DA, Rosas-Ballina M, Levine YA, Ochani M, et al. alpha7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (alpha7nAChR) expression in bone marrow-derived non-T cells is required for the inflammatory reflex. Mol Med 2012;18:539-43.
81. Bratton BO, Martelli D, McKinley MJ, Trevaks D, Anderson CR, et al. Neural regulation of inflammation: no neural connection from the vagus to splenic sympathetic neurons. Exp Physiol 2012;97:1180-5.
82. Ghia JE, Blennerhassett P, Kumar-Ondiveeran H, Verdu EF, Collins SM. The vagus nerve: a tonic inhibitory influence associated with inflammatory bowel disease in a murine model. Gastroenterology 2006;131:1122-30.
83. Cox LM, Weiner HL. Microbiota Signaling Pathways that Influence Neurologic Disease. Neurotherapeutics 2018;15:135-45.
84. Amini-Khoei H, Haghani-Samani E, Beigi M, Soltani A, Balali-Dehkordi S, et al. On the role of corticosterone in behavioral disorders, microbiota composition alteration and neuroimmune response in adult male mice subjected to maternal separation stress. Int Immunopharmacol 2019;66:242-50.
85. Clarke G, Grenham S, Scully P, Fitzgerald P, Moloney RD, et al. The microbiome-gut-brain axis during early life regulates the hippocampal serotonergic system in a sex-dependent manner. Mol Psychiatry 2013;18:666-73.
86. Sudo N, Chida Y, Aiba Y, Sonoda J, Oyama N, et al. Postnatal microbial colonization programs the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal system for stress response in mice. J Physiol 2004;558:263-75.

87. Luo Y, Zeng B, Zeng L, Du X, Li B, et al. Gut microbiota regulates mouse behaviors through glucocorticoid receptor pathway genes in the hippocampus. Transl Psychiatry 2018;8:187.
88. van Olst L, Bielefeld P, Fitzsimons CP, de Vries HE, Schouten M. Glucocorticoid-mediated modulation of morphological changes associated with aging in microglia. Aging Cell 2018;17:e12790.
89. Benedusi V, Meda C, Della Torre S, Monteleone G, Vegeto E, et al. A lack of ovarian function increases neuroinflammation in aged mice. Endocrinology 2012;153:2777-88.
90. Walker DJ, Spencer KA. Glucocorticoid programming of neuroimmune function. Gen Comp Endocrinol 2018;256:80-8.
91. Miller AH, Spencer RL, Pearce BD, Pisell TL, Azrieli Y, et al. Glucocorticoid receptors are differentially expressed in the cells and tissues of the immune system. Cell Immunol 1998;186:45-54.
92. Sun SL, Li TJ, Yang PY, Qiu Y, Rui YC. Modulation of signal transducers and activators of transcription (STAT) factor pathways during focal cerebral ischaemia: a gene expression array study in rat hippocampus after middle cerebral artery occlusion. Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol 2007;34:1097-101.
93. Natarajan C, Sriram S, Muthian G, Bright JJ. Signaling through JAK2-STAT5 pathway is essential for IL-3-induced activation of microglia. Glia 2004;45:188-96.
94. Ock J, Lee H, Kim S, Lee WH, Choi DK, et al. Induction of microglial apoptosis by corticotropin-releasing hormone. J Neurochem 2006;98:962-72.
95. Yang Y, Hahm E, Kim Y, Kang J, Lee W, et al. Regulation of IL-18 expression by CRH in mouse microglial cells. Immunol Lett 2005;98:291-6.
96. Lim HY, Muller N, Herold MJ, van den Brandt J, Reichardt HM. Glucocorticoids exert opposing effects on macrophage function dependent on their concentration. Immunology 2007;122:47-53.
97. Sierra A, Gottfried-Blackmore A, Milner TA, McEwen BS, Bulloch K. Steroid hormone receptor expression and function in microglia. Glia 2008;56:659-74.
98. Sugama S, Fujita M, Hashimoto M, Conti B. Stress induced morphological microglial activation in the rodent brain: involvement of interleukin-18. Neuroscience 2007;146:1388-99.
99. Sugama S, Takenouchi T, Fujita M, Kitani H, Conti B, et al. Corticosteroids limit microglial activation occurring during acute stress. Neuroscience 2013;232:13-20.
100. Tynan RJ, Naicker S, Hinwood M, Nalivaiko E, Buller KM, et al. Chronic stress alters the density and morphology of microglia in a subset of stress-responsive brain regions. Brain Behav Immun 2010;24:1058-68.
101. Frank MG, Miguel ZD, Watkins LR, Maier SF. Prior exposure to glucocorticoids sensitizes the neuroinflammatory and peripheral inflammatory responses to E. coli lipopolysaccharide. Brain Behav Immun 2010;24:19-30.
102. Vegeto E, Belcredito S, Ghisletti S, Meda C, Etteri S, et al. The endogenous estrogen status regulates microglia reactivity in animal models of neuroinflammation. Endocrinology 2006;147:2263-72.
103. Sarvari M, Hrabovszky E, Kallo I, Solymosi N, Liko I, et al. Menopause leads to elevated expression of macrophage-associated genes in the aging frontal cortex: rat and human studies identify strikingly similar changes. J Neuroinflammation 2012;9:264.
104. Orgaard A, Jepsen SL, Holst JJ. Short-chain fatty acids and regulation of pancreatic endocrine secretion in mice. Islets 2019;11:103-11.
105. Kumar A, Alrefai WA, Borthakur A, Dudeja PK. Lactobacillus acidophilus counteracts enteropathogenic E. coli-induced inhibition of butyrate uptake in intestinal epithelial cells. Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol 2015;309:G602-7.
106. Ferrante RJ, Kubilus JK, Lee J, Ryu H, Beesen A, et al. Histone deacetylase inhibition by sodium butyrate chemotherapy ameliorates the neurodegenerative phenotype in Huntington's disease mice. J Neurosci 2003;23:9418-27.
107. Govindarajan N, Agis-Balboa RC, Walter J, Sananbenesi F, Fischer A. Sodium butyrate improves memory function in an Alzheimer's disease mouse model when administered at an advanced stage of disease progression. J Alzheimers Dis 2011;26:187-97.
108. Silva LG, Ferguson BS, Avila AS, Faciola AP. Sodium propionate and sodium butyrate effects on histone deacetylase (HDAC) activity, histone acetylation, and inflammatory gene expression in bovine mammary epithelial cells. J Anim Sci 2018;96:5244-52.
109. Walsh ME, Bhattacharya A, Sataranatarajan K, Qaisar R, Sloane L, et al. The histone deacetylase inhibitor butyrate improves metabolism and reduces muscle atrophy during aging. Aging Cell 2015;14:957-70.
110. Kannan V, Brouwer N, Hanisch UK, Regen T, Eggen BJL, et al. Histone deacetylase inhibitors suppress immune activation in primary mouse microglia. J Neurosci Res 2013;91:1133-42.
111. Ryu H, Lee J, Olofsson BA, Mwidau A, Dedeoglu A, et al. Histone deacetylase inhibitors prevent oxidative neuronal death independent of expanded polyglutamine repeats via an Sp1-dependent pathway. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2003;100:4281-6.
112. Yin F, Sancheti H, Patil I, Cadenas E. Energy metabolism and inflammation in brain aging and Alzheimer's disease. Free Radic Biol Med 2016;100:108-22.
113. Kimura I, Inoue D, Maeda T, Hara T, Ichimura A, et al. Short-chain fatty acids and ketones directly regulate sympathetic nervous system via G protein-coupled receptor 41 (GPR41). Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2011;108:8030-5.
114. Canfora EE, Jocken JW, Blaak EE. Short-chain fatty acids in control of body weight and insulin sensitivity. Nat Rev Endocrinol 2015;11:577-91.
115. Layden BT, Angueira AR, Brodsky M, Durai V, Lowe WL Jr. Short chain fatty acids and their receptors: new metabolic targets. Transl Res 2013;161:131-40.
116. Guilloteau P, Martin L, Eeckhaut V, Ducatelle R, Zabielski R, et al. From the gut to the peripheral tissues: the multiple effects of butyrate. Nutr Res Rev 2010;23:366-84.
117. Hamer HM, Jonkers D, Venema K, Vanhoutvin S, Troost FJ, et al. Review article: the role of butyrate on colonic function. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2008;27:104-19.
118. Sun J, Xu J, Yang B, Chen K, Kong Y, et al. Effect of clostridium butyricum against microglia-mediated neuroinflammation in Alzheimer's disease via regulating gut microbiota and metabolites butyrate. Mol Nutr Food Res 2019;64:e1900636.

119. Aguilar EC, Leonel AJ, Teixeira LG, Silva AR, Silva JF, et al. Butyrate impairs atherogenesis by reducing plaque inflammation and vulnerability and decreasing NFkappaB activation. Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis 2014;24:606-13.
120. de la Cuesta-Zuluaga J, Mueller NT, Alvarez-Quintero R, Velasquez-Mejia EP, Sierra JA, et al. Higher fecal short-chain fatty acid levels are associated with gut microbiome dysbiosis, obesity, hypertension and cardiometabolic disease risk factors. Nutrients 2018;11.
121. Elamin EE, Masclee AA, Dekker J, Pieters HJ, Jonkers DM. Short-chain fatty acids activate AMP-activated protein kinase and ameliorate ethanol-induced intestinal barrier dysfunction in Caco-2 cell monolayers. J Nutr 2013;143:1872-81.
122. Bourre JM, Bornhofen JH, Araoz CA, Daudu O, Baumann NA. Pelizaeus--Merzbacher disease: brain lipid and fatty acid composition. J Neurochem 1978;30:719-27.
123. Unger MM, Spiegel J, Dillmann KU, Grundmann D, Philippeit H, et al. Short chain fatty acids and gut microbiota differ between patients with Parkinson's disease and age-matched controls. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 2016;32:66-72.
124. Ho L, Ono K, Tsuji M, Mazzola P, Singh R, et al. Protective roles of intestinal microbiota derived short chain fatty acids in Alzheimer's disease-type beta-amyloid neuropathological mechanisms. Expert Rev Neurother 2018;18:83-90.
125. Mucida D, Park Y, Kim G, Turovskaya O, Scott I, et al. Reciprocal TH17 and regulatory T cell differentiation mediated by retinoic acid. Science 2007;317:256-60.
126. Kurita-Ochiai T, Hashizume T, Yonezawa H, Ochiai K, Yamamoto M. Characterization of the effects of butyric acid on cell proliferation, cell cycle distribution and apoptosis. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol 2006;47:67-74.
127. Proctor LM, Creasy HH, Fettweis JM, Lloyd-Price J, Mahurkar A, et al. The integrative human microbiome project. Nature 2019;569:641-8.
128. Human Microbiome Project (HMP) Consortium. Structure, function and diversity of the healthy human microbiome. Nature 2012;486:207-14.
129. Theriot CM, Koenigsknecht MJ, Carlson PE Jr, Hatton GE, Nelson AM, et al. Antibiotic-induced shifts in the mouse gut microbiome and metabolome increase susceptibility to Clostridium difficile infection. Nat Commun 2014;5:3114.
130. Sekirov I, Tam NM, Jogova M, Robertson ML, Li Y, et al. Antibiotic-induced perturbations of the intestinal microbiota alter host susceptibility to enteric infection. Infect Immun 2008;76:4726-36.
131. Hong KS, Kim JS. Rifaximin for the treatment of acute infectious diarrhea. Therap Adv Gastroenterol 2011;4:227-35.
132. Iorio N, Malik Z, Schey R. Profile of rifaximin and its potential in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. Clin Exp Gastroenterol 2015;8:159-67.
133. Ponziani FR, Zocco MA, D'Aversa F, Pompili M, Gasbarrini A. Eubiotic properties of rifaximin: disruption of the traditional concepts in gut microbiota modulation. World J Gastroenterol 2017;23:4491-9.
134. Maccaferri S, Vitali B, Klinder A, Kolida S, Ndagijimana M, et al. Rifaximin modulates the colonic microbiota of patients with Crohn's disease: an in vitro approach using a continuous culture colonic model system. J Antimicrob Chemother 2010;65:2556-65.
135. Tan J, McKenzie C, Potamitis M, Thorburn AN, Mackay CR, et al. The role of short-chain fatty acids in health and disease. Adv Immunol 2014;121:91-119.
136. Yang L, Liu B, Zheng J, Huang J, Zhao Q, et al. Rifaximin alters intestinal microbiota and prevents progression of ankylosing spondylitis in mice. Front Cell Infect Microbiol 2019;9:44.
137. Xu D, Gao J, Gillilland M, Wu X, Song I, et al. Rifaximin alters intestinal bacteria and prevents stress-induced gut inflammation and visceral hyperalgesia in rats. Gastroenterology 2014;146:484-96.e4.
138. Cash WJ, McConville P, McDermott E, McCormick PA, Callender ME, et al. Current concepts in the assessment and treatment of hepatic encephalopathy. QJM 2010;103:9-16.
139. Coronel-Castillo CE, Contreras-Carmona J, Frati-Munari AC, Uribe M, Mendez-Sanchez N. Efficacy of rifaximin in the different clinical scenarios of hepatic encephalopathy. Rev Gastroenterol Mex 2020;85:56-68.
140. Bannister AJ, Kouzarides T. Regulation of chromatin by histone modifications. Cell Res 2011;21:381-95.
141. Clayton AL, Hazzalin CA, Mahadevan LC. Enhanced histone acetylation and transcription: a dynamic perspective. Mol Cell 2006;23:289-96.
142. Ghiaghi M, Forouzesh F, Rahimi H. Effect of sodium butyrate on LHX1 mRNA expression as a transcription factor of HDAC8 in human colorectal cancer cell lines. Avicenna J Med Biotechnol 2019;11:317-24.
143. Nakagawa H, Sasagawa S, Itoh K. Sodium butyrate induces senescence and inhibits the invasiveness of glioblastoma cells. Oncol Lett 2018;15:1495-502.
144. Arnoldussen IAC, Wiesmann M, Pelgrim CE, Wielemaker EM, van Duyvenvoorde W, et al. Butyrate restores HFD-induced adaptations in brain function and metabolism in mid-adult obese mice. Int J Obes (Lond) 2017;41:935-44.
145. Mannucci E, Ognibene A, Cremasco F, Bardini G, Mencucci A, et al. Effect of metformin on glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) and leptin levels in obese nondiabetic subjects. Diabetes Care 2001;24:489-94.
146. Paisán-Ruíz C, Jain S, Evans EW, Gilks WP, Simón J, et al. Cloning of the gene containing mutations that cause PARK8-linked Parkinson's disease. Neuron 2004;44:595-600.
147. van Engeland M, Derks S, Smits KM, Meijer GA, Herman JG. Colorectal cancer epigenetics: complex simplicity. J Clin Oncol 2011;29:1382-91.
148. Halliday GM, Holton JL, Revesz T, Dickson DW. Neuropathology underlying clinical variability in patients with synucleinopathies. Acta Neuropathol 2011;122:187-204.
149. Braak H, de Vos RA, Bohl J, Del Tredici K. Gastric alpha-synuclein immunoreactive inclusions in Meissner's and Auerbach's plexuses in cases staged for Parkinson's disease-related brain pathology. Neurosci Lett 2006;396:67-72.
150. Holmqvist S, Chutna O, Bousset L, Aldrin-Kirk P, Li W, et al. Direct evidence of Parkinson pathology spread from the gastrointestinal tract to the brain in rats. Acta Neuropathol 2014;128:805-20.
151. Sander C, Modes F, Schlake HP, Eling P, Hildebrandt H. Capturing fatigue parameters: the impact of vagal processing in multiple

sclerosis related cognitive fatigue. Mult Scler Relat Disord 2019;32:13-8.
152. Hanken K, Eling P, Hildebrandt H. The representation of inflammatory signals in the brain - a model for subjective fatigue in multiple sclerosis. Front Neurol 2014;5:264.
153. Kaczmarczyk R, Tejera D, Simon BJ, Heneka MT. Microglia modulation through external vagus nerve stimulation in a murine model of Alzheimer's disease. J Neurochem 2017.
154. Sarao LK, Arora M. Probiotics, prebiotics, and microencapsulation: a review. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 2017;57:344-71.
155. van Baarlen P, Troost F, van der Meer C, Hooiveld G, Boekschoten M, et al. Human mucosal in vivo transcriptome responses to three lactobacilli indicate how probiotics may modulate human cellular pathways. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2011;108:4562-9.
156. Magistrelli L, Amoruso A, Mogna L, Graziano T, Cantello R, et al. Probiotics may have beneficial effects in Parkinson's disease: in vitro evidence. Front Immunol 2019;10:969.
157. Akbari E, Asemi Z, Daneshvar Kakhaki R, Bahmani F, Kouchaki E, et al. Effect of probiotic supplementation on cognitive function and metabolic status in Alzheimer's disease: a randomized, double-blind and controlled trial. Front Aging Neurosci 2016;8:256.
158. Vandeputte D, Falony G, Vieira-Silva S, Wang J, Sailer M, et al. Prebiotic inulin-type fructans induce specific changes in the human gut microbiota. Gut 2017;66:1968-74.
159. Bourassa MW, Alim I, Bultman SJ, Ratan RR. Butyrate, neuroepigenetics and the gut microbiome: can a high fiber diet improve brain health? Neurosci Lett 2016;625:56-63.
160. Thangaraju M, Cresci GA, Liu K, Ananth S, Gnanaprakasam JP, et al. GPR109A is a G-protein-coupled receptor for the bacterial fermentation product butyrate and functions as a tumor suppressor in colon. Cancer Res 2009;69:2826-32.
161. Katagiri S, Shiba T, Tohara H, Yamaguchi K, Hara K, et al. Re-initiation of oral food intake following enteral nutrition alters oral and gut microbiota communities. Front Cell Infect Microbiol 2019;9:434.
162. Riccio P, Rossano R. Diet, gut microbiota, and vitamins D + A in multiple sclerosis. Neurotherapeutics 2018;15:75-91.
163. Nagpal R, Neth BJ, Wang S, Craft S, Yadav H. Modified Mediterranean-ketogenic diet modulates gut microbiome and short-chain fatty acids in association with Alzheimer's disease markers in subjects with mild cognitive impairment. EBioMedicine 2019;47:529-42.
164. Lowe PP, Gyongyosi B, Satishchandran A, Iracheta-Vellve A, Cho Y, et al. Reduced gut microbiome protects from alcohol-induced neuroinflammation and alters intestinal and brain inflammasome expression. J Neuroinflammation 2018;15:298.
165. Gubert C, Kong G, Renoir T, Hannan AJ. Exercise, diet and stress as modulators of gut microbiota: implications for neurodegenerative diseases. Neurobiol Dis 2020;134:104621.
166. Bermon S, Petriz B, Kajeniene A, Prestes J, Castell L, et al. The microbiota: an exercise immunology perspective. Exerc Immunol Rev 2015;21:70-9.
167. Matsumoto M, Inoue R, Tsukahara T, Ushida K, Chiji H, et al. Voluntary running exercise alters microbiota composition and increases n-butyrate concentration in the rat cecum. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 2008;72:572-6.
168. Crowley EK, Nolan YM, Sullivan AM. Neuroprotective effects of voluntary running on cognitive dysfunction in an alpha-synuclein rat model of Parkinson's disease. Neurobiol Aging 2018;65:60-8.
169. O'Donovan SM, Crowley EK, Brown JR, O'Sullivan O, O'Leary OF, et al. Nigral overexpression of alpha-synuclein in a rat Parkinson's disease model indicates alterations in the enteric nervous system and the gut microbiome. Neurogastroenterol Motil 2020;32:e13726.
170. O'Sullivan O, Cronin O, Clarke SF, Murphy EF, Molloy MG, et al. Exercise and the microbiota. Gut Microbes 2015;6:131-6.

Victor *et al*. *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:234-47
DOI: 10.20517/2347-8659.2020.02

Neuroimmunology and Neuroinflammation

Review

Open Access

Microglial contributions to aberrant neurogenesis and pathophysiology of epilepsy

Tanya R. Victor, Stella E. Tsirka

Department of Pharmacological Sciences, Stony Brook University, Stony Brook, NY 11794, USA.

Correspondence to: Dr. Stella E. Tsirka, Program in Molecular and Cellular Pharmacology, Department of Pharmacological Sciences, Stony Brook University, 101 Nichols Rd, Stony Brook, NY 11794-8651, USA. E-mail: styliani-anna.tsirka@stonybrook.edu

How to cite this article: Victor TR, Tsirka SE. Microglial contributions to aberrant neurogenesis and pathophysiology of epilepsy. *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:234-47. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.02

Received: 5 Jan 2020 **First Decision**: 2 Mar 2020 **Revised**: 26 Mar 2020 **Accepted**: 27 May 2020 **Available online**: 12 Jul 2020

Academic Editor: Athanassios P. Kyritsis **Copy Editor**: Cai-Hong Wang **Production Editor**: Jing Yu

Abstract

Microglia are dynamic cells that constitute the brain's innate immune system. Recently, research has demonstrated microglial roles beyond immunity, which include homeostatic roles in the central nervous system. The function of microglia is an active area of study, with insights into changes in neurogenesis and synaptic pruning being discovered in both health and disease. In epilepsy, activated microglia contribute to several changes that occur during epileptogenesis. In this review, we focus on the effects of microglia on neurogenesis and synaptic pruning, and discuss the current state of anti-seizure drugs and how they affect microglia during these processes. Our understanding of the role of microglia post-seizure is still limited and may be pivotal in recognizing new therapeutic targets for seizure intervention.

Keywords: Microglia, epilepsy, neurogenesis, neuroinflammation, seizures

INTRODUCTION

Epilepsy is a neurological disorder characterized by recurrent seizures. Microglia, the innate immune cells of the central nervous system (CNS), are increasingly recognized as mediators of seizures and contributors to the epileptogenic process. The progression to epilepsy is characterized by the presence of neuroinflammation, as well as structural and molecular alterations in the brain, that subsequently lead to increased neuronal hyperexcitability and a lasting disposition towards spontaneous recurrent seizures (SRS)[1]. Microglia regulate neuroinflammation and axonal sprouting and have been reported to modulate

© The Author(s) 2020. **Open Access** This article is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, for any purpose, even commercially, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license, and indicate if changes were made.

neurogenesis. Following seizures, microglia are activated, functioning as resident macrophages of the brain and respond quickly to injury while trying to maintain the physiological processes under its control[2]. Changes in neuronal homeostasis are also observed, highlighting the diverse ways in which microglia could be contributing to the development of epilepsy.

This review will discuss the roles of microglia in neuroinflammation and neurogenesis, and how these contributions are altered post-seizure. We will examine microglia in the context of epileptogenesis, the process by which "the previously normal brain is functionally altered and biased towards the generation of abnormal electrical activity that subserves chronic seizures"[3]. Additionally, we will explore studies of pharmacological reagents and their effects on microglia as a therapeutic target to mitigate the epileptogenic process that drives epilepsy.

EPILEPSY

Epilepsy is a chronic brain disorder characterized by abnormal brain activity that causes seizures. The propensity to generate recurrent seizure events has neuropathological, cognitive, and social consequences[4]. Epileptic seizures are aberrant, excessive, or synchronous neuronal discharges and manifest in a variety of ways. According to the International League Against Epilepsy (ILAE), seizures are classified into three types based on their onset: generalized onset seizures do not have a determined area of origin and can affect both sides of the brain; focal onset seizures originate from one area of the brain; and unknown onset seizure when the onset is missed or obscured. Generalized onset seizures can present with a variety of manifestations that include non-motor and motor presentations: they range from absence seizures (that present with lapses in awareness, accompanied with staring into space, probably accompanied by rapid blinking and/or orofacial automatisms) to generalized tonic-clonic seizures with tonic and/or clonic spasms, and are always accompanied by loss of consciousness. Focal onset seizures may or may not be accompanied by a loss of awareness and their origin can be attributed to a specific area of the brain that causes motor or sensory changes, including taste or smell. Focal seizures may also result in a loss of awareness, manifested by a person who appears to be dazed, confused, and unable to respond to questions for several minutes. Focal seizures may become generalized if the original behavior, which was localized to one brain hemisphere, expands to behaviors that involve both sides of the brain[5]. The cause of epilepsy in many patients is not known, though acquired causes include stroke, traumatic brain injury (TBI), autoimmune disorders, infection, and tumors.

It is estimated that almost 10% of people will experience a seizure in their lifetime[6]. Epilepsy affects approximately 1.2% of the population in the United States alone[7]. Higher incidence rates have been reported in younger (early childhood and infancy) and older age groups (older than 55 years of age), while a lower prevalence is seen in the period between early adulthood and midlife[8]. The imbalance between excitatory and inhibitory neurotransmission (E/I imbalance), with a propensity towards increased excitation, is believed to be the underlying cause of seizures in epilepsy. Research demonstrates hyper-excitability during ictogenesis, when excitatory glutamatergic activity is increased while inhibitory gamma aminobutyric acid (GABA) ergic activity is dampened[9-11]. Currently, the treatment of epilepsy varies from patient to patient. Anti-seizure medications are typically the first choice of therapy for subsequent seizure prevention. When medication fails, surgery has been successful in significantly decreasing or making patients seizure free, though only a small number of patients with focal onset seizures would qualify for surgical options[12]. When surgery is not an option, patients are treated with antiepileptic drugs (AEDs). There have been > 30 medicines that have been approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) or the European Medicines Agency (EMA). Even though many seizure medication options exist, nearly 33% of patients fail to respond to them[13]. Some patients with pharmacologically refractory epilepsy try to control seizures by exploring dietary changes, such as employing the ketogenic diet, a high fat/low carbohydrate diet which can be successful in reducing seizures in about 50% of adult

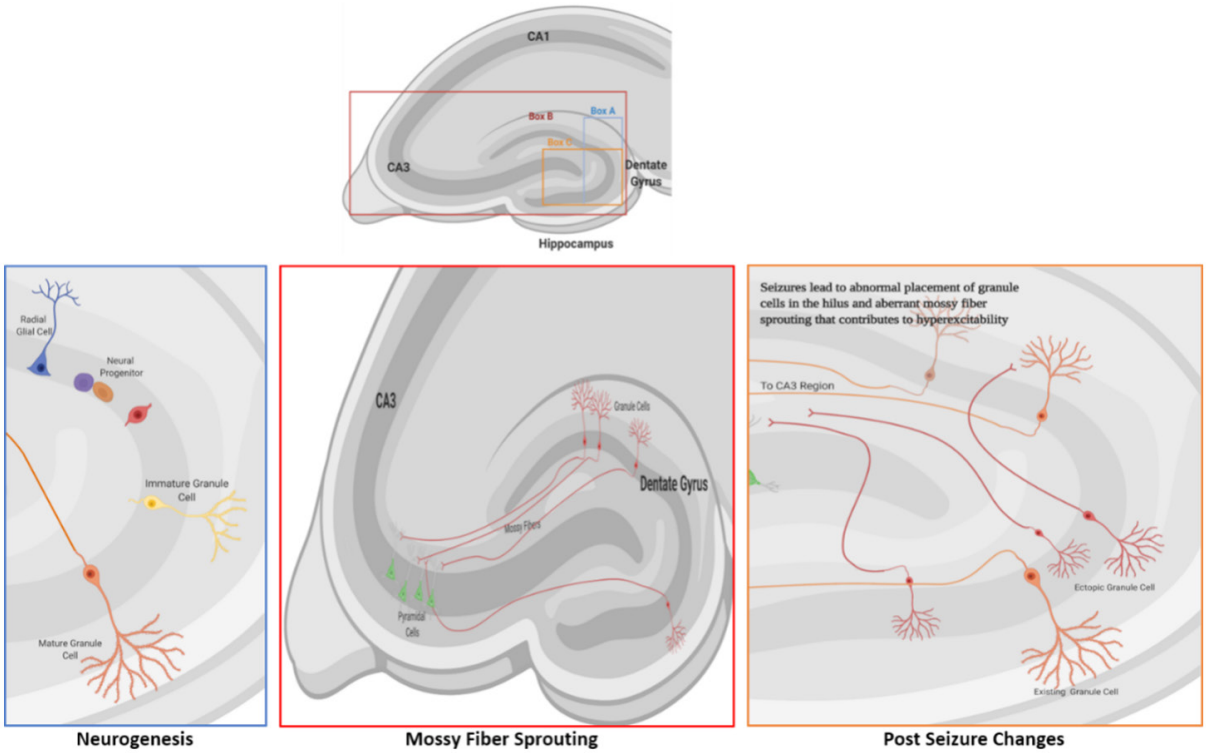


Figure 1. Granule cell neurogenesis and mossy fiber sprouting. A: Neurogenesis occurs in the dentate gyrus of the hippocampus. The cells proliferate in the subgranular zone and then migrate a short distance to the granule cell layer where they differentiate into mature granule cells; B: the axons of granule cells (mossy fibers) normally project to the cells in the CA3 region of the dentate gyrus; C: during seizures, several factors contribute to aberrant migration of granule cells that leads to their ectopic placement in the hilus. Ectopic granule cells (red cells) form functioning neural connections to the pyramidal neurons in the CA3 region and contribute to hyperexcitability and epileptogenesis through aberrant 'sprouting' along the mossy fiber pathway. Image created with BioRender.com

patients[14]. Though originally believed to result in an increase in levels of GABA production[15], there may be multiple mechanisms that contribute to its success in seizure cessation[16]. Neurostimulatory devices, such as deep brain or vagus nerve stimulation therapies, have also been used with varying success, as they help to normalize the excitatory state of the brain[17].

Epileptogenesis

Epileptogenesis is the process by which structural and molecular changes occur in the brain and predispose towards epileptic seizures[18]. The epileptogenic process can be initiated by multiple underlying causes such as tumors, infections, stroke, and brain injuries. Epileptogenesis occurs prior to an unprovoked seizure and continues beyond the event. It is a dynamic process that can occur very quickly, after brain injury or stroke, or over an extended period of time (up to months in animal models, and years in humans)[18,19]. This window presents a temporal opportunity for treatment approaches, but also provides challenges for studying the process. Understanding the pathophysiological changes that occur during epileptogenesis is a pivotal part of developing new therapies.

Changes during epileptogenesis occur in both neuronal and glial cells, all of which contribute to the dysfunction of neuronal circuits. The mechanisms underlying epileptogenesis suggest that the pathophysiological and compensatory changes are connected. Animal models of epileptogenesis have displayed histologically-detectable changes, such as sprouting along the mossy fiber pathway, neurogenesis, and gliosis [Figure 1] alterations, all of which can contribute to the potential for hyperexcitability[20]. The condition most frequently associated with mossy fiber sprouting is temporal lobe epilepsy (TLE), the

most common type of epilepsy in adults[21], but can occur in epilepsy patients without TLE[22]. Sprouting occurs when granule cell axons in the inner molecular layer (mossy fibers) project into the hilus of the dentate gyrus and CA3 region of the hippocampal formation, creating their own dendritic field. Mossy fibers synapse onto hilar mossy cells, CA3 pyramidal cells, and interneurons[23] to create de novo recurrent excitatory circuits. Aberrant sprouting in a model of TLE was reported to contribute to excitatory feedback loops of normal and ectopic granule cells[24]. Another study described aberrant mossy fibers that drive inhibitory basket cells to reduce neuronal excitability[25]. Mossy fiber sprouting is increased through the activation of several granule cell factors, such as neuromodulin and brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF)[26], and involves the secretion and deposition of molecules of the extracellular matrix that facilitate aberrant growth[27-29]. The number of granule cells also affects mossy fiber sprouting. Hippocampal neurogenesis, which leads to the formation of new granule cells, is increased shortly after an epileptic seizure, but the increase is transient. The development of new granule cells, and their ectopic integration into neuronal networks contribute to aberrant mossy fiber sprouting that is evident post-seizure.

Reactive gliosis has also been identified as a contributor to epileptogenesis in genetic and chemically-induced animal models of epilepsy[30]. Activated astrocytes and microglia exhibit changes that promote network hyperexcitability[31,32]. Microglia can be activated by cytokines and monocytes circulating in blood[33], neurotransmitters released by activated or damaged neurons, or by molecules migrating across the blood brain barrier (BBB)[31]. Disruption of the BBB during status epilepticus (SE) leads to the transport of plasma proteins and immune cells into the brain. The combined effects on astrocytic functions, ion concentration changes, entry of infiltrating systemic components, and potential pathogens into the CNS may lead to neuronal dysfunction, neuroinflammation, and neurodegeneration[34]. The BBB plays a pivotal role in diseases associated with neuronal hyperexcitability such as epilepsy, TBI, and post-stroke seizure activity[35-37]. Microglia-neuron signaling had been shown initially by the release of the neuronal chemokine fractalkine, which activates the CXC-chemokine receptor 1 (CXCR1) on microglia. Neurogenesis, synaptic plasticity, and neuronal survival have all been reported to be affected by the CXCR1 signaling pathway[31]. Cytokine release of IL-1β and tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) and other signals (such as HMGB1 and ATP) from activated astrocytes and microglia lead to hyperexcitability in neurons[38,39]. Precise targeting of reactive astrocytes and microglia for therapeutic intervention during epilepsy and epileptogenesis may be beneficial due to microglial involvement in the processes of neurogenesis, axonal sprouting, and neuroinflammation.

Models of epilepsy

The pursuit of AEDs has provided > 30 medications, with many that were developed in the 1980s[40]. Although several animal models of epilepsy exist, clinically validated models, ones that are validated to predict efficacy and tolerability, are limited and currently only consist of three models: the maximal electroshock (MES) seizure protocol, subcutaneous pentylenetetrazol (scPTZ) acute seizure tests, and the kindled rodent model of chronic hyperexcitability[41]. Though not validated, multiple other animal models have been developed that have contributed to the understanding of the premise of new therapeutic options[42]. Still, newer drugs continue to have similar adverse events or side effects without exhibiting greater efficacy[43]. Variation in seizure models can result in acute or chronic seizure paradigms, differences in severity, or the intervening time until seizures start[44]. Acute models lack persisting changes, like a decrease in seizure threshold or spontaneous seizures. Chronic seizure models of epilepsy accommodate a period during which epileptogenesis takes place and may better represent human epilepsy[45]. Newer models, such as the post-SE model, kindling[46], or genetic models, have become more extensively used due to their ability to result in spontaneous seizures. The kindling model, where repeated electrical stimulation leads to enhanced seizure susceptibility, is commonly utilized as it has been associated with seizure induced plasticity and provides a way to study such plasticity. Combining SRS with convulsive behavior or video-electroencephalogram (EEG) represents a more accurate epilepsy model, though it is not considered a clinically validated model for AED discovery.

The chemical induction of status epilepticus, usually by injection of kainic acid or pilocarpine[47,48], can result in animals exhibiting SRSs days to weeks after SE, and allows for the determination of post-seizure changes in the brain neuropil. Models using chemoconvulsants and kindling have provided researchers with a way to study changes in mossy fiber sprouting, neurogenesis, and neuroinflammation post-seizure.

MICROGLIA

Microglia, which make up approximately 10% of the brain's cells, are the central nervous system's primary form of immune defense. Originally thought to only serve immune response functions, they are now widely recognized to perform important functions that contribute to the development and maintenance of a healthy brain. Microglia are dynamic cells that survey their environment for injury or infection. Ramified microglia rapidly and constantly extend and retract their processes to assess the environment[49]. By evaluating their surroundings, microglia can actively participate in neurogenesis[50,51], neurotrophic functions[52], neuronal phagocytosis[53], modulation of axonal processes[54], synapse formation and pruning[55-57]. It has also been proposed that microglia aid in neurotransmitter clearance, specifically glutamate[58], due to their upregulation of glutamate transporter GLT-1 in a cortical injury model[59]. Many of these functions however, are reported to be similarly performed by astrocytes.

Microglial contribution to epileptogenesis

Models of epilepsy provide insight into neuronal and glial behavior post-seizure. Microglia sense the injury, and their activation cascade is initiated[60,61] as they migrate to the region of insult, where they then remain activated for about 4-5 weeks post-seizure[62], creating an inflammatory environment around the site of seizure onset. The extent and duration of microglial activation depends on the model used[63]. Most, though not all, chronic seizure models of epileptogenesis present a persistent inflammatory state in neural tissue[64]. After an inciting event, inflammatory cascades can either begin in the CNS, or be activated by molecules in the systemic circulation via breakdown of the BBB[65]. The seizure-induced activation of microglia can be visualized and followed non-invasively by positron emission tomography using ^{11}C-PK11195, a radiolabeled TSPO (a selective translocator protein) that is expressed at low levels in the healthy CNS, but upregulated when neuroinflammation is initiated. Although TSPO does not distinguish between microglia and infiltrating macrophages[66], its upregulation provides clear proof of the neuroinflammatory state of post-seizure CNS. Acute neuroinflammation is thought to contribute to chronic neuroinflammation states or worsen a pre-existing state[67]. Understanding how and when microglia are activated after seizures, and how they contribute over time to neuroinflammation may provide a target for downregulating or attenuating epileptogenesis.

Cytokines are signaling molecules that modulate inflammatory responses and are produced by neurons and glial cells after seizures. Interleukin-1β (IL-1β), IL-2, and IL-6 are present in the brain at low concentrations, which increase post-seizure[68]. Following seizures, mRNA expression of IL-1β, IL-6, TNF-α, TGF-β, and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) were all reported to be upregulated ithe hippocampus. IL-1β may induce seizures by upregulating N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors on post-synaptic cells[69]. Studies also suggest that uncontrolled levels of IL-1β impair synaptic plasticity and cause neuronal dysfunction[70]. Other studies have demonstrated that IL-1β decreased GABA-mediated neurotransmission, leading to neuronal hyperexcitability and seizures[71]. When IL-1β activity was blocked, acute or recurrent seizures were reduced in rodent models[38,72,73]. Anakinra, a recombinant IL-1 receptor antagonist, was successfully used in a clinical study to treat febrile infection-related epilepsy syndrome (FIRES), demonstrating that IL-1β may be a crucial target in controlling seizure recurrence[74]. TNF-α is released by microglia and astrocytes, when low levels of glutamate are detected, to maintain neuronal excitation levels by upregulating synapses[75]. TNF-α also increases microglial glutamate release through glutaminase and gap junction regulation[76] and regulates the adhesion molecule N-cadherin, which is

involved in the organization of synapses[77]. Like IL-1β, TNF-α also affects GABA levels by increasing GABA receptor endocytosis, reducing its inhibitory action[78]. Another pro-inflammatory cytokine, IL-6, is upregulated by TNF-α and IL-1β. IL-6 has been reported to decrease hippocampal neurogenesis while increasing microgliosis, possibly contributing to epileptogenesis[79].

Changes in microglia post-seizure

The question of microglial activation status and its effects post-seizure have yet to be answered. Microglia modulate the severity of early seizures in a pilocarpine model with lipopolysaccharide (LPS) pre-conditioning[80]: ablation of microglia prior to seizure onset resulted in dramatic increases of seizure severity. Since no other cell types were affected by the method of microglia ablation[81,82], it is suggested that microglia may play a role early on in seizure induction to protect the CNS from exaggerated neuronal activity. The presence of microglia may thus be beneficial during seizure; however, evidence suggests that their activation may be detrimental post-seizure. Minocycline, a tetracyclic antibiotic that has anti-inflammatory properties, has been shown to act as an inhibitor of microglial proliferation/activation[83]. Studies that used minocycline have reported that it protects against neuronal cell death after seizures, thus indicating that microglia contribute to neurodegeneration following seizures[84]. Other studies demonstrated that a 2-week course of minocycline post-status epilepticus decreased the number, duration, and severity of spontaneous recurrent seizures, suggesting that microglia are involved in the propagation of these SRS[85-87]. It should also be noted, on the other hand, that there are studies that show only partial effectiveness by minocycline[88], or inability to reverse the increase of epileptogenesis[89,90].

Inflammatory cytokines increase neuronal excitability and are believed to contribute to epileptogenesis[91]. Though inflammatory cytokines are expressed by several cell types in the brain, microglia-specific pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1β, IL6 and TNF-α, showed increased expression three days after SE but had diminished by day 21[63]. Levels of anti-inflammatory cytokines, such as Arg1, IL-4 and IL-10, were also increased. These data contribute to the existing controversy on the role that microglia and cytokines play post-seizure. Additionally, Toll-like receptor (TLR) signaling has been implicated in the production of cytokines in seizure models. Studies have demonstrated that the downregulation of TLR3 and TLR4 activities reduces recurrent and acute seizures, respectively[92,93]. Another study showed that the activated TLR4 pathway (mediated by MyD88) was part of the molecular response contributing to a pro-inflammatory environment post-SE[94]. Matsuda *et al*.[95] reported that microglia secrete TNF-α to decrease the proliferation of neural progenitor cells (NPCs) in the subgranular zone (SGZ) and demonstrated that microglial activation is partly mediated through TLR9 post-SE. These studies emphasize the need for a better understanding of the role of cytokine signaling post-seizure.

NEUROGENESIS

Neurogenesis, the incorporation of new neurons into the hippocampus, is a controlled process that affects fundamental brain activities such as memory formation and learning. Neurogenesis, and the newborn cells generated, contribute to brain plasticity and can be followed through maturation using specific markers. The progression from newborn cells to mature neurons can be tracked using markers such as Nestin and Sox-2 for newborn cells, doublecortin and polysialylated neuronal cell adhesion molecule for immature neural progenitor cells, and NeuN for mature neurons[96]. In recent years, there has been an increased effort to determine some of the major regulators of the neurogenic process in the adult brain[97-99]. Neurogenesis, mediated by the activation and differentiation of adult neural stem cells (NSCs), has been documented to occur primarily in two regions of the adult CNS: the subventricular zone (SVZ) of the lateral ventricles, and within the SGZ of the dentate gyrus (DG) in the hippocampus[100,101]. Neurogenesis in the hippocampus will be the main focus of this section, as the hippocampal region has been intimately linked and affected by seizures and epilepsy.

In rodent models of neurogenesis, radial glia-like NSCs located in the SGZ give rise to NPCs[102]. The neurogenic process involves five intricate stages, ultimately leading to the integration of newly mature granule cells in the hippocampus. During the first stage, NSCs proliferate and generate neural progenitors in the SGZ. Stage 2 is the continuous phase of survival, where NSC and progenitor cells are lost through apoptosis, in this early part of the process. During stage 3, progenitor cells undergo fate determination and differentiate into immature neurons. In stage 4, immature neurons migrate a short distance within the granule cell layer where they continue their maturation and integrate (Stage 5) into the hippocampal circuitry, receiving input from the entorhinal cortex, and projecting axons to the CA3 (mossy fibers) and hilar regions of the hippocampus[101,103-106], which further synapse with CA1 pyramidal cells[107].

In epilepsy, while the stimuli to trigger adult neurogenesis are activated, the orchestrated differentiation process is dysregulated at various steps. The newly formed granule neurons do not integrate appropriately into the dentate gyrus, thus forming aberrant connections with other neuronal cells, and contributes to epilepsy and associated cognitive decline[108-110].

The role of microglia in physiological neurogenesis

Variations in neurogenesis properties from the embryonic stages to adulthood have been studied and show that newborn neuron populations decrease with age[111], potentially due to a lowered ability of NSCs to regenerate[112], or changes in environmental cues in the hippocampus, including an activated state of microglia[113]. Microglia have been shown to participate in neurogenesis, during multiple stages of the process through the contribution of factors that affect the proliferation and survival of NSCs[114,115]. Cognitive decline has been correlated with decreased neurogenesis[116], and studies provide support to the idea that exercise or enriched environments result in an increase in neurogenesis[117-119], which may be modulated by microglial activation[120]. A pro-inflammatory environment has been demonstrated to inhibit adult neurogenesis, while anti-inflammatory treatments were able to rescue the phenotype[121,122]. All these findings demonstrate the need to understand the role of microglia in neurogenesis that takes place in the physiological and pathological CNS. The function of microglia is most likely influenced by the environmental signals in a particular setting, which will dictate the direction of their activation status.

Microglia constantly survey their environment and are in the proximity of all cell types during neurogenesis, including newborn neurons. They are also involved in the phagocytosis of NPCs and neuroblasts in a homeostatic role for maintaining neurogenic stem cells without releasing pro-inflammatory cytokines[51]. In concordance with these data, ablating microglia in the DG inhibited adult neurogenesis by diminishing neuroblast survival[123]. Although these effects are most likely mediated by the secretion of cytokines and by microglial-regulated phagocytosis, the influence of microglia on neurogenesis also extends beyond these molecular steps and events. There is a growing body of evidence demonstrating that microglial receptors can modulate their activity in neurogenesis. For example, microglial P2Y13 receptor was recently described to contribute to microglial structural integrity. When the P2Y13 receptor is knocked out, increases in proliferation of NPCs and new neurons are observed, and this may be another way to regulate neurogenesis[124]. CX3CR1 has also been demonstrated to be involved in the regulation of adult neurogenesis: microglia have been reported to activate NPCs through CX3CR1 pathways in the hippocampus[125], and CX3CR1 null (-/-) mice exhibited impaired connectivity and aberrant synapse formation[126]. This was further supported by genetic and pharmacological inhibition of CX3CR1 signaling, which also led to aberrant neurogenesis[127,128].

Abundant data show that microglia are critical in adult neurogenesis and regulate several stages of accurate incorporation of new neurons into the hippocampal circuitry. As several seizure disorders and models manifest predominantly in the hippocampus, the effects of epileptic activity on SGZ neurogenesis is starting to be uncovered.

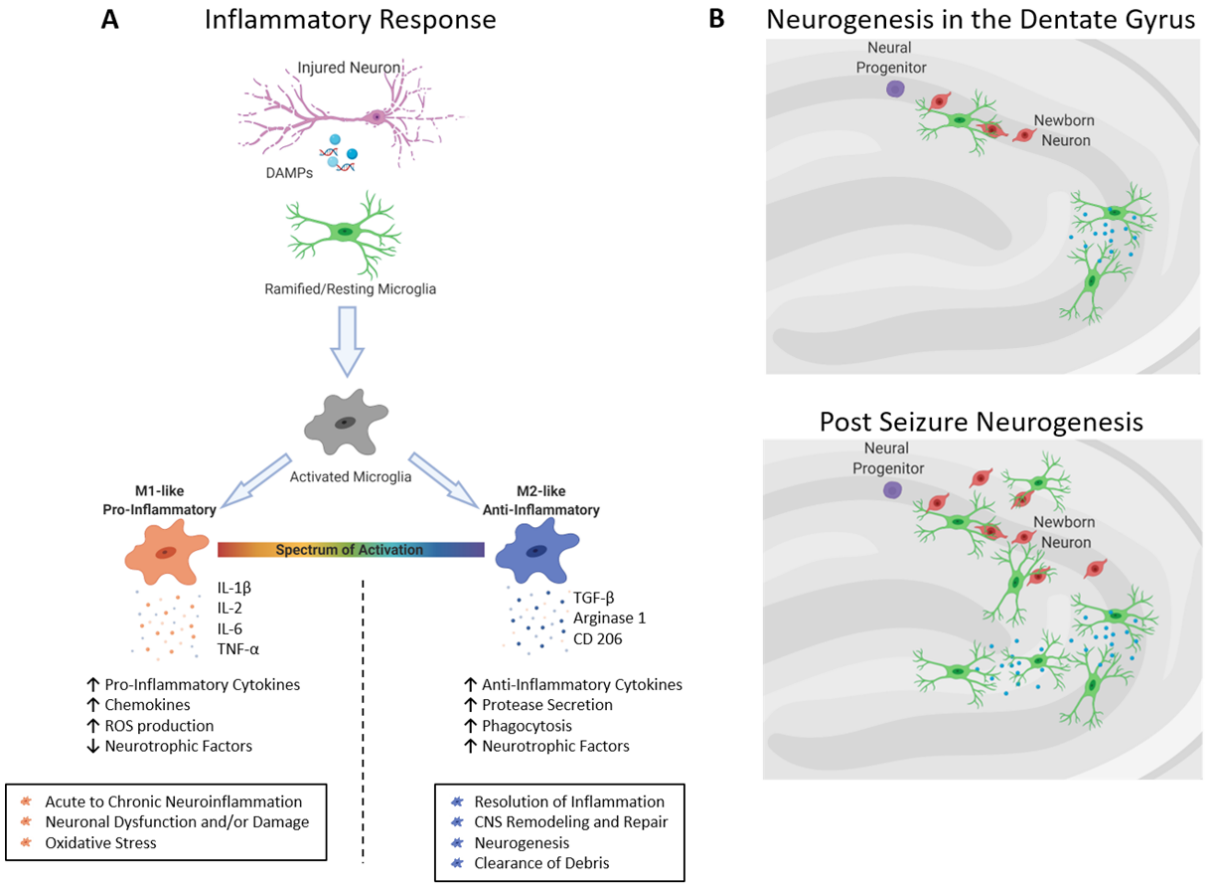


Figure 2. Microglial responses in fnflammation and neurogenesis. A: Microglia activate in response to damage associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) released by injured neurons post-seizure. Upon activation, microglial adopt one of two phenotypes: M1-like, which presents a pro-inflammatory profile that consists of decreased expression of neurotrophic factors and increased levels of pro-inflammatory chemokines and cytokines and reactive oxygen species, or M2-like, which is an anti-inflammatory response that includes the resolution of the inflammatory profile, neurogenesis and the clearance of debris; B: during neurogenesis in the hippocampus, unchallenged microglia clear cellular debris and control the number of newborn neuronal cells through phagocytosis. Post-seizure, the increased numbers of newborn cells may be cleared by microglia to reduce the potential for ectopic connections that contribute to pro-epileptic activity. Image created with Biorender.com

Neurogenesis and the pathophysiology of epilepsy

Adult neurogenesis increases following SE in animal models, resulting in an increased number of granule cells[129,130]. These additional granule cells undergo aberrant differentiation, axonal sprouting, and ectopic displacement in the hilar region of the dentate gyrus[109,131,132]. Ectopic granule cells are thought to contribute to pro-epileptic activity[133-135]; studies show that axonal sprouting and aberrant placement of granule cells were reduced when newborn granule cells were eliminated[132]. Following SE, microglia regulate the number of new granule cells through selective phagocytosis to maintain homeostasis in the dentate gyrus circuitry[136] and are capable of engulfing viable neurons in the hippocampus as well[137]. It has been suggested that microglia modulate each step (proliferation, survival, and maturation) of adult neurogenesis in both homeostasis and epileptic states[138], though their exact role in the integration of new cells has not been elucidated. Microglia may also suppress aberrant neurogenesis through the secretion of TNF-α[95], potentially leading to anti-epileptic effects [Figure 2]. Recent studies depleting microglia from the SVZ suggested that they might not be necessary for NSC proliferation[139,140], although this has not been shown in the hippocampus.

CONCLUSION

Investigation of inflammatory and neurogenic processes in epilepsy has revealed potential and critical roles of microglia in several facets of seizure generation. Epilepsy patients take AED with the aim of preventing seizures, yet studies looking at the anti-inflammatory and neurogenic effects of these drugs are sparse. Interrogating the literature for effects of AEDs in vivo on microglia, an important modulator of these processes, result in surprisingly few reports[141-143].

In vitro studies on microglial cells as mediators of inflammation have demonstrated that topiramate, a second generation AED, decreased the release of IL-1β, IL-6 and TNF-α[144]. Other AEDs such as levetiracetam, gabapentin, and phenobarbital showed slight modification in cytokine production[145]. The first generation AED valproic acid, was shown to increase IL-6 and TNF-α production in LPS-induced microglial cells[145], which contrasts with in vivo results where TNF-α and IL-1β were decreased after valproic acid treatment[143]. It was also demonstrated that the AED levetiracetam suppressed neuroinflammation and phagocytosis in a pilocarpine induced SE model[143]. Itoh *et al.*[146] reported that levetiracetam lessened microglial activation, as demonstrated by lower numbers of Iba-1 positive microglia, higher ramified shape, and low expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines. While the results of in vitro studies may eventually be applicable to the clinic, they highlight the need for clarification of the effects of AEDs on inflammation in vivo.

Studies concerning AEDs and neurogenesis are also extremely limited. Pregabalin, a widely used AED with an unknown mechanism of action, has been shown to accelerate the maturation of granule cells in the dentate gyrus[147]. In rats, lamotrigine increased the number of newborn cells in the hippocampus[148] and increased neurogenesis[149]. Valproic acid also induced neurogenesis, but these effects were not induced by phenobarbital and topiramate[149].

Epileptogenic changes in the brain are provoked by inflammation and increased neurogenic levels post-seizure. To control this process, a greater understanding of microglial contributions is needed and could provide a mechanism and target for a new generation of AEDs.

DECLARATIONS

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank members of the Tsirka lab for helpful discussions and feedback. TRV is a recipient of a National Science Foundation Graduate Research Fellowship.

Authors' contributions

Co-wrote review article, edited review, generated the images: Victor TR
Co-wrote review article, edited article, correspondence: sirka SE

Availability of data and materials

Not applicable.

Financial support and sponsorship

This work was partially supported by the National Science Foundation Graduate Research Fellowship under grant no. 1315232, and NIH T32GM127253.

Conflicts of interest

All authors declared that there are no conflicts of interest.

Ethical approval and consent to participate

Not applicable.

Consent for publication

Not applicable.

Copyright

© The Author(s) 2020.

REFERENCES

1. Laxer KD, Trinka E, Hirsch LJ, Cendes F, Langfitt J, et al. The consequences of refractory epilepsy and its treatment. Epilepsy Behav 2014;37:59-70.
2. Jin X, Yamashita T. Microglia in central nervous system repair after injury. J Biochem 2016;159:491-6.
3. Goldberg EM, Coulter DA. Mechanisms of epileptogenesis: a convergence on neural circuit dysfunction. Nat Rev Neurosci 2013;14:337-49.
4. Fisher RS, Acevedo C, Arzimanoglou A, Bogacz A, Cross JH, et al. ILAE official report: a practical clinical definition of epilepsy. Epilepsia 2014;55:475-82.
5. Fisher RS, Cross JH, French JA, Higurashi N, Hirsch E, et al. Operational classification of seizure types by the International League Against Epilepsy: Position Paper of the ILAE Commission for Classification and Terminology. Epilepsia 2017;58:522-30.
6. Hauser WA, Beghi E. First seizure definitions and worldwide incidence and mortality. Epilepsia 2008;49 Suppl 1:8-12.
7. Zack MM, Kobau R. National and state estimates of the numbers of adults and children with active epilepsy-United States, 2015. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2017;66:821-5.
8. Fiest KM, Sauro KM, Wiebe S, Patten SB, Kwon CS, et al. Prevalence and incidence of epilepsy: a systematic review and meta-analysis of international studies. Neurology 2017;88:296-303.
9. Epsztein J, Milh M, Bihi RI, Jorquera I, Ben-Ari Y, et al. Ongoing epileptiform activity in the post-ischemic hippocampus is associated with a permanent shift of the excitatory-inhibitory synaptic balance in CA3 pyramidal neurons. J Neurosci 2006;26:7082-92.
10. Huberfeld G, de La Prida LM, Pallud J, Cohen I, Le Van Quyen M, et al. Glutamatergic pre-ictal discharges emerge at the transition to seizure in human epilepsy. Nat Neurosci 2011;14:627-34.
11. Derchansky M, Jahromi SS, Mamani M, Shin DS, Sik A, et al. Transition to seizures in the isolated immature mouse hippocampus: a switch from dominant phasic inhibition to dominant phasic excitation. J Physiol 2008;586:477-94.
12. Wiebe S, Blume WT, Girvin JP, Eliasziw M; Effectiveness and Efficiency of Surgery for Temporal Lobe Epilepsy Study Group. A randomized, controlled trial of surgery for temporal-lobe epilepsy. N Engl J Med 2001;345:311-8.
13. Chen Z, Brodie MJ, Liew D, Kwan P. Treatment outcomes in patients with newly diagnosed epilepsy treated with established and new antiepileptic drugs: a 30-year longitudinal cohort study. JAMA Neurol 2018;75:279-86.
14. Liu H, Yang Y, Wang Y, Tang H, Zhang F, et al. Ketogenic diet for treatment of intractable epilepsy in adults: a meta-analysis of observational studies. Epilepsia Open 2018;3:9-17.
15. Hartman AL, Gasior M, Vining EP, Rogawski MA. The neuropharmacology of the ketogenic diet. Pediatr Neurol 2007;36:281-92.
16. Masino SA, Rho JM. Metabolism and epilepsy: ketogenic diets as a homeostatic link. Brain Res 2019;1703:26-30.
17. Starnes K, Miller K, Wong-Kisiel L, Lundstrom BN. A review of neurostimulation for epilepsy in pediatrics. Brain Sci 2019;9:283.
18. Dudek FE, Staley KJ. The time course and circuit mechanisms of acquired epileptogenesis. In: Noebels JL, Avoli M, Rogawski MA, Olsen RW, Delgado-Escueta AV, editors. Jasper's Basic Mechanisms of the Epilepsies. 4th ed. Bethesda (MD): National Center for Biotechnology Information (US); 2012.
19. Pitkänen A, Lukasiuk K, Dudek FE, Staley KJ. Epileptogenesis. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 2015;5:a022822.
20. Varvel NH, Jiang J, Dingledine R. Candidate drug targets for prevention or modification of epilepsy. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 2015;55:229-47.
21. Engel Jr J. Mesial temporal lobe epilepsy. Epilepsy: a comprehensive textbook 1997;3:2417-26.
22. Thom M, Martinian L, Catarino C, Yogarajah M, Koepp M, et al. Bilateral reorganization of the dentate gyrus in hippocampal sclerosis: a postmortem study. Neurology 2009;73:1033-40.
23. Koyama R, Ikegaya Y. The molecular and cellular mechanisms of axon guidance in mossy fiber sprouting. Front Neurol 2018;9:382.
24. Buckmaster PS. Mossy Fiber Sprouting in the Dentate Gyrus. In: Noebels JL, Avoli M, Rogawski MA, Olsen RW, Delgado-Escueta AV, editors. Jasper's Basic Mechanisms of the Epilepsies. 4th ed. Bethesda (MD): National Center for Biotechnology Information (US); 2012.
25. Sloviter RS, Zappone CA, Harvey BD, Frotscher M. Kainic acid-induced recurrent mossy fiber innervation of dentate gyrus inhibitory interneurons: possible anatomical substrate of granule cell hyper-inhibition in chronically epileptic rats. J Comp Neurol 2006;494:944-60.
26. Heck N, Garwood J, Loeffler JP, Larmet Y, Faissner A. Differential upregulation of extracellular matrix molecules associated with the appearance of granule cell dispersion and mossy fiber sprouting during epileptogenesis in a murine model of temporal lobe epilepsy. Neuroscience 2004;129:309-24.
27. Wu YP, Siao CJ, Lu W, Sung TC, Frohman MA, et al. The tissue plasminogen activator (tPA)/plasmin extracellular proteolytic system regulates seizure-induced hippocampal mossy fiber outgrowth through a proteoglycan substrate. J Cell Biol 2000;148:1295-304.
28. Zhang Y, Huang P, Du G, Kanaho Y, Frohman MA, et al. Increased expression of two phospholipase D isoforms during experimentally

induced hippocampal mossy fiber outgrowth. Glia 2004;46:74-83.
29. Zhang Y, Kanaho Y, Frohman MA, Tsirka SE. Phospholipase D1-promoted release of tissue plasminogen activator facilitates neurite outgrowth. J Neurosci 2005;25:1797-805.
30. Devinsky O, Vezzani A, Najjar S, De Lanerolle NC, Rogawski MA. Glia and epilepsy: excitability and inflammation. Trends Neurosci 2013;36:174-84.
31. Eyo UB, Murugan M, Wu LJ. Microglia-neuron communication in epilepsy. Glia 2017;65:5-18.
32. Robel S, Buckingham SC, Boni JL, Campbell SL, Danbolt NC, et al. Reactive astrogliosis causes the development of spontaneous seizures. J Neurosci 2015;35:3330-45.
33. Takahashi Y, Yu Z, Sakai M, Tomita H. Linking activation of microglia and peripheral monocytic cells to the pathophysiology of psychiatric disorders. Front Cell Neurosci 2016;10:144.
34. Obermeier B, Daneman R, Ransohoff RM. Development, maintenance and disruption of the blood-brain barrier. Nat Med 2013;19:1584-96.
35. Friedman A, Heinemann U. Role of blood–brain barrier injury in epileptogenesis. Epilepsia 2010;51:34-34.
36. Christensen J, Pedersen MG, Pedersen CB, Sidenius P, Olsen J, et al. Long-term risk of epilepsy after traumatic brain injury in children and young adults: a population-based cohort study. Lancet 2009;373:1105-10.
37. Schoknecht K, Prager O, Vazana U, Kamintsky L, Harhausen D, et al. Monitoring stroke progression: in vivo imaging of cortical perfusion, blood-brain barrier permeability and cellular damage in the rat photothrombosis model. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 2014;34:1791-801.
38. Vezzani A, Maroso M, Balosso S, Sanchez MA, Bartfai T. IL-1 receptor/Toll-like receptor signaling in infection, inflammation, stress and neurodegeneration couples hyperexcitability and seizures. Brain Behav Immun 2011;25:1281-9.
39. Aronica E, Bauer S, Bozzi Y, Caleo M, Dingledine R, et al. Neuroinflammatory targets and treatments for epilepsy validated in experimental models. Epilepsia 2017;58 Suppl 3:27-38.
40. French JA, Gazzola DM. New generation antiepileptic drugs: what do they offer in terms of improved tolerability and safety?. Ther Adv Drug Saf 2011;2:141-58.
41. Barker-Haliski M, Steve White H. Validated animal models for antiseizure drug (ASD) discovery: advantages and potential pitfalls in ASD screening. Neuropharmacology 2020;167:107750.
42. Löscher W. Animal models of seizures and epilepsy: past, present, and future role for the discovery of antiseizure drugs. Neurochem Res 2017;42:1873-88.
43. Löscher W, Schmidt D. Modern antiepileptic drug development has failed to deliver: ways out of the current dilemma. Epilepsia 2011;52:657-78.
44. Welzel L, Schidlitzki A, Twele F, Anjum M, Löscher W. A face-to-face comparison of the intra-amygdala and intrahippocampal kainate mouse models of mesial temporal lobe epilepsy and their utility for testing novel therapies. Epilepsia 2020;61:157-70.
45. Simonato M, Brooks-Kayal AR, Engel J Jr, Galanopoulou AS, Jensen FE, et al. The challenge and promise of anti-epileptic therapy development in animal models. Lancet Neurol 2014;13:949-60.
46. Kandratavicius L, Balista PA, Lopes-Aguiar C, Ruggiero RN, Umeoka EH, et al. Animal models of epilepsy: use and limitations. Neuropsychiatr Dis Treat 2014;10:1693-705.
47. Ben-Ari Y. Limbic seizure and brain damage produced by kainic acid: mechanisms and relevance to human temporal lobe epilepsy. Neuroscience 1985;14:375-403.
48. Turski L, Ikonomidou C, Turski WA, Bortolotto ZA, Cavalheiro EA. Review: cholinergic mechanisms and epileptogenesis. The seizures induced by pilocarpine: a novel experimental model of intractable epilepsy. Synapse 1989;3:154-71.
49. Nimmerjahn A, Kirchhoff F, Helmchen F. Resting microglial cells are highly dynamic surveillants of brain parenchyma in vivo. Science 2005;308:1314-8.
50. Cunningham CL, Martínez-Cerdeño V, Noctor SC. Microglia regulate the number of neural precursor cells in the developing cerebral cortex. J Neurosci 2013;33:4216-33.
51. Sierra A, Encinas JM, Deudero JJ, Chancey JH, Enikolopov G, et al. Microglia shape adult hippocampal neurogenesis through apoptosis-coupled phagocytosis. Cell Stem Cell 2010;7:483-5.
52. Ueno M, Fujita Y, Tanaka T, Nakamura Y, Kikuta J, et al. Layer V cortical neurons require microglial support for survival during postnatal development. Nat Neurosci 2013;16:543-551
53. Peri F, Nüsslein-Volhard C. Live imaging of neuronal degradation by microglia reveals a role for v0-ATPase a1 in phagosomal fusion in vivo. Cell 2008;133:916-27.
54. Squarzoni P, Oller G, Hoeffel G, Pont-Lezica L, Rostaing P, et al. Microglia modulate wiring of the embryonic forebrain. Cell Rep 2014;8:1271-9.
55. Paolicelli RC, Bolasco G, Pagani F, Maggi L, Scianni M, et al. Synaptic pruning by microglia is necessary for normal brain development. Science. 2011;333:1456-8.
56. Schafer DP, Lehrman EK, Kautzman AG, Koyama R, Mardinly AR, et al. Microglia sculpt postnatal neural circuits in an activity and complement-dependent manner. Neuron 2012;74:691-705.
57. Miyamoto A, Wake H, Ishikawa AW, Eto K, Shibata K, et al. Microglia contact induces synapse formation in developing somatosensory cortex. Nat Commun 2016;7:12540.
58. Augusto-Oliveira M, Arrifano GP, Lopes-Araújo A, Santos-Sacramento L, Takeda PY, et al. What do microglia really do in healthy adult brain?. Cells 2019;8:1293.
59. van Landeghem FK, Stover JF, Bechmann I, Bruck W, Unterberg A, et al. Early expression of glutamate transporter proteins in ramified

microglia after controlled cortical impact injury in the rat. Glia 2001;35:167-79.
60. Wyatt-Johnson SK, Herr SA, Brewster AL. Status epilepticus triggers time-dependent alterations in microglia abundance and morphological phenotypes in the hippocampus. Front Neurol 2017;8:700.
61. Tsirka SE, Gualandris A, Amaral DG, Strickland S. Excitotoxin-induced neuronal degeneration and seizure are mediated by tissue plasminogen activator. Nature 1995;377:340-4.
62. Borges K, Gearing M, McDermott DL, Smith AB, Almonte AG, et al. Neuronal and glial pathological changes during epileptogenesis in the mouse pilocarpine model. Exp Neurol 2003;182:21-34.
63. Benson MJ, Manzanero S, Borges K. Complex alterations in microglial M1/M2 markers during the development of epilepsy in two mouse models. Epilepsia 2015;56:895-905.
64. Alyu F, Dikmen M. Inflammatory aspects of epileptogenesis: contribution of molecular inflammatory mechanisms. Acta Neuropsychiatr 2017;29:1-16.
65. Choi J, Koh S. Role of brain inflammation in epileptogenesis. Yonsei Med J 2008;49:1-18.
66. Politis M, Su P, Piccini P. Imaging of microglia in patients with neurodegenerative disorders. Front Pharmacol 2012;3:96.
67. Butler T, Li Y, Tsui W, Friedman D, Maoz A, et al. Transient and chronic seizure-induced inflammation in human focal epilepsy. Epilepsia 2016;57:e191-4.
68. Scorza CA, Marques MJG, Gomes da Silva S, Naffah-Mazzacoratti MDG, Scorza FA, et al. Status epilepticus does not induce acute brain inflammatory response in the Amazon rodent Proechimys, an animal model resistant to epileptogenesis. Neurosci Lett 2018;668:169-73.
69. Viviani B, Bartesaghi S, Gardoni F, Vezzani A, Behrens MM, et al. Interleukin-1beta enhances NMDA receptor-mediated intracellular calcium increase through activation of the Src family of kinases. J Neurosci 2003;23:8692-700.
70. Han T, Qin Y, Mou C, Wang M, Jiang M, et al. Seizure induced synaptic plasticity alteration in hippocampus is mediated by IL-1β receptor through PI3K/Akt pathway. Am J Transl Res 2016;8:4499-509.
71. Roseti C, van Vliet EA, Cifelli P, Ruffolo G, Baayen JC, et al. GABAA currents are decreased by IL-1β in epileptogenic tissue of patients with temporal lobe epilepsy: implications for ictogenesis. Neurobiol Dis 2015;82:311-20.
72. Maroso M, Balosso S, Ravizza T, Iori V, Wright CI, et al. Interleukin-1β biosynthesis inhibition reduces acute seizures and drug resistant chronic epileptic activity in mice. Neurotherapeutics 2011;8:304-15.
73. Ravizza T, Vezzani A. Pharmacological targeting of brain inflammation in epilepsy: therapeutic perspectives from experimental and clinical studies. Epilepsia Open 2018;3:133-42.
74. Dilena R, Mauri E, Aronica E, Bernasconi P, Bana C, et al. Therapeutic effect of Anakinra in the relapsing chronic phase of febrile infection-related epilepsy syndrome. Epilepsia Open 2019;4:344-50.
75. Stellwagen D, Malenka RC. Synaptic scaling mediated by glial TNF-alpha. Nature 2006;440:1054-9.
76. Takeuchi H, Jin S, Wang J, Zhang G, Kawanokuchi J, et al. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha induces neurotoxicity via glutamate release from hemichannels of activated microglia in an autocrine manner. J Biol Chem 2006;281:21362-8.
77. Kubota K, Inoue K, Hashimoto R, Kumamoto N, Kosuga A, et al. Tumor necrosis factor receptor-associated protein 1 regulates cell adhesion and synaptic morphology via modulation of N-cadherin expression. J Neurochem 2009;110:496-508.
78. Stellwagen D, Beattie EC, Seo JY, Malenka RC. Differential regulation of AMPA receptor and GABA receptor trafficking by tumor necrosis factor-alpha. J Neurosci 2005;25:3219-28.
79. Levin SG, Godukhin OV. Modulating Effect of Cytokines on Mechanisms of Synaptic Plasticity in the Brain. Biochemistry (Mosc) 2017;82:264-74.
80. Mirrione MM, Konomos DK, Gravanis I, Dewey SL, Aguzzi A, et al. Microglial ablation and lipopolysaccharide preconditioning affects pilocarpine-induced seizures in mice. Neurobiol Dis 2010;39:85-97.
81. Torres L, Danver J, Ji K, Miyauchi JT, Chen D, et al. Dynamic microglial modulation of spatial learning and social behavior. Brain Behav Immun 2016;55:6-16.
82. Elmore MR, Najafi AR, Koike MA, Dagher NN, Spangenberg EE, et al. Colony-stimulating factor 1 receptor signaling is necessary for microglia viability, unmasking a microglia progenitor cell in the adult brain. Neuron 2014;82:380-97.
83. Homsi S, Piaggio T, Croci N, Noble F, Plotkine M, et al. Blockade of acute microglial activation by minocycline promotes neuroprotection and reduces locomotor hyperactivity after closed head injury in mice: a twelve-week follow-up study. J Neurotrauma 2010;27:911-21.
84. Heo K, Cho YJ, Cho KJ, Kim HW, Kim HJ, et al. Minocycline inhibits caspase-dependent and -independent cell death pathways and is neuroprotective against hippocampal damage after treatment with kainic acid in mice. Neurosci Lett 2006;398:195-200.
85. Wang N, Mi X, Gao B, Gu J, Wang W, et al. Minocycline inhibits brain inflammation and attenuates spontaneous recurrent seizures following pilocarpine-induced status epilepticus. Neuroscience 2015;287:144-56.
86. Barker-Haliski ML, Heck TD, Dahle EJ, Vanegas F, Pruess TH, et al. Acute treatment with minocycline, but not valproic acid, improves long-term behavioral outcomes in the Theiler's virus model of temporal lobe epilepsy. Epilepsia 2016;57:1958-67.
87. Wolf BJ, Brackhan M, Bascunana P, Leiter I, Langer BLN, et al. TSPO PET identifies different anti-inflammatory minocycline treatment response in two rodent models of epileptogenesis. Neurotherapeutics 2020;10.
88. Wang DD, Englot DJ, Garcia PA, Lawton MT, Young WL. Minocycline-and tetracycline-class antibiotics are protective against partial seizures in vivo. Epilepsy Behav 2012;24:314-8.
89. Russmann V, Goc J, Boes K, Ongerth T, Salvamoser JD, et al. Minocycline fails to exert antiepileptogenic effects in a rat status epilepticus model. Eur J Pharmacol 2016;771:29-39.
90. Dupuis N, Mazarati A, Desnous B, Chhor V, Fleiss B, et al. Pro-epileptogenic effects of viral-like inflammation in both mature and

immature brains. J Neuroinflammation 2016;13:307.
91. Vezzani A, Aronica E, Mazarati A, Pittman QJ. Epilepsy and brain inflammation. Exp Neurol 2013;244:11-21.
92. Gross A, Benninger F, Madar R, Illouz T, Griffioen K, et al. Toll-like receptor 3 deficiency decreases epileptogenesis in a pilocarpine model of SE-induced epilepsy in mice. Epilepsia 2017;58:586-96.
93. Maroso M, Balosso S, Ravizza T, Liu J, Aronica E, et al. Toll-like receptor 4 and high-mobility group box-1 are involved in ictogenesis and can be targeted to reduce seizures. Nat Med 2010;16:413-9.
94. Liu JT, Wu SX, Zhang H, Kuang F. Inhibition of MyD88 signaling skews microglia/macrophage polarization and attenuates neuronal apoptosis in the hippocampus after status epilepticus in mice. Neurotherapeutics 2018;15:1093-111.
95. Matsuda T, Murao N, Katano Y, Juliandi B, Kohyama J, et al. TLR9 signalling in microglia attenuates seizure-induced aberrant neurogenesis in the adult hippocampus. Nat Commun 2015;6:6514.
96. Zhang J, Jiao J. Molecular biomarkers for embryonic and adult neural stem cell and neurogenesis. Biomed Res Int 2015;2015:727542.
97. Kempermann G. Environmental enrichment, new neurons and the neurobiology of individuality. Nat Rev Neurosci. 2019;20:235-45.
98. Yao B, Christian KM, He C, Jin P, Ming GL, et al. Epigenetic mechanisms in neurogenesis. Nat Rev Neurosci 2016;17:537-49.
99. Voss MW, Soto C, Yoo S, Sodoma M, Vivar C, et al. Exercise and hippocampal memory systems. Trends Cogn Sci 2019;23:318-33.
100. Eriksson PS, Perfilieva E, Bjork-Eriksson T, Alborn AM, Nordborg C, et al. Neurogenesis in the adult human hippocampus. Nat Med 1998;4:1313-7.
101. Kempermann G, Jessberger S, Steiner B, Kronenberg G. Milestones of neuronal development in the adult hippocampus. Trends Neurosci 2004;27:447-52.
102. Dhaliwal J, Lagace DC. Visualization and genetic manipulation of adult neurogenesis using transgenic mice. Eur J Neurosci 2011;33:1025-36.
103. Gage FH, Coates PW, Palmer TD, Kuhn HG, Fisher LJ, et al. Survival and differentiation of adult neuronal progenitor cells transplanted to the adult brain. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1995;92:11879-83.
104. Ming GL, Song H. Adult neurogenesis in the mammalian brain: significant answers and significant questions. Neuron 2011;70:687-702.
105. van Praag H, Schinder AF, Christie BR, Toni N, Palmer TD, et al. Functional neurogenesis in the adult hippocampus. Nature 2002;415:1030-4.
106. de Miranda AS, Zhang CJ, Katsumoto A, Teixeira AL. Hippocampal adult neurogenesis: Does the immune system matter?. J Neurol Sci 2017;372:482-95.
107. Deng W, Aimone JB, Gage FH. New neurons and new memories: how does adult hippocampal neurogenesis affect learning and memory?. Nat Rev Neurosci 2010;11:339-50.
108. Cho KO, Lybrand ZR, Ito N, Brulet R, Tafacory F, et al. Aberrant hippocampal neurogenesis contributes to epilepsy and associated cognitive decline. Nat Commun 2015;6:6606.
109. Parent JM, Elliott RC, Pleasure SJ, Barbaro NM, Lowenstein DH. Aberrant seizure-induced neurogenesis in experimental temporal lobe epilepsy. Ann Neurol 2006;59:81-91.
110. Jessberger S, Parent JM. Epilepsy and adult neurogenesis. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol. 2015;7:a020677.
111. Kuhn HG, Dickinson-Anson H, Gage FH. Neurogenesis in the dentate gyrus of the adult rat: age-related decrease of neuronal progenitor proliferation. J Neurosci 1996;16:2027-33.
112. Encinas JM, Michurina TV, Peunova N, Park JH, Tordo J, et al. Division-coupled astrocytic differentiation and age-related depletion of neural stem cells in the adult hippocampus. Cell Stem Cell 2011;8:566-79.
113. Mosher KI, Schaffer DV. Influence of hippocampal niche signals on neural stem cell functions during aging. Cell Tissue Res 2018;371:115-24.
114. Walton NM, Sutter BM, Laywell ED, Levkoff LH, Kearns SM, et al. Microglia instruct subventricular zone neurogenesis. Glia 2006;54:815-25.
115. Matsui TK, Mori E. Microglia support neural stem cell maintenance and growth. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 2018;503:1880-4.
116. Villeda SA, Luo J, Mosher KI, Zou B, Britschgi M, et al. The ageing systemic milieu negatively regulates neurogenesis and cognitive function. Nature 2011;477:90-4.
117. van Praag H, Shubert T, Zhao C, Gage FH. Exercise enhances learning and hippocampal neurogenesis in aged mice. J Neurosci 2005;25:8680-5.
118. van Praag H, Christie BR, Sejnowski TJ, Gage FH. Running enhances neurogenesis, learning, and long-term potentiation in mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1999;9:13427-31.
119. Kempermann G, Kuhn HG, Gage FH. Experience-induced neurogenesis in the senescent dentate gyrus. J Neurosci 1998;18:3206-12.
120. Ziv Y, Avidan H, Pluchino S, Martino G, Schwartz M. Synergy between immune cells and adult neural stem/progenitor cells promotes functional recovery from spinal cord injury. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2006;103:13174-9.
121. Ekdahl CT, Claasen JH, Bonde S, Kokaia Z, Lindvall O. Inflammation is detrimental for neurogenesis in adult brain. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2003;100:13632-7.
122. Monje ML, Toda H, Palmer TD. Inflammatory blockade restores adult hippocampal neurogenesis. Science 2003;302:1760-5.
123. Kreisel T, Wolf B, Keshet E, Licht T. Unique role for dentate gyrus microglia in neuroblast survival and in VEGF-induced activation. Glia 2019;67:594-618.
124. Stefani J, Tschesnokowa O, Parrilla M, Robaye B, Boeynaems JM, et al. Disruption of the microglial ADP receptor $P2Y_{13}$ enhances adult hippocampal neurogenesis. Front Cell Neurosci 2018;12:134.
125. Vukovic J, Colditz MJ, Blackmore DG, Ruitenberg MJ, Bartlett PF. Microglia modulate hippocampal neural precursor activity in

response to exercise and aging. J Neurosci 2012;32:6435-43.
126. Bolos M, Perea JR, Terreros-Roncal J, Pallas-Bazarra N, Jurado-Arjona J, et al. Absence of microglial CX3CR1 impairs the synaptic integration of adult-born hippocampal granule neurons. Brain Behav Immun 2018;68:76-89.
127. Bachstetter AD, Morganti JM, Jernberg J, Schlunk A, Mitchell SH, et al. Fractalkine and CX 3 CR1 regulate hippocampal neurogenesis in adult and aged rats. Neurobiol Aging 2011;32:2030-44.
128. Maggi L, Scianni M, Branchi I, D'Andrea I, Lauro C, et al. CX(3)CR1 deficiency alters hippocampal-dependent plasticity phenomena blunting the effects of enriched environment. Front Cell Neurosci 2011;5:22.
129. Parent JM, Yu TW, Leibowitz RT, Geschwind DH, Sloviter RS, et al. Dentate granule cell neurogenesis is increased by seizures and contributes to aberrant network reorganization in the adult rat hippocampus. J Neurosci 1997;17:3727-38.
130. Jessberger S, Römer B, Babu H, Kempermann G. Seizures induce proliferation and dispersion of doublecortin-positive hippocampal progenitor cells. Exp Neurol 2005;196:342-51.
131. Jessberger S, Zhao C, Toni N, Clemenson GD Jr, Li Y, et al. Seizure-associated, aberrant neurogenesis in adult rats characterized with retrovirus-mediated cell labeling. J Neurosci 2007;27:9400-7.
132. Kron MM, Zhang H, Parent JM. The developmental stage of dentate granule cells dictates their contribution to seizure-induced plasticity. J Neurosci 2010;30:2051-59.
133. Scharfman HE, Goodman JH, Sollas AL. Granule-like neurons at the hilar/CA3 border after status epilepticus and their synchrony with area CA3 pyramidal cells: functional implications of seizure-induced neurogenesis. J Neurosci 2000;20:6144-58.
134. Zhan RZ, Timofeeva O, Nadler JV. High ratio of synaptic excitation to synaptic inhibition in hilar ectopic granule cells of pilocarpine-treated rats. J Neurophysiol 2010;104:3293-304.
135. Pun RY, Rolle IJ, Lasarge CL, Hosford BE, Rosen JM, et al. Excessive activation of mTOR in postnatally generated granule cells is sufficient to cause epilepsy. Neuron 2012;75:1022-34.
136. Luo C, Koyama R, Ikegaya Y. Microglia engulf viable newborn cells in the epileptic dentate gyrus. Glia 2016;64:1508-17.
137. Abiega O, Beccari S, Diaz-Aparicio I, Nadjar A, Laye S, et al. Neuronal hyperactivity disturbs ATP microgradients, impairs microglial motility, and reduces phagocytic receptor expression triggering apoptosis/microglial phagocytosis uncoupling. PLoS Biol 2016;14:e1002466.
138. Luo C, Ikegaya Y, Koyama R. Microglia and neurogenesis in the epileptic dentate gyrus. Neurogenesis (Austin) 2016;3:e1235525.
139. Kyle J, Wu M, Gourzi S, Tsirka SE. Proliferation and differentiation in the adult subventricular zone are not affected by CSF1R inhibition. Front Cell Neurosci 2019;13:97.
140. Ribeiro Xavier AL, Kress BT, Goldman SA, Lacerda de Menezes JR, Nedergaard M. A distinct population of microglia supports adult neurogenesis in the subventricular zone. J Neurosci 2015;35:11848-61.
141. Gibbons HM, Smith AM, Teoh HH, Bergin PM, Mee EW, et al. Valproic acid induces microglial dysfunction, not apoptosis, in human glial cultures. Neurobiol Dis 2011;41:96-103.
142. Su W, Xie M, Li Y, Gong X, Li J. Topiramate reverses physiological and behavioral alterations by postoperative cognitive dysfunction in rat model through inhibiting TNF signaling pathway. Neuromolecular Med 2020;22:227-38.
143. Itoh K, Taniguchi R, Matsuo T, Oguro A, Vogel CF, et al. Suppressive effects of levetiracetam on neuroinflammation and phagocytic microglia: A comparative study of levetiracetam, valproate and carbamazepine. Neurosci Lett 2019;708:134363.
144. Andrzejczak D, Woldan-Tambor A, Bednarska K, Zawilska JB. The effects of topiramate on lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-induced proinflammatory cytokine release from primary rat microglial cell cultures. Epilepsy Res 2016;127:352-7.
145. Shima T, Sakuma H, Suzuki T, Kohyama K, Matsuoka T, et al. Effects of antiepileptic drugs on microglial properties. Epilepsy & Seizure 2018;10:22-32.
146. Itoh K, Ishihara Y, Komori R, Nochi H, Taniguchi R, et al. Levetiracetam treatment influences blood-brain barrier failure associated with angiogenesis and inflammatory responses in the acute phase of epileptogenesis in post-status epilepticus mice. Brain Res 2016;1652:1-13.
147. Lempel AA, Coll L, Schinder AF, Uchitel OD, Piriz J. Chronic pregabalin treatment decreases excitability of dentate gyrus and accelerates maturation of adult-born granule cells. J Neurochem 2017;140:257-67.
148. Kondziella D, Strandberg J, Lindquist C, Asztely F. Lamotrigine increases the number of BrdU-labeled cells in the rat hippocampus. Neuroreport 2011;22:97-100.
149. Shi XY, Wang JW, Cui H, Li BM, Lei GF, et al. Effects of antiepileptic drugs on mRNA levels of BDNF and NT-3 and cell neogenesis in the developing rat brain. Brain Dev 2010;32:229-35.

Benusa *et al. Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:248-63
DOI: 10.20517/2347-8659.2020.03

Neuroimmunology and Neuroinflammation

Review

Open Access

Microglial heterogeneity: distinct cell types or differential functional adaptation?

Savannah D. Benusa[1,2], Nicholas M. George[3], Jeffrey L. Dupree[1,2]

[1]Department of Anatomy and Neurobiology, Virginia Commonwealth University, Richmond, VA 23298, USA.
[2]Research Service, HH McGuire Veterans Affairs Medical Center, Richmond, VA 23249, USA.
[3]Neuroscience Program, University of Colorado Anschutz Medical Campus, Aurora, CO 80045, USA.

Correspondence to: Dr. Jeffrey L. Dupree, Department of Anatomy and Neurobiology, Virginia Commonwealth University, 1101 East Marshall Street, Richmond, VA 23298, USA. E-mail: jeffrey.dupree@vcuhealth.org

How to cite this article: Benusa SD, George NM, Dupree JL. Microglial heterogeneity: distinct cell types or differential functional adaptation? *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:248-63. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.03

Received: 7 Jan 2020 **First Decision**: 26 Feb 2020 **Revised**: 15 Mar 2020 **Accepted**: 31 Mar 2020 **Available online**: 24 Jun 2020

Science Editor: Jeffrey Bajramovic **Copy Editor**: Jing-Wen Zhang **Production Editor**: Tian Zhang

Abstract

Microglia were first characterized by del Rio Hortega about 100 years ago but our understanding of these cells has only gained traction in the last 20 years. We now recognize that microglia are involved in a plethora of activities including circuitry refinement, neuronal and glial trophic support, cell number modulation, angiogenesis and immune surveillance. Specific to immune surveillance, microglia detect threats which then drive their transformation from ramified to amoeboid cells. This morphological transition is accompanied by changes in cytokine and chemokine expression, which are far less conserved than morphology. To simplify discussion of these expression changes, nomenclature ascribed to states of macrophage activation, known as Macrophage 1 ("M1"; classic) and Macrophage 2 ("M2"; alternative), have been assigned to microglia. However, such a classification for microglia is an oversimplification that fails to accurately represent the array of cellular phenotypes. Additionally, multiple subclasses of microglia have now been described that do not belong to the "M1/M2" classification. Here, we provide a brief review outlining the prominent subclasses of microglia that have been described recently. Additionally, we present novel NanoString data demonstrating distinct microglial phenotypes from three commonly used central nervous system inflammation murine models to study microglial response and conclude with an introduction of recent RNA sequencing studies. In turn, this may not only facilitate a more appropriate naming scheme for these enigmatic cells, but more importantly, provide a framework for generating microglial expression "fingerprints" that may assist in the development of novel therapies by targeting disease-specific microglial subtypes.

Keywords: Microglia, neuroinflammation, single cell RNA-seq, NanoString

© The Author(s) 2020. **Open Access** This article is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, for any purpose, even commercially, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license, and indicate if changes were made.

INTRODUCTION

Microglia, the resident immune cells of the central nervous system (CNS), were first characterized 100 years ago by Pio del Rio Hortega (reviewed in[1]) but our understanding of their function remains incomplete. The best-known function of microglia is CNS surveillance whereby cell debris are scavenged during periods of pathology to maintain and re-establish a healthy homeostatic environment. However, this limited view of microglia function has evolved to include a list of other potential functions designed to establish, maintain, and when necessary, re-establish CNS homeostasis following both pathologic events and in the developing and mature healthy brain. This new appreciation for the plethora of microglial functions in both health and disease has resulted in a renewed interest in these enigmatic and mercurial cells.

At present, it is unclear how microglia are capable of mediating a wide range of activities that, in some cases, are seemingly in contrast to each other. For example, during development, microglia regulate neuronal numbers by both driving cell death[2-7] and promoting proliferation and survival[8-11]. This dichotomy of neurogenesis regulation is not limited to the developing brain since microglia both enhance[12] and deplete[13] the number of neural progenitor cells in the adult brain. Similarly, microglia regulate synapse numbers by both stripping/pruning[14-18] and stabilizing[19,20] dendritic spines and inhibitory synapses both in development and adulthood by potentially distinct mechanisms[21-24]. Furthermore, microglial regulation of cell populations is not limited to neurons as similar observations have also been reported for oligodendrocytes and astrocytes. Additionally, under pathologic conditions in the adult brain, microglia influence astrocytic phenotypes by ranging from neuroprotective to neurotoxic[25,26] and have been implicated in angiogenesis including regulation of the structure and function of the neurovasculature[27,28]. Taken together, it is becoming apparent that microglia oversee a vast array of events in the developing, healthy and diseased CNS although how such a single cell type can manage such a multitude of functions remains to be determined. Strong evidence is now emerging that microglia present as distinct subclasses but it remains to be determined if these subclasses represent intrinsically distinct cell populations, or if intrinsically similar cells are driven into functional heterogeneity dictated by changes in environmental cues provided by a highly dynamic CNS[29].

In addition to providing a brief review of several parameters and subclasses that define microglial heterogeneity, we also present novel RNA expression profile data that are consistent with the development of distinct microglial phenotypes as a consequence of distinct inflammatory environments. As presented in more detail below, we isolated cortical microglia from mice in three commonly used models to study various aspects of multiple sclerosis - cuprizone, lipopolysaccharide (LPS) and experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE). Orally administered cuprizone results in CNS demyelination secondary to oligodendrocyte death. Intraperitoneal injection of the endotoxin LPS mediates a peripheral immune response that results in widespread CNS neuroinflammation. Similarly, EAE is induced by a peripheral injection of a bacterial exotoxin that is accompanied by Complete Freund's Adjuvant and a myelin antigen resulting in breakdown of the blood brain barrier. Although microglia from all three models presented pro-inflammatory profiles, the microglia from each expressed a unique set of factors suggesting environmental-specific responses. Although these observations are consistent with environmental cues driving heterogeneity, it remains possible, and perhaps likely, that microglia also represent intrinsically distinct populations.

Microglial heterogeneity

Currently, a prevailing thought is that microglia, which derive from the embryonic yolk sac, develop initially as a single-cell type lineage[30] and subsequently, into a heterogeneous population in the adult brain as a result of local environmental cues that define their differentiation and functional specificity[31-35]. For example, in the injured adult brain, neurons can express or secrete "find me" signals such as fractalkine/

C-X3-C motif chemokine receptor 1 (Cx3Cr1)[36] and "eat me" signals such as calreticulin/low-density lipoprotein receptor related protein[37]. These signals, which are not present in the healthy CNS, cue microglia to assume a phagocytic phenotype and to "find" and "eat" the compromised cells. Therefore, environmental cues have the capacity to drive the transformation of microglia from a surveying to a phagocytic phenotype. It remains unclear if all microglia in the neighborhood of the "find me" and "eat me" signals respond in the same manner, or if intrinsic heterogeneity results in the response from select subclasses of the microglial population.

Heterogeneity between brain regions

Some of the earliest evidence of heterogeneity within the microglial population was presented by Lawson *et al.*[38], who reported brain-region specific densities of cells with higher densities in the hippocampus and thalamus, and a lower density in the cerebellum. Although no functional differences were established, such density differences are consistent with local environmental cues regulating the microglial population. In line with this idea, De Biase *et al.*[39] reported that regional differences are tightly and specifically regulated since closely apposed nuclei within the basal ganglia present with dramatically different microglial densities[40] while other cell types in the same basal ganglia nuclei present with uniform densities, indicating that differential cell densities are not dictated by the spatial constraints of the tissue. Precisely how these region-specific differences are regulated remains to be fully explained although region-specific self-renewal rates have been presented[41] and it is possible that region-specific cues regulate proliferation and, ultimately, cell density[42]. Moreover, factors that regulate microglia numbers in the embryonic brain *vs.* the adult brain may also differ[43,44], which would be consistent with local cues defining both distribution and heterogeneity within the microglial population. This concept was supported by Grabert *et al.*[45], who demonstrated that microglia have regionally distinct transcription profiles.

Heterogeneity between sexes

Variations in cell density and transcription profiles are not limited to regional differences as similar distinctions have also been reported between microglia from male and female mice. Male mice present with more microglia in the cortex, hippocampus, dentate gyrus, and amygdala in early postnatal brains. As the mice mature, these densities flip with female mice presenting with a greater cell density in these regions[46]. Although there is no direct evidence that sex-dependent differences in cell density are responsible for functional differences, studies have shown that male and female microglia are functionally distinct and respond differently to noxious stimuli[47,48]. For example, Nelson *et al.*[49] and Yanguas-Casás *et al.*[40] showed that female microglia have a greater phagocytic capacity but male microglia have greater migratory activity under both basal and interferon γ-induced inflammatory conditions. Guneykaya *et al.*[50] then reported that male microglia display a higher antigen-presenting capacity as compared to female cells. Interestingly, microglia may also play a role in sex determination since the inhibition of microglial activity in male rodent neonates, at an age critical for sex determination, resulted in the reduction of masculine dendritic spine density and altered copulatory behavior in adults[51]. A potential caveat to this work, however, was that microglial activity was inhibited by minocycline, which is a broad spectrum antibiotic that is known to target both T cells and astrocytes[52,53].

Intrinsically defined heterogeneity?

The mechanisms responsible for these sex differences are not known and transcriptomic studies comparing male and female microglia reveal expression differences in both the healthy and perturbed states[48,50,54,55]. Whether microglia are intrinsically distinct between males and females, or if the local sex-specific environment differentially regulate male and female cells remains to be determined. Microglia from male *vs.* female mice express different sex hormone receptors[56-58] however, and present with sex-specific outcomes when exposed to these hormones[49,51,59-61]. Independent of sex, microglia have also been shown to express different levels of markers in the adult, unchallenged brain[62]. Bertolotto *et al.*[62] showed that microglia

express varying levels of keratin sulfate proteoglycan (KSPG) and these microglia are not uniformly distributed throughout the brain, with high concentrations in the hippocampus, brainstem and olfactory bulb while few were found in the cerebellum and cortex. The presence of these $KSPG^+$ microglia was independent of development though, since they were found in the same regions of both the neonatal and adult CNS. Moreover, microglia have also been shown to respond differently to the same stimuli[63,64]. Although consistent with the involvement of environmental cues in defining subclasses, these findings are also consistent with microglia being intrinsically distinct and independent of environmental influences.

Heterogenic microglial morphology

Amoeboid vs. ramified microglia

Perhaps the most recognized heterogenic aspect of microglia is their morphology. Two main classes have been identified - amoeboid-like, with few processes; and ramified, with numerous thin, highly-branched processes. Following initial colonization of the embryonic CNS, the majority of microglia present with an amoeboid-like morphology[65,66]. With CNS maturation, microglia transform their shape with brain region specificity. In the steady state CNS, amoeboid-like microglia are more abundant in perivascular white matter regions. In contrast, the extent of ramified microglia varies among regions with cerebellar microglia presenting with a less ramified morphology compared to microglia in the cortex[38,67,68]. Interestingly, Hanamsagar *et al.*[69] reported heterogeneity with regard to sex as microglia from male rodents presented with a greater and more complex process of arborization, and exhibited a greater change in process morphology following LPS perturbation as compared to their female counterparts. With age, and as the local environment changes, amoeboid-like microglia become more ramified while ramified microglia transition into amoeboid-like microglia, exhibiting greater phagocytic activity and releasing pro-inflammatory cytokines following pathologic insult[70,71]. Although the use of the amoeboid/ramified classification provides a simple approach for discussion, microglial morphologies present a spectrum of shapes and a two-class scheme is insufficient to accurately describe microglial morphologic differences.

Dark microglia

Recently, a new class of microglia was identified based on morphology. These microglia are "dark" based on their electron dense cytoplasm and are observed in non-homeostatic conditions[72]. Dark microglia exhibit signs of oxidative stress including condensed cytoplasm and nucleoplasm (consistent with their name), disrupted mitochondria and dilated endoplasmic reticulum, and are frequently observed extending processes toward synaptic clefts consistent with a role in pathologic synaptic pruning. Although their precise role remains to be fully determined, Bisht and colleagues[72] have proposed that these cells constitute a subclass of hyperactive microglia with dysregulated interactions with synapses. If correct, these cells may play a critical role in the progression of a plethora of neurodegenerative diseases with known synaptic loss[73] including Alzheimer's Disease[74,75] and multiple sclerosis[76,77].

Axon initial segment-associated microglia

Baalman *et al.*[78] have also presented evidence of a subset of microglia known as axon initial segment-associated (AXIS) microglia[78]. AXIS microglia, which comprise ~8% of cortical microglia, establish an intimate association with the neuronal cell body and the proximal axon, in contrast to "satellite" microglia that associate with the neuronal cell body and proximal dendrites instead[68]. AXIS microglia, which are initially observed at postnatal day 9 and persist through adulthood, contact both inhibitory and excitatory neurons but present with a significant preference for axon initial segments (AISs) of excitatory pyramidal neurons of layer V of the cortex[78]. The function of AXIS microglia is not known but they may provide trophic support for the neuron and the AIS.

Upon activation following a controlled cortical impact (CCI)-induced traumatic brain injury, the association between CNS microglia and the AIS is lost, consistent with the regulation of microglial

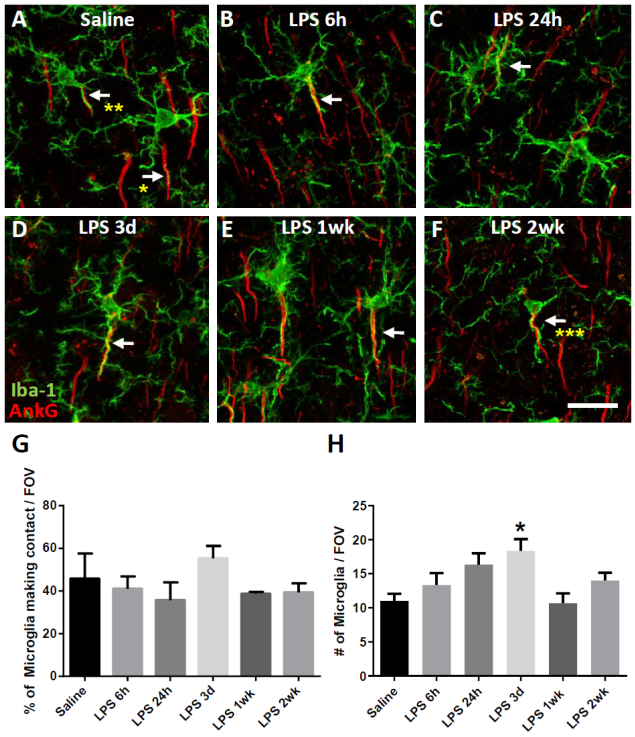


Figure 1. Frequency of microglial-AIS contact is not altered in LPS-induced neuroinflammation. Female c57black6 mice were given a single intraperitoneal injection of LPS (5 mg/kg) or vehicle (0.9% saline, 10 mL/kg). Confocal z-stacks spanning an optical thickness of 25 μm, using a pinhole of 1 Airy disc unit and Nyquist sampling (optical slice thickness, 0.48 μm), were collected from neocortical layer V for each of six sections (spanning 1.1 mm anterior to the bregma to 2.5 mm posterior to the bregma) per mouse, resulting in 12 images per animal (n = 4-6 animals per treatment group). Microglial-AIS contact was quantitatively analyzed at 6 h-2 weeks post-injection in a blind manner using Volocity™ 3D Image Analysis Software, allowing each confocal z-stack to be observed in three dimensions. The number of microglia, AISs, and contact points in each double immunolabeled z-stack was counted manually. Contact points along the six edges of the z-stacks were excluded from analysis. A-F: double immunolabeling of Iba-1 and AnkG revealed that microglia (Iba-1, green) contact AISs (AnkG, red) (white arrows) in the cortex of saline- and LPS-injected mice; G: the mean ± SEM of microglia making AIS contact per FOV in saline- and LPS-treated mice as a percent of saline controls. Quantitation of confocal z-stacks revealed that ~45% of microglia contact AISs in the cortex of saline-injected control mice. Contact was defined by co-localization of Iba-1 and AnkG and included process touching (A, yellow single asterisk), process alignment (A, yellow double asterisk), and process wrapping (F, yellow triple asterisk) as defined by 3D analysis. No change in the percent of microglia making contact was observed throughout the course of LPS-induced neuroinflammation; H: the mean ± SEM of the number of Microglia/FOV. A significant increase in the number of microglia was observed at 3 days post-LPS injection. Data were statistically compared by one-way ANOVA where mean differences were significant as assessed using Tukey's post hoc analysis. An asterisk indicates a significant difference (P < 0.05) from saline. Scale bar = 20 μm. LPS: lipopolysaccharide; FOV: field of view; AISs: axon initial segments

function and response by the local environment. Interestingly, our laboratory has also reported contact between microglia and the AIS[79,80]. Using three dimensional (3D) analysis encompassing multiple types of contact, which was defined by colocalization of ionized calcium binding adaptor molecule 1 (Iba-1) and AnkyrinG, termed (1) process touching, (2) process wrapping, or (3) process alignment [Figure 1], we found that ~45% of microglia in cortical layer V contact AISs. In contrast to the loss of contact observed following CCI injury, we observed a maintained [Figure 1], and even increased[79], association between the microglia and the AIS following inflammatory insults of LPS injection and EAE induction, respectively. The difference in AXIS microglial responses to insult is intriguing and requires further study to fully elucidate microglial response to pathology.

Herein, we have reviewed several subclasses of microglia that have been defined based on morphology; however, it is unclear if these subclasses are truly distinct, or if they are merely the consequence of artificial classifications based on techniques used for identification, and loose criteria for defining subtypes (reviewed[29]). If the latter is the case, then there is likely considerable overlap among these

subclasses. For example, we reported that under certain pathologic conditions, microglia exhibit both an increased association with, and disruption of the AIS[79]. It is possible that these microglia are no longer providing trophic support for the AIS, a suggested function of AXIS microglia by Baalman *et al.*[78] during homeostatic conditions, but are actively attacking the AIS, perhaps through the release of reactive ions[81]. If so, then could these microglia, which we characterized using immunocytochemical approaches, in fact, be "dark microglia", which are identified by electron microscopy? Studies to address this question are currently underway. In addition, are the AXIS microglia, as described by Baalman *et al.*[78], the same subclass as the microglia we have described making AIS contact? Based on work from Baalman *et al.*[78], it is likely that the AXIS microglia are supporting the neuron and the AIS; but based on our observations, the microglia may be mediating AIS disruption instead. Answering these questions is essential for accurately classifying microglia but more importantly, it would help to fully understand the role that these mercurial cells play under different conditions.

Heterogenic microglial transcriptomes

Surveying vs. reactive ("M1/M2") microglia

In an effort to more conclusively characterize microglia and to elucidate their functions, morphologic characterizations have been complemented by molecular classification studies. Initial attempts were based on presumed states of activity based on limited expression profiles. Simply, microglia were classified as either "activated" or "resting" but both terms are misleading. Microglia are never "resting" as we now recognize that they are constantly extending and retracting their processes to survey their surroundings[82,83]. As a result, the term "surveying", which more accurately represents the state of activity of microglia, even under homeostatic conditions, is now used in place of "resting". Similarly, a more appropriate term for "activated" is "reactive". "Activated" implies a lack of activity until microglia are stimulated. Microglia are constantly active however, and upon detection of changes in the environment, become "reactive".

Reactive microglia have been further divided into "M1" and "M2" states, referring to the classical (pro-inflammatory) and alternative (resolving/anti-inflammatory) phenotypes based on expression profiles. The "M1" and "M2" nomenclature is a naming scheme originally derived from the T cell literature and applied to macrophages based on their state of activation *in vitro* following exposure to either the T helper type 1 (Th1) cytokine interferon gamma (IFN-γ) for the "M1" phenotype, or the T helper type 2 (Th2) cytokine interleukin 4 (IL-4) for the "M2" phenotype[84]. Based on speculation of similar functions between macrophages and microglia, the "M1" and "M2" classification was then applied to microglia. The advantage of the "M1/M2" classification is that it provides a simplified nomenclature to distinguish between microglia in functionally distinct states. However, these distinct states are frequently identified by a small subset of surface markers, which limits resolution required for appreciating heterogeneity that is defined by the entire transcriptome. Moreover, this naming scheme is based on assumptions that cannot be confirmed under close scrutiny. At best, the "M1/M2" classification is inadequate for accurate description of the complex functions of these cells (reviewed by[85,86]). With the recognized inadequacies of the "M1/M2" nomenclature, it has been postulated that a continuum of activity states exists between the polarized extremes, resulting in studies presenting "M1" subtypes to better represent the heterogenic nature of these reactive cells[87,88]. Recent studies however, have shown that factors assigned to either the "M1" or "M2" phenotype are promiscuous yielding low fidelity to their assigned reactive state[88-90]. Thus, the complexity of microglia function is undermined by the overly simplistic and polarized naming scheme of "M1/M2".

Disease-associated microglia

Another subclass of reactive microglia that is specific to non-homeostatic conditions is known as Disease-Associated Microglia (DAM). First identified in Alzheimer's disease and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis models[91], DAM or microglia with DAM-like phenotypes have now been described in tauopathy models[92,93] multiple sclerosis[94] and aging[91,95]. DAM express typical microglia markers including Iba-1,

cystain 3 and hexosaminidase subunit beta. DAM can downregulate homeostatic genes including *P2ry12*, *Cx3Cr1*, and transmembrane protein 119 (Tmem119), and upregulate genes in either a triggering receptor expressed on myeloid cells 2 (Trem2) dependent (Axl, C-type lectin domain containing 7A, secreted phosphoprotein 1) or independent (Apolipoprotein E, TYRO protein tyrosine kinase-binding protein) manner[91]. Interestingly, another related class of microglia, which present with a similar expression profile as DAM[94], was recently described and named microglial degenerative phenotype (MGnD). It remains to be determined if MGnD and DAM represent the same subclass of cells.

Although unique to non-homeostatic conditions, the function of DAM is not known. It has been hypothesized that these cells respond to a CNS stress signaling system that is akin to the peripheral immune system's pathogen- and damage-associated stress signals (PAMPs and DAMPs)[96]. In this scenario, danger signals are recognized by microglia and trigger the transition of surveying microglia into DAM. This hypothesis is consistent with DAM accumulation in Alzheimer's Disease plaques and regions of demyelination[91,94,97,98]. If correct, DAM would be a key component of an intrinsic mechanism designed to combat disease processes and could provide a promising target for therapeutic manipulation against neurodegenerative disease by further enhancing the DAM response.

Heterogenic expression in inflammatory microglia

Following injury or disease, reactive microglia are rapidly recruited to sites of damage where they phagocytose debris and dying cells, consistent with the described functions of DAM. Likewise, AXIS microglia may also be recruited to sites of damage following injury or disease[80,81]. However, unlike DAM, the expression profile of AXIS microglia has not been characterized. Instead, AXIS microglia have been characterized based on their physical interactions with the axonal domain of the AIS. Both surveying and reactive microglia make contact with AISs and this is increased or decreased based on the disease context[78,79]. Whether these cells provide trophic support at the AIS or drive pathogenesis remains unclear though. Reactive microglia also exhibit extensive changes in expression of their inflammatory profile[99]. While some of these secreted factors may provide neurotrophic functions, pro-inflammatory factors can also exhibit deleterious effects[100,101]. For example, pro-inflammatory microglia ("M1") upregulate enzymes that produce reactive oxygen species (ROS)[100]. Activation of microglial nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase (NOX2) results in the extracellular production of ROS[102]. ROS then alter the function of calcium-permeable ion channels[103-105] and consequently, alters intracellular calcium levels[105,106], which have been implicated in AIS disruption[81,107-110].

In addition to regulating neuronal function through secreted factors, microglia also regulate neurons through physical contact[82,111-115]. In the developing and adult brain, microglia contact pre- and postsynaptic neuronal elements in an activity-dependent manner, and synapses that are contacted more frequently are subsequently removed[17,115,116]. In pathological conditions, microglia participate in synaptic stripping altering the neuronal excitatory/inhibitory balance[16]. Microglia also preferentially contact cell bodies and axons of highly active neurons to decrease neuronal activity and prevent excitotoxic cell death[113,114]. These studies underscore the importance of microglial contact in the regulation of neural signaling.

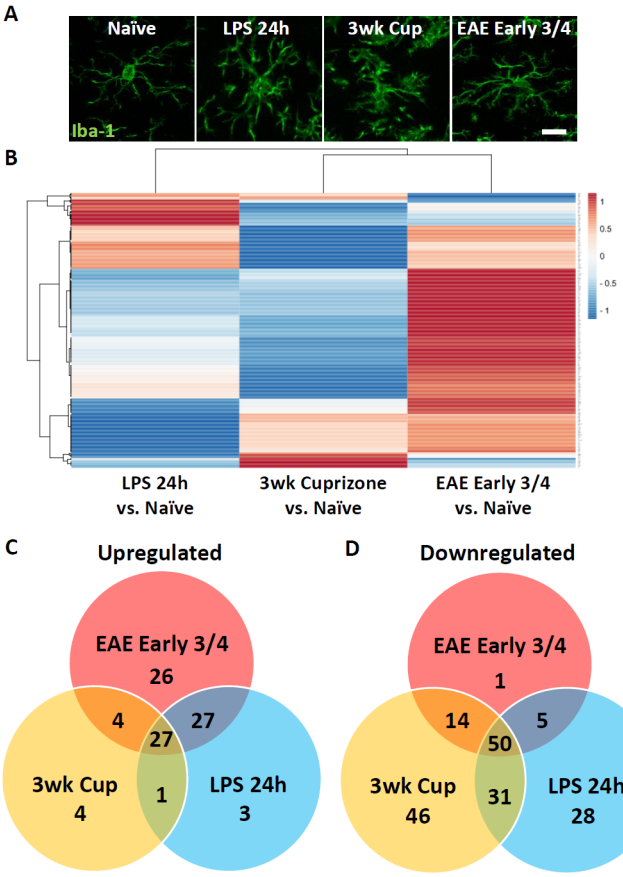
Recently, we analyzed CNS pathology in three models of neuroinflammation. In all three models, microglia presented with reactive phenotypes and these cells maintained, or even increased, contact with the AIS. However, in two of the models, the AISs were disrupted and in one, the AISs were preserved. Since AIS integrity temporally correlated with the presence of reactive microglia and contact was at least maintained in all three models, we proposed that differential AIS integrity was consequential to the heterogeneity among the reactive microglia from all three models.

For our studies, we exploited the immune-mediated inflammatory models of EAE[79], LPS[80] and the demyelinating model of cuprizone[79]. The EAE model is induced through subcutaneous injection of

myelin peptide (myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein peptide 35-55) accompanied by pertussis toxin and an adjuvant to ignite an inflammatory response[117-119], which transfers to the brain and results in chronic neuroinflammation persisting for months. While neuroinflammation is present after induction and throughout the EAE course, clinical symptoms do not begin to appear until ~15 days post-induction[79]. Mice exhibit a range of clinical symptoms from limp tail and loss of righting reflex (EAE 1 & 2, respectively) to single- or double- hind limb paralysis (EAE 3 & 4, respectively)[79]. AIS pathology begins to appear at an early timepoint after clinical onset (~18 days post-induction), but only in mice that display more severe clinical symptoms (EAE Early 3 & 4). Increased AIS pathology is observed with disease severity and progression (EAE Late 1 & 2, 3 & 4, ~25 days post-induction)[79]. In contrast, the LPS model is an acute neuroinflammatory model induced by a single peripheral injection of LPS[120,121]. This results in widespread peripheral inflammation that rapidly transfers to the brain (~3 h), but the neuroinflammation is resolved by 2 weeks post-injection. In the LPS model, AIS pathology was present from as early as 24 h post-injection and persisted until 1 week post-injection, coincident with the initiation and resolution of the acute neuroinflammatory environment[80]. In contrast to the immune-mediated neuroinflammatory models, the cuprizone model is a demyelinating model[79] where a copper-chelating toxin, cuprizone, is administered through chow resulting in oligodendrocyte cell death and, consequently, loss of myelin[119]. Demyelination is detectable 1-2 weeks after cuprizone treatment with peak demyelination occurring by 5-6 weeks of exposure[122-124]. The cuprizone model yields substantial cell death and demyelination resulting in microglial recruitment and neuroinflammation but no AIS pathology was observed[79].

We utilized these three models to further investigate microglial heterogeneity. AIS disruption only occurred in the LPS and EAE models, while microglial-AIS contact was abundant in all three models. Thus, while microglial reactivity and contact increased prior to and was coincident with disruption in EAE, contact alone did not disrupt AIS integrity[79,80]. Therefore, we analyzed the inflammatory expression profiles of cortical microglia across all three models to assess how microglial reactivity differentially influences neuronal integrity. Our goal was to assess microglia expression profiles early in the disease process to identify inflammatory changes that drive disease progression and are not consequential of disease progression. Thus, cortical microglia were isolated from mice induced with EAE, Cuprizone, or LPS at time points where neuronal pathology is detectable but had not peaked (EAE Early 3 & 4[79], 3 week Cuprizone[123], LPS 24 h)[80]. Briefly, total RNA, collected from cluster of differentiation (CD) 11b$^+$ cells isolated from the cortex of c57black6 female mice, was submitted for NanoString mRNA expression analysis. (Further details on model generation, cell isolation and NanoString analyses are provided in Supplementary Materials[79,80,120-123,125-133]). Cells were collected at time points in each model that corresponded to the early presence of neuronal/myelin pathology, but prior to peak disease course in an effort to understand the inflammatory profiles that drive pathogenesis[79,80].

Microglia with reactive morphologies predominate in the cortex of all three models[79,80] [Figure 2A], which is consistent with these cells presenting with a pro-inflammatory phenotype. However, based on NanoString expression analysis of 248 inflammation-associated genes, microglia from all three neuroinflammatory models displayed distinct regulation of inflammatory genes [Figure 2B], underscoring the heterogeneity of morphologically similar cells. Of 248 analyzed genes, 95 were significantly upregulated (1.3 fold-change or greater) [Figure 2C] and 175 were significantly downregulated (at least 1.3 fold-change) among the three neuroinflammatory models when compared to microglia from naïve mice [Figure 2D]. 27 of 95 (28.4%) upregulated genes [Figure 2C] and 50 of 175 (28.6%) downregulated genes [Figure 2D] were similarly changed across all three models but model-specific differences were observed for both categories. Numerous genes [Figure 2C] associated with a pro-inflammatory ("M1") phenotype (such as interferon regulatory factor 1, lymphotoxin beta, C-C chemokine receptor type 7, C-C motif chemokine ligand 7, C-C motif chemokine ligand 17, lymphotoxin Alpha, Il1a, signal transducer and activator of transcription 2, and tumor necrosis factor super family 14) were upregulated uniquely in EAE Early 3 & 4 and LPS 24 h



E

Group	# of Genes								
EAE total	86 ↑ 70 ↓	EAE only	26 ↑ 1 ↓	EAE and Cuprizone total overlap	33 ↑ 64 ↓	EAE and Cuprizone only overlap	4 ↑ 14 ↓	All overlap	27 ↑ 50 ↓
Cuprizone total	39 ↑ 141 ↓	Cuprizone only	4 ↑ 46 ↓	EAE and LPS total overlap	56 ↑ 55 ↓	EAE and LPS only overlap	27 ↑ 5 ↓		
LPS total	60 ↑ 114 ↓	LPS only	3 ↑ 28 ↓	Cuprizone and LPS total overlap	30 ↑ 81 ↓	Cuprizone and LPS only overlap	1 ↑ 31 ↓		

Figure 2. Microglia differentially express inflammation-associated genes in three neuroinflammatory models that demonstrate robust microglial reactivity. A: representative images of surveying microglia from the cortex of naïve mice and reactive microglia from LPS 24 h, 3 week Cuprizone, and EAE Early 3 & 4 mice; B-D: analysis of NanoString data of 248 differentially expressed inflammation-associated genes in CD11b$^+$ cells. Background subtraction was performed using the maximum value across samples of the negative controls and data normalization was performed using the geometric mean expression of six internal reference genes (*CLTC*, *GAPDH*, *Gusb*, *Hprt*, *Pgk1*, *Tubb5*). Reporter probe counts reflecting the numbers of mRNA transcript in the RNA sample were analyzed and quantified using the nSolverTM Analysis Software, and are represented by fold-change compared to naïve cells. Two mice were pooled per sample and three total samples per group were submitted for NanoString analysis. Microglia were isolated by CD11b Miltenyi beads from the cortex of mice induced with EAE, Cuprizone, or LPS at early time points where neuronal pathology was detectable but had not peaked (EAE Early 3 & 4[79], 3 week Cuprizone[123], LPS 24 h)[80]; B: heat map of differentially expressed genes; C: venn diagram representing the number of genes that are significantly upregulated, 1.3 fold-change or greater, in microglia from mice induced with EAE, Cuprizone, or LPS; D: venn diagram representing the number of genes that are significantly downregulated, 1.3 fold-change or greater, in microglia from mice induced with EAE, Cuprizone, or LPS; E: table showing the number of genes that were significantly upregulated (upward arrow) or downregulated (downward arrow) in each experimental group, and the number of altered genes shared among groups. Scale bar = 10 μm. $P < 0.05$. LPS: lipopolysaccharide; EAE: experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis

mice, consistent with the involvement of infective and inflammatory response pathways[127]. Gene ontology biological processes (GO-BP) function analysis[125,126] revealed that these genes were involved in functions related to regulation of the pro-inflammatory response as defined by the production of tumor necrosis factor alpha, nitric oxide biosynthetic process, and chemotaxis and chemokine signaling. In contrast,

microglia from 3 week cuprizone treated mice had the greatest number of downregulated inflammatory genes, and the top four uniquely upregulated genes associated with phagocytosis and oligodendrocyte generation [guanine nucleotide-binding protein G(s) subunit, platelet derived growth factor alpha, TYRO protein tyrosine kinase-binding protein (TyroBP), C-C chemokine receptor type]. Platelet derived growth factor alpha is a mitogen that is critical for oligodendrocyte generation[134]. TyroBP is a microglial transmembrane signaling polypeptide that forms phagocytosis active zones preparing microglia for phagocytic activity[135]. Increased expression of TyroBP in the 3 week treated cuprizone mice, a treatment time point that corresponds to early myelin loss, is consistent with findings from transcriptome microglial analysis from demyelinating regions in other animal studies[136] and human tissue[137]. Thus, while microglia from all three models exhibit pro-inflammatory ("M1"), reactive expression profiles, microglia maintained a unique "fingerprint" for each model and these differences correspond with the integrity of the AIS, suggesting that subtle changes in microglial phenotype may mediate either stability or disruption of closely apposed neurons. It is still possible though that microglial phenotypes do not directly influence AIS integrity. The direct association of microglia with the AIS suggests however, that this neuronal domain may be particularly vulnerable to changes in microglial reactivity. These data support the growing body of literature demonstrating that microglia exhibit a plethora of inflammatory expression profiles within an "M1" phenotype despite having similar morphologies.

Transcriptomic defined subsets of microglia

Recently, several single cell RNA sequencing studies have begun to more clearly define subsets of microglia in the developing,mature and healthy, and pathologic CNS[45,138,139]. Grabert and colleagues[45] conducted the first genome-wide comparison of RNA expression profiles from microglia isolated from specific brain regions and across the adult life span. Their findings confirmed the presence of core profiles that distinguish microglia from macrophages, underscoring their distinct origins. In addition, they observed three primary RNA profiles that were regionally specific, demonstrating regional heterogeneity within the microglial population. Although regional specific heterogeneity was observed, similarities persisted between the cortex and the striatum, and between the cerebellum and hippocampus. With age, some of these differences dissipated as the profile of hippocampal microglia appeared to converge with the profiles of microglia from the cortex and striatum, while the profile of cerebellar microglia continued to diverge from the other three regions to reveal region specific changes over time. Li *et al.*[138] reported that the majority of microglia in mature, healthy CNS express similar profiles but significantly greater diversity was seen in postnatal CNS. An interesting finding of Li *et al.*[138] was the similarity between a postnatal subset of microglia, termed Proliferative-region Associated Microglia (PAM), and DAM, which demonstrates that genes expressed in development are reactivated with aging and pathology. PAM appeared transiently in regions of developing white matter, consistent with a role in phagocytosing the large numbers of oligodendrocytes that die during myelination[140]. The authors further state that the complete chemokine and cytokine expression profile of PAM supports additional roles including interacting with both neural and immune cells.

Using fluorescent assisted cell sorting gated by CD11b, CD45 and Cx3Cr1, Hammond *et al.*[139] defined nine unique clusters of microglia in the whole brain based on expression profiles. The percent of cells in each cluster changed across age and condition however. Canonical microglia genes were expressed by most cells but only *C1qa*, *Fcrls* and *Trem2* were expressed in all clusters. Interestingly, P2ry12, Cx3Cr1 and Tmem119, which are frequently used as microglial identifiers[141-143], were either expressed in very low levels, or not at all in some clusters during development. Additionally, a novel subset of microglia, defined by the expression of secreted phosphoprotein 1, similar to PAM described by Li *et al.*[138], insulin like growth factor 1 and immunomodulators from the galectin family and several lysosomal proteins, was observed in the postnatal brain and associated with axonal tracts destined for myelination. Since these microglia express lysosomal markers, it was proposed that these cells clear the way for continued axon outgrowth, ultimately facilitating subsequent myelination. Other interesting findings include the lack of sex differences

based on cluster comparisons, which is in contrast to previous reports[48,50,54,128]. Although sex differences were not observed, significant differences were observed within the aged brain (postnatal day 540) as certain clusters, which were comprised of very few cells in the adult brain (postnatal day 100), revealed a significant increase in the number of cells in the aged brain. Perhaps most interesting is the finding that specific subpopulations of microglia were similarly represented in demyelinating lesions in the mouse and human brains, suggesting that microglial cluster expression profiles may allow identifying disease-specific-"fingerprints", and eventually aid in human disease treatment.

CONCLUSION

Although described 100 years ago, we are only just beginning to put together the various pieces of the microglial puzzle. We now recognize their involvement in establishing and maintaining a homeostatic CNS environment through trophic support and pruning of both neuronal and glial populations, modulating CNS wiring and circuitry, and facilitating axonal organization and outgrowth, myelin formation, and immunosurveillance in the healthy brain. Moreover, we are also beginning to appreciate their critical roles in disease, potentially both as CNS protectors by recognizing and removing infected, dying and dead cells, and also as CNS villains secondary to hyperactivation or dysregulation. We are also beginning to recognize that microglia may present as functionally distinct subclasses, which provides an explanation as to how a single lineage cell type can manifest into a plethora of diverse roles. However, it remains to be determined if distinct subclasses of microglia truly exist, or if microglia exist on a spectrum where they have the capacity to take on a multitude of identities depending on their environment. To address this issue, consistent approaches in cell isolation and analysis should be established and implemented. Additionally, as presented by other authors[86], the generation of a naming scheme that incorporates all aspects (age, brain region, morphology, gene expression, function, *etc.*) of microglia is essential for effectively moving the field forward. Although much has been learned over the past 20 years, our understanding of microglia remains limited. The immediate future though should be viewed with excitement as we continue to unravel the mysteries of these enigmatic cells.

DECLARATIONS

Authors' contributions

Made substantial contributions to experimental conception and design and manuscript preparation: Dupree JL

Made substantial contributions to experimental conception and design, in technical support, mRNA data analysis and interpretation and manuscript preparation: Benusa SD

Made substantial contributions to microglia-AIS contact analysis and interpretation: George NM

Availability of data and materials

NanoString raw data files are provided in Supplementary Material.

Financial support and sponsorship

This work was supported by grants from the National Institute of Health ["Microglial neurofascin: a novel mediator of microglial/axon initial segment interactions?" R21NS1016515; (JLD)] and the Veterans Affairs ["Attenuating microglial-dependent axonal pathology in EAE" (No. BX002565 (JLD)]. Microscopy was performed at the VCU Massey Cancer Center Microscopy Core Facility and supported, in part, with funding from NIH-NCI Cancer Center Support Grant P30 CA016059.

Conflicts of interest

All authors declared that there are no conflicts of interest.

Ethical approval and consent to participate

Not applicable.

Consent for publication

Not applicable.

Copyright

© The Author(s) 2020.

REFERENCES

1. Tremblay MÈ, Lecours C, Samson L, Sánchez-Zafra V, Sierra A. From the Cajal alumni Achúcarro and Río-Hortega to the rediscovery of never-resting microglia. Front Neuroanat 2015;9:45.
2. Marín-Teva JL, Dusart I, Colin C, Gervais A, van Rooijen N, et al. Microglia promote the death of developing Purkinje cells. Neuron 2004;41:535-47.
3. Swinnen N, Smolders S, Avila A, Notelaers K, Paesen R, et al. Complex invasion pattern of the cerebral cortex bymicroglial cells during development of the mouse embryo. Glia 2013;61:150-63.
4. Wakselman S, Béchade C, Roumier A, Bernard D, Triller A, et al. Developmental neuronal death in hippocampus requires the microglial CD11b integrin and DAP12 immunoreceptor. J Neurosci 2008;28:8138-43.
5. Antony JM, Paquin A, Nutt SL, Kaplan DR, Miller FD. Endogenous microglia regulate development of embryonic cortical precursor cells. J Neurosci Res 2011;89:286-98.
6. Cunningham CL, Martínez-Cerdeño V, Noctor SC. Microglia regulate the number of neural precursor cells in the developing cerebral cortex. J Neurosci 2013;33:4216-33.
7. Tong CK, Vidyadaran S. Role of microglia in embryonic neurogenesis. Exp Biol Med (Maywood) 2016;241:1669-75.
8. Shigemoto-Mogami Y, Hoshikawa K, Goldman JE, Sekino Y, Sato K. Microglia enhance neurogenesis and oligodendrogenesis in the early postnatal subventricular zone. J Neurosci 2014;34:2231-43.
9. Ueno M, Fujita Y, Tanaka T, Nakamura Y, Kikuta J, et al. Layer V cortical neurons require microglial support for survival during postnatal development. Nat Neurosci 2013;16:543-51.
10. Ribeiro Xavier AL, Kress BT, Goldman SA, Lacerda de Menezes JR, Nedergaard M. A distinct population of microglia supports adult neurogenesis in the subventricular zone. J Neurosci 2015;35:11848-61.
11. Oosterhof N, Chang IJ, Karimiani EG, Kuil LE, Jensen DM, et al. Homozygous mutations in CSF1R cause a pediatric-onset leukoencephalopathy and can result in congenital absence of microglia. Am J Hum Genet 2019;104:936-47.
12. Rogers JT, Morganti JM, Bachstetter AD, Hudson CE, Peters MM, et al. CX3CR1 deficiency leads to impairment of hippocampal cognitive function and synaptic plasticity. J Neurosci 2011;31:16241-50.
13. Vukovic J, Colditz MJ, Blackmore DG, Ruitenberg MJ, Bartlett PF. Microglia modulate hippocampal neural precursor activity in response to exercise and aging. J Neurosci 2012;32:6435-43.
14. Šišková Z, Tremblay MÈ. Microglia and synapse: interactions in health and neurodegeneration. Neural Plast 2013;2013:425845.
15. Chen Z, Trapp BD. Microglia and neuroprotection. J Neurochem 2016;136:10-7.
16. Kettenmann H, Kirchhoff F, Verkhratsky A. Microglia: new roles for the synaptic stripper. Neuron 2013;77:10-8.
17. Schafer DP, Lehrman EK, Kautzman AG, Koyama R, Mardinly AR, et al. Microglia sculpt postnatal neural circuits in an activity and complement-dependent manner. Neuron 2012;74:691-705.
18. Hong S, Dissing-Olesen L, Stevens B. New insights on the role of microglia in synaptic pruning in health and disease. Curr Opin Neurobiol 2016;36:128-34.
19. Ziebell JM, Adelson PD, Lifshitz J. Microglia: dismantling and rebuilding circuits after acute neurological injury. Metab Brain Dis 2015;30:393-400.
20. Ikegami A, Haruwaka K, Wake H. Microglia: lifelong modulator of neural circuits. Neuropathology 2019;39:173-80.
21. Paolicelli RC, Bolasco G, Pagani F, Maggi L, Scianni M, et al. Synaptic pruning by microglia is necessary for normal brain development. Science 2011;333:1456-8.
22. Vilalta A, Brown GC. Neurophagy, the phagocytosis of live neurons and synapses by glia, contributes to brain development and disease. FEBS J 2018;285:3566-75.
23. Stevens B, Allen NJ, Vazquez LE, Howell GR, Christopherson KS, et al. The classical complement cascade mediates CNS synapse elimination. Cell 2007;131:1164-78.
24. Parkhurst CN, Yang G, Ninan I, Savas JN, Yates JR, et al. Microglia promote learning-dependent synapse formation through brain-derived neurotrophic factor. Cell 2013;155:1596-609.
25. Jha MK, Jo M, Kim JH, Suk K. Microglia-astrocyte crosstalk: an intimate molecular conversation. Neuroscientist 2019;25:227-40.
26. Shinozaki Y, Shibata K, Yoshida K, Shigetomi E, Gachet C, et al. Transformation of astrocytes to a neuroprotective phenotype by microglia via P2Y1 receptor downregulation. Cell Rep 2017;19:1151-64.
27. Singh-Bains MK, Linke V, Austria MDR, Tan AYS, Scotter EL, et al. Altered microglia and neurovasculature in the Alzheimer's disease cerebellum. Neurobiol Dis 2019;132:104589.
28. Zhao X, Eyo UB, Murugan M, Wu LJ. Microglial interactions with the neurovascular system in physiology and pathology. Dev Neurobiol 2018;78:604-17.

29. Stratoulias V, Venero JL, Tremblay M, Joseph B. Microglial subtypes: diversity within the microglial community. EMBO J 2019;38:e101997.
30. Ginhoux F, Greter M, Leboeuf M, Nandi S, See P, et al. Fate mapping analysis reveals that adult microglia derive from primitive macrophages. Science 2010;330:841-5.
31. McCarthy MM. Location, location, location: microglia are where they live. Neuron 2017;95:233-5.
32. Hickman SE, Kingery ND, Ohsumi TK, Borowsky ML, Wang LC, et al. The microglial sensome revealed by direct RNA sequencing. Nat Neurosci 2013;16:1896-905.
33. Butovsky O, Jedrychowski MP, Moore CS, Cialic R, Lanser AJ, et al. Identification of a unique TGF-β-dependent molecular and functional signature in microglia. Nat Neurosci 2014;17:131-43.
34. Gosselin D, Link VM, Romanoski CE, Fonseca GJ, Eichenfield DZ, et al. Environment drives selection and function of enhancers controlling tissue-specific macrophage identities. Cell 2014;159:1327-40.
35. Grabert K, Michoel T, Karavolos MH, Clohisey S, Baillie JK, et al. Microglial brain region-dependent diversity and selective regional sensitivities to ageing. Nat Neurosci 2016;19:504-16.
36. Sokolowski JD, Chabanon-Hicks CN, Han CZ, Heffron DS, Mandell JW. Fractalkine is a "find-me" signal released by neurons undergoing ethanol-induced apoptosis. Front Cell Neurosci 2014;8:360.
37. Fricker M, Oliva-Martín MJ, Brown GC. Primary phagocytosis of viable neurons by microglia activated with LPS or Aβ is dependent on calreticulin/LRP phagocytic signalling. J Neuroinflammation 2012;9:196.
38. Lawson LJ, Perry VH, Dri P, Gordon S. Heterogeneity in the distribution and morphology of microglia in the normal adult mouse brain. Neuroscience 1990;39:151-70.
39. De Biase LM, Schuebel KE, Fusfeld ZH, Jair K, Hawes IA, et al. Local cues establish and maintain region-specific phenotypes of basal ganglia microglia. Neuron 2017;95:341-56.e6.
40. Yanguas-Casás N, Crespo-Castrillo A, de Ceballos ML, Chowen JA, Azcoitia I, et al. Sex differences in the phagocytic and migratory activity of microglia and their impairment by palmitic acid. Glia 2018;66:522-37.
41. Tay TL, Savage JC, Hui CW, Bisht K, Tremblay MÈ. Microglia across the lifespan: from origin to function in brain development, plasticity and cognition. J Physiol (Lond) 2017;595:1929-45.
42. Rigato C, Swinnen N, Buckinx R, Couillin I, Mangin JM, et al. Microglia proliferation is controlled by P2X7 receptors in a Pannexin-1-independent manner during early embryonic spinal cord invasion. J Neurosci 2012;32:11559-73.
43. Greter M, Lelios I, Pelczar P, Hoeffel G, Price J, et al. Stroma-derived interleukin-34 controls the development and maintenance of langerhans cells and the maintenance of microglia. Immunity 2012;37:1050-60.
44. Wang Y, Szretter KJ, Vermi W, Gilfillan S, Rossini C, et al. IL-34 is a tissue-restricted ligand of CSF1R required for the development of Langerhans cells and microglia. Nat Immunol 2012;13:753-60.
45. Grabert K, Michoel T, Karavolos MH, Clohisey S, Baillie JK, et al. Microglial brain region-dependent diversity and selective regional sensitivities to aging. Nat Neurosci 2016;19:504-16.
46. Schwarz JM, Sholar PW, Bilbo SD. Sex differences in microglial colonization of the developing rat brain. J Neurochem 2012;120:948-63.
47. Posillico CK, Terasaki LS, Bilbo SD, Schwarz JM. Examination of sex and minocycline treatment on acute morphine-induced analgesia and inflammatory gene expression along the pain pathway in Sprague-Dawley rats. Biol Sex Differ 2015;6:33.
48. Villa A, Gelosa P, Castiglioni L, Cimino M, Rizzi N, et al. Sex-specific features of microglia from adult mice. Cell Rep 2018;23:3501-11.
49. Nelson LH, Warden S, Lenz KM. Sex differences in microglial phagocytosis in the neonatal hippocampus. Brain Behav Immun 2017;64:11-22.
50. Guneykaya D, Ivanov A, Hernandez DP, Haage V, Wojtas B, et al. Transcriptional and translational differences of microglia from male and female brains. Cell Rep 2018;24:2773-83.e6.
51. Lenz KM, Nugent BM, Haliyur R, McCarthy MM. Microglia are essential to masculinization of brain and behavior. J Neurosci 2013;33:2761-72.
52. Zhou YQ, Liu DQ, Chen SP, Sun J, Wang XM, et al. Minocycline as a promising therapeutic strategy for chronic pain. Pharmacol Res 2018;134:305-10.
53. Naderi Y, Panahi Y, Barreto GE, Sahebkar A. Neuroprotective effects of minocycline on focal cerebral ischemia injury: a systematic review. Neural Regen Res 2020;15:773-82.
54. Crain JM, Nikodemova M, Watters JJ. Microglia express distinct M1 and M2 phenotypic markers in the postnatal and adult central nervous system in male and female mice. J Neurosci Res 2013;91:1143-51.
55. Mangold CA, Wronowski B, Du M, Masser DR, Hadad N, et al. Sexually divergent induction of microglial-associated neuroinflammation with hippocampal aging. J Neuroinflammation 2017;14:141.
56. Puy L, MacLusky NJ, Becker L, Karsan N, Trachtenberg J, et al. Immunocytochemical detection of androgen receptor in human temporal cortex characterization and application of polyclonal androgen receptor antibodies in frozen and paraffin-embedded tissues. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 1995;55:197-209.
57. Mor G, Nilsen J, Horvath T, Bechmann I, Brown S, et al. Estrogen and microglia: a regulatory system that affects the brain. J Neurobiol 1999;40:484-96.
58. Crain JM, Watters JJ. Estrogen and P2 purinergic receptor systems in microglia: therapeutic targets for neuroprotection. Open Drug Discov J 2010;2:148-67.
59. Vegeto E, Bonincontro C, Pollio G, Sala A, Viappiani S, et al. Estrogen prevents the lipopolysaccharide-induced inflammatory response in microglia. J Neurosci 2001;21:1809-18.
60. Sierra A, Gottfried-Blackmore A, Milner TA, McEwen BS, Bulloch K. Steroid hormone receptor expression and function in microglia. Glia 2008;56:659-74.
61. Bollinger JL, Salinas I, Fender E, Sengelaub DR, Wellman CL. Gonadal hormones differentially regulate sex-specific stress effects on

glia in the medial prefrontal cortex. J Neuroendocrinol 2019;31:e12762.
62. Bertolotto A, Caterson B, Canavese G, Migheli A, Schiffer D. Monoclonal antibodies to keratan sulfate immunolocalize ramified microglia in paraffin and cryostat sections of rat brain. J Histochem Cytochem 1993;41:481-7.
63. Scheffel J, Regen T, Van Rossum D, Seifert S, Ribes S, et al. Toll-like receptor activation reveals developmental reorganization and unmasks responder subsets of microglia. Glia 2012;60:1930-43.
64. Kiyofuji K, Kurauchi Y, Hisatsune A, Seki T, Mishima S, et al. A natural compound macelignan protects midbrain dopaminergic neurons from inflammatory degeneration via microglial arginase-1 expression. Eur J Pharmacol 2015;760:129-35.
65. Silvin A, Ginhoux F. Microglia heterogeneity along a spatio-temporal axis: more questions than answers. Glia 2018;66:2045-57.
66. Marín-Teva JL, Cuadros MA, Martín-Oliva D, Navascués J. Microglia and neuronal cell death. Neuron Glia Biol 2011;7:25-40.
67. Imamura K, Ito M, Suzumura A, Asai J, Takahashi A. Generation and characterization of monoclonal antibodies against rat microglia and ontogenic distribution of positive cells. Lab Invest 1990;63:853-61.
68. Stowell RD, Wong EL, Batchelor HN, Mendes MS, Lamantia CE, et al. Cerebellar microglia are dynamically unique and survey Purkinje neurons in vivo. Dev Neurobiol 2018;78:627-44.
69. Hanamsagar R, Alter MD, Block CS, Sullivan H, Bolton JL, et al. Generation of a microglial developmental index in mice and in humans reveals a sex difference in maturation and immune reactivity. Glia 2017;65:1504-20.
70. Lynch MA. The multifaceted profile of activated microglia. Mol Neurobiol 2009;40:139-56.
71. Diestel A, Troeller S, Billecke N, Sauer IM, Berger F, et al. Mechanisms of hypothermia-induced cell protection mediated by microglial cells in vitro. Eur J Neurosci 2010;31:779-87.
72. Bisht K, Sharma KP, Lecours C, Sánchez MG, El Hajj H, et al. Dark microglia: a new phenotype predominantly associated with pathological states. Glia 2016;64:826-39.
73. Cardozo PL, de Lima IBQ, Maciel EMA, Silva NC, Dobransky T, et al. Synaptic elimination in neurological disorders. Curr Neuropharmacol 2019;17:1071-95.
74. Rajendran L, Paolicelli RC. Microglia-mediated synapse loss in Alzheimer's disease. J Neurosci 2018;38:2911-9.
75. Jackson J, Jambrina E, Li J, Marston H, Menzies F, et al. Targeting the synapse in Alzheimer's disease. Front Neurosci 2019;13:735.
76. Stadelmann C, Albert M, Wegner C, Brück W. Cortical pathology in multiple sclerosis. Curr Opin Neurol 2008;21:229-34.
77. Campbell G, Licht-Mayer S, Mahad D. Targeting mitochondria to protect axons in progressive MS. Neurosci Lett 2019;710:134258.
78. Baalman K, Marin MA, Ho TS, Godoy M, Cherian L, et al. Axon initial segment-associated microglia. J Neurosci 2015;35:2283-92.
79. Clark KC, Josephson A, Benusa SD, Hartley RK, Baer M, et al. Compromised axon initial segment integrity in EAE is preceded by microglial reactivity and contact. Glia 2016;64:1190-209.
80. Benusa SD, George NM, Sword BA, DeVries GH, Dupree JL. Acute neuroinflammation induces AIS structural plasticity in a NOX2-dependent manner. J Neuroinflammation 2017;14:116.
81. Clark K, Sword BA, Dupree JL. Oxidative stress induces disruption of the axon initial segment. ASN Neuro 2017;9:1759091417745426.
82. Nimmerjahn A, Kirchhoff F, Helmchen F. Resting microglial cells are highly dynamic surveillants of brain parenchyma in vivo. Science 2005;308:1314-8.
83. Sierra A, Beccari S, Diaz-Aparicio I, Encinas JM, Comeau S, et al. Surveillance, phagocytosis, and inflammation: how never-resting microglia influence adult hippocampal neurogenesis. Neural Plast 2014;2014:610343.
84. Gordon S. Alternative activation of macrophages. Nat Rev Immunol 2003;3:23-35.
85. Martinez FO, Gordon S. The M1 and M2 paradigm of macrophage activation: time for reassessment. F1000Prime Rep 2014;6:13.
86. Ransohoff RM. A polarizing question: do M1 and M2 microglia exist? Nat Neurosci 2016;19:987-91.
87. Zhou T, Huang Z, Sun X, Zhu X, Zhou L, et al. Microglia polarization with M1/M2 phenotype changes in rd1 mouse model of retinal degeneration. Front Neuroanat 2017;11:77.
88. Peng H, Geil Nickell CR, Chen KY, McClain JA, Nixon K. Increased expression of M1 and M2 phenotypic markers in isolated microglia after four-day binge alcohol exposure in male rats. Alcohol 2017;62:29-40.
89. Chiu IM, Morimoto ET, Goodarzi H, Liao JT, O'Keeffe S, et al. A neurodegeneration-specific gene-expression signature of acutely isolated microglia from an amyotrophic lateral sclerosis mouse model. Cell Rep 2013;4:385-401.
90. Rosi S. A polarizing view on posttraumatic brain injury inflammatory response. Brain Circ 2016;2:126-8.
91. Keren-Shaul H, Spinrad A, Weiner A, Matcovitch-Natan O, Dvir-Szternfeld R, et al. A unique microglia type associated with restricting development of Alzheimer's disease. Cell 2017;169:1276-90.e17.
92. Friedman BA, Srinivasan K, Ayalon G, Meilandt WJ, Lin H, et al. Diverse brain myeloid expression profiles reveal distinct microglial activation states and aspects of Alzheimer's disease not evident in mouse models. Cell Rep 2018;22:832-47.
93. Leyns CEG, Ulrich JD, Finn MB, Stewart FR, Koscal LJ, et al. TREM2 deficiency attenuates neuroinflammation and protects against neurodegeneration in a mouse model of tauopathy. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2017;114:11524-9.
94. Krasemann S, Madore C, Cialic R, Baufeld C, Calcagno N, et al. The TREM2-APOE pathway drives the transcriptional phenotype of dysfunctional microglia in neurodegenerative diseases. Immunity 2017;47:566-81.e9.
95. Mrdjen D, Pavlovic A, Hartmann FJ, Schreiner B, Utz SG, et al. High-dimensional single-cell mapping of central nervous system immune cells reveals distinct myeloid subsets in health, aging, and disease. Immunity 2018;48:599.
96. Deczkowska A, Amit I, Schwartz M. Microglial immune checkpoint mechanisms. Nat Neurosci 2018;21:779-86.
97. Poliani PL, Wang Y, Fontana E, Robinette ML, Yamanishi Y, et al. TREM2 sustains microglial expansion during aging and response to demyelination. J Clin Invest 2015;125:2161-70.
98. Wang Y, Cella M, Mallinson K, Ulrich JD, Young KL, et al. TREM2 lipid sensing sustains the microglial response in an Alzheimer's disease model. Cell 2015;160:1061-71.
99. Crotti A, Ransohoff RM. Microglial physiology and pathophysiology: insights from genome-wide transcriptional profiling. Immunity 2016;44:505-15.

100. Chen SH, Oyarzabal EA, Hong JS. Critical role of the Mac1/NOX2 pathway in mediating reactive microgliosis-generated chronic neuroinflammation and progressive neurodegeneration. Curr Opin Pharmacol 2016;26:54-60.
101. Ransohoff RM, Khoury JE. Microglia in health and disease. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol 2016;8:a020560.
102. Kumar A, Barrett JP, Alvarez-Croda DM, Stoica BA, Faden AI, et al. NOX2 drives M1-like microglial/macrophage activation and neurodegeneration following experimental traumatic brain injury. Brain Behav Immun 2016;58:291-309.
103. Hool LC. Evidence for the regulation of L-type Ca2+ channels in the heart by reactive oxygen species: mechanism for mediating pathology. Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol 2008;35:229-34.
104. Hool LC, Arthur PG. Decreasing cellular hydrogen peroxide with catalase mimics the effects of hypoxia on the sensitivity of the L-type Ca2+ channel to β-adrenergic receptor stimulation in cardiac myocytes. Circ Res 2002;91:601-9.
105. Hudasek K, Brown ST, Fearon IM. H2O2 regulates recombinant Ca2+ channel α1C subunits but does not mediate their sensitivity to acute hypoxia. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 2004;318:135-41.
106. Mossakowski AA, Pohlan J, Bremer D, Lindquist R, Millward JM, et al. Tracking CNS and systemic sources of oxidative stress during the course of chronic neuroinflammation. Acta Neuropathol 2015;130:799-814.
107. Benned-Jensen T, Christensen RK, Denti F, Perrier JF, Rasmussen HB, et al. Live imaging of Kv7.2/7.3 cell surface dynamics at the axon initial segment: high steady-state stability and calpain-dependent excitotoxic downregulation revealed. J Neurosci 2016;36:2261-6.
108. Del Puerto A, Fronzaroli-Molinieres L, Perez-Alvarez MJ, Giraud P, Carlier E, et al. ATP-P2X7 receptor modulates axon initial segment composition and function in physiological conditions and brain injury. Cereb Cortex 2015;25:2282-94.
109. Evans MD, Sammons RP, Lebron S, Dumitrescu AS, Watkins TB, et al. Calcineurin signaling mediates activity-dependent relocation of the axon initial segment. J Neurosci 2013;33:6950-63.
110. Schafer DP, Jha S, Liu F, Akella T, McCullough LD, et al. Disruption of the axon initial segment cytoskeleton is a new mechanism for neuronal injury. J Neurosci 2009;29:13242-54.
111. von Bernhardi R, Heredia F, Salgado N, Muñoz P. Microglia function in the normal brain. Adv Exp Med Biol 2016;949:67-92.
112. Bilimoria PM, Stevens B. Microglia function during brain development: new insights from animal models. Brain Res 2015;1617:7-17.
113. Kato G, Inada H, Wake H, Akiyoshi R, Miyamoto A, et al. Microglial contact prevents excess depolarization and rescues neurons from excitotoxicity. eNeuro 2016;3:ENEURO.0004-16.2016.
114. Li Y, Du XF, Liu CS, Wen ZL, Du JL. Reciprocal regulation between resting microglial dynamics and neuronal activity in vivo. Dev Cell 2012;23:1189-202.
115. Wake H, Moorhouse AJ, Jinno S, Kohsaka S, Nabekura J. Resting microglia directly monitor the functional state of synapses in vivo and determine the fate of ischemic terminals. J Neurosci 2009;29:3974-80.
116. Tremblay MÈ, Lowery RL, Majewska AK. Microglial interactions with synapses are modulated by visual experience. PLoS Biol 2010;8:e1000527.
117. Beeton C, Garcia A, Chandy KG. Induction and clinical scoring of chronic-relapsing experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Vis Exp 2007:224.
118. Kipp M, Nyamoya S, Hochstrasser T, Amor S. Multiple sclerosis animal models: a clinical and histopathological perspective. Brain Pathol 2017;27:123-37.
119. Ransohoff RM. Animal models of multiple sclerosis: the good, the bad and the bottom line. Nat Neurosci 2012;15:1074-7.
120. Taetzsch T, Levesque S, McGraw C, Brookins S, Luqa R, et al. Redox regulation of NF-κB p50 and M1 polarization in microglia. Glia 2015;63:423-40.
121. Qin L, Wu X, Block ML, Liu Y, Breese GR, et al. Systemic LPS causes chronic neuroinflammation and progressive neurodegeneration. Glia 2007;55:453-62.
122. Denic A, Johnson AJ, Bieber AJ, Warrington AE, Rodriguez M, et al. The relevance of animal models in multiple sclerosis research. Pathophysiology 2011;18:21-9.
123. Dupree JL, Mason JL, Marcus JR, Stull M, Levinson R, et al. Oligodendrocytes assist in the maintenance of sodium channel clusters independent of the myelin sheath. Neuron Glia Biol 2004;1:179-92.
124. Torre-Fuentes L, Moreno-Jiménez L, Pytel V, Matías-Guiu JA, Gómez-Pinedo U, et al. Experimental models of demyelination and remyelination. Neurologia 2020;35:32-9.
125. Huang DW, Sherman BT, Lempicki RA. Bioinformatics enrichment tools: paths toward the comprehensive functional analysis of large gene lists. Nucleic Acids Res 2009;37:1-13.
126. Das A, Chai JC, Kim SH, Lee YS, Park KS, et al. Transcriptome sequencing of microglial cells stimulated with TLR3 and TLR4 ligands. BMC Genomics 2015;16:517.
127. Huang DW, Sherman BT, Lempicki RA. Systematic and integrative analysis of large gene lists using DAVID bioinformatics resources. Nat Protoc 2009;4:44-57.
128. Hanamsagar R, Alter MD, Block CS, Sullivan H, Bolton JL, et al. Generation of a microglial developmental index in mice and in humans reveals a sex difference in maturation and immune reactivity. Glia 2017;65:1504-20.
129. Hiremath MM, Saito Y, Knapp GW, Ting JP, Suzuki K, et al. Microglial/macrophage accumulation during cuprizone-induced demyelination in C57BL/6 mice. J Neuroimmunol 1998;92:38-49.
130. Fjær S, Bø L, Lundervold A, Myhr KM, Pavlin T, et al. Deep gray matter demyelination detected by magnetization transfer ratio in the cuprizone model. PLoS One 2013;8:e84162.
131. Dupree JL, Girault JA, Popko B. Axo-glial interactions regulate the localization of axonal paranodal proteins. J Cell Biol 1999;147:1145-52.
132. Pomicter AD, Shroff SM, Fuss B, Sato-Bigbee C, Brophy PJ, et al. Novel forms of neurofascin 155 in the central nervous system: alterations in paranodal disruption models and multiple sclerosis. Brain 2010;133:389-405.
133. Geiss GK, Bumgarner RE, Birditt B, Dahl T, Dowidar N, et al. Direct multiplexed measurement of gene expression with color-coded

probe pairs. Nat Biotechnol 2008;26:317-25.
134. Fruttiger M, Karlsson L, Hall AC, Abramsson A, Calver AR, et al. Defective oligodendrocyte development and severe hypomyelination in PDGF-A knockout mice. Development 1999;126:457-67.
135. Haure-Mirande JV, Audrain M, Fanutza T, Kim SH, Klein WL, et al. Deficiency of TYROBP, an adapter protein for TREM2 and CR3 receptors, is neuroprotective in a mouse model of early Alzheimer's pathology. Acta Neuropathol 2017;134:769-88.
136. Yamasaki R. Distinct roles of microglia and monocytes in central nervous system inflammation and degeneration. Clin Exp Neuroimmunol 2014;5:41-8.
137. Zrzavy T, Hametner S, Wimmer I, Butovsky O, Weiner HL, et al. Loss of 'homeostatic' microglia and patterns of their activation in active multiple sclerosis. Brain 2017;140:1900-13.
138. Li Q, Cheng Z, Zhou L, Darmanis S, Neff NF, et al. Developmental heterogeneity of microglia and brain myeloid cells revealed by deep single-cell rna sequencing. Neuron 2019;101:207-23.e10.
139. Hammond TR, Dufort C, Dissing-Olesen L, Giera S, Young A, et al. Single-cell RNA sequencing of microglia throughout the mouse lifespan and in the injured brain reveals complex cell-state changes. Immunity 2019;50:253-71.e6.
140. Barres BA, Hart IK, Coles HS, Burne JF, Voyvodic JT, et al. Cell death and control of cell survival in the oligodendrocyte lineage. Cell 1992;70:31-46.
141. Bennett ML, Bennett FC, Liddelow SA, Ajami B, Zamanian JL, et al. New tools for studying microglia in the mouse and human CNS. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2016;113:E1738-46.
142. Park MJ, Park HS, You MJ, Yoo J, Kim SH, et al. Dexamethasone induces a specific form of ramified dysfunctional microglia. Mol Neurobiol 2019;56:1421-36.
143. van Wageningen TA, Vlaar E, Kooij G, Jongenelen CAM, Geurts JJG, et al. Regulation of microglial TMEM119 and P2RY12 immunoreactivity in multiple sclerosis white and grey matter lesions is dependent on their inflammatory environment. Acta Neuropathol Commun 2019;7:206.

Yoshimura *et al. Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:264-76
DOI: 10.20517/2347-8659.2020.22

Neuroimmunology and Neuroinflammation

Review

Open Access

Resolution of inflammation and repair after ischemic brain injury

Akihiko Yoshimura[1], Minako Ito[1,2]

[1]Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Keio University School of Medicine, Tokyo 160-8582, Japan.
[2]Division of Allergy and Immunology, Medical Institute of Bioregulation Kyushu University, 3-1-1 Maidashi, Higashi-ku, Fukuoka 812-8582, Japan.

Correspondence to: Dr. Minako Ito and Dr. Akihiko Yoshimura, Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Keio University School of Medicine, 35 Shinanomachi, Shinjyuku-ku, Tokyo 160-8582, Japan. E-mail: minakoito@bioreg.kyushu-u.ac.jp; yoshimura@keio.jp

How to cite this article: Yoshimura A, Ito M. Resolution of inflammation and repair after ischemic brain injury. *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:264-76. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.22

Received: 9 Mar 2020 **First Decision**: 27 Apr 2020 **Revised**: 5 May 2020 **Accepted**: 29 May 2020 **Available Online**: 30 Jul 2020

Academic Editor: Christiane Charriaut-Marlangue **Copy Editor**: Cai-Hong Wang **Production Editor**: Jing Yu

Abstract

After ischemic stroke, proinflammatory molecules known as danger-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) originating from damaged brain cells recruit and activate immune cells (neutrophils, macrophages, lymphocytes) further eliciting innate and adaptive immunity. During the acute phase from day 1 to day 3 of the stroke onset, macrophages play a major role in the progression of inflammation, promoting the destruction of brain tissue. During the recovery phase, from day 3~4 to day 7 after stroke onset, infiltrating macrophages switch to repairing macrophages, which clear the DAMPs and promote tissue repair by producing neurotrophic factors. Adaptive immunity during the late or chronic phase (> day 7) of stroke has not been well investigated. Recent studies have also indicated that antigen-specific T cells, especially regulatory T cells (Tregs), play major roles in neural repair. This review focuses mainly on the resolution of inflammation and tissue repair by macrophages and Tregs.

Keywords: DAMPs, tissue repair, macrophages regulatory T cells, amphiregulin, IL-33

INTRODUCTION

Ischemic cerebral infarction accounts for 70% to 80% of all strokes, which is the leading cause of severe neuropathy, disability and bedriddenness[1]. Ischemic stroke causes the death of nerve cells as well as destruction of neuronal circuits, which leads to movement disorders, higher brain dysfunction, and sensory

© The Author(s) 2020. **Open Access** This article is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, for any purpose, even commercially, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license, and indicate if changes were made.

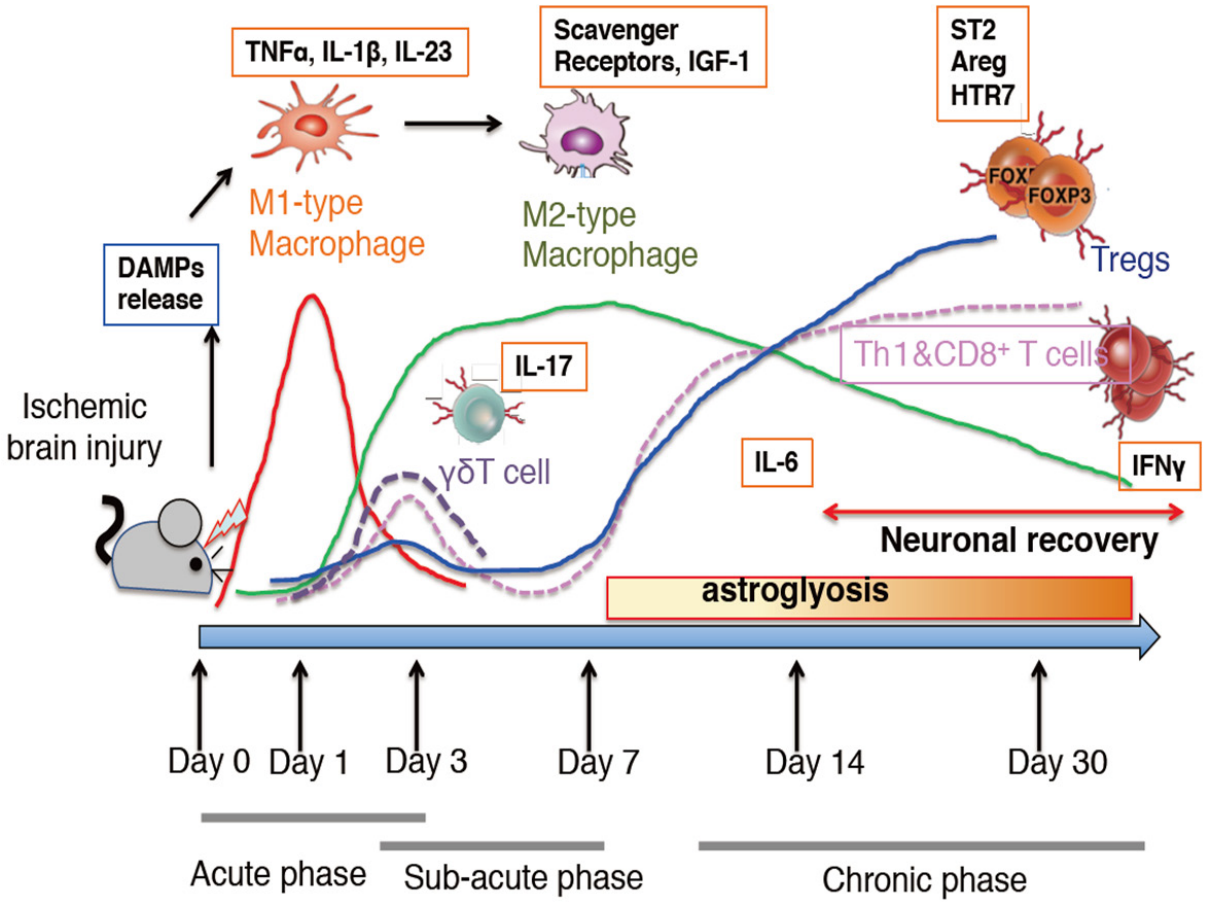


Figure 1. Schematic viewing a time-dependent recruitment of various inflammatory cells into the brain following cerebral ischemia in mice. In this review, we refer to day 1-3 after stroke onset as the acute phase, for days 3-7 being subacute phase, and period after 2 weeks being chronic phase. This figure illustrates the conceptual changes in the population of immune cells, thus the numbers of each immune cell may not necessarily be accurate. Red line; M1 type inflammatory macrophages, green line; M2 type macrophages, gray broken line; γδT cells, pink broken line; Th1 cells and $CD8^+$ T cells, blue line; regulatory T cells (Tregs). IL: interleukin; IGF: insulin growth factor

disturbance. Ischemic damages of the brain tissue further induce cerebral edema and inflammation, which exacerbates the functional prognosis and symptoms of stroke. Although administration of tissue-plasminogen activator reduces ischemic neural damages, this treatment should be instituted within 4.5 h of stroke onset[2]. After this acute stage, no therapeutic drugs should be administered during the late stage of stroke, and following this short period, rehabilitation is the only modality of treatment for functional recovery at present.

Sterile inflammation initially leads to tissue damages[3]. Likewise, in ischemic stroke, brain inflammation causes neural cell death and has been considered to be an attractive target for reducing brain damages not only in experimental rodent models but also in human patients[4-6]. As inflammation occurs within a few days after stroke onset, innate immunity, in which microglia, macrophages, neutrophils, and γδT cells play major role, has been thought to account for neuroinflammation after stroke, where such inflammation disappears after 1 week of stroke onset [Figure 1]. To date, only a small number of studies have investigated the adaptive immunity in stroke, which usually occurs over a week after the onset of the disease or infection[7,8]. However, our group and others have discovered an accumulation of lymphocytes including regulatory T cells (Tregs) in the brain at the chronic phase (more than 2 weeks) after stroke onset. This process has been shown to be involved in neural repair rather than progression of the disease[9-13].

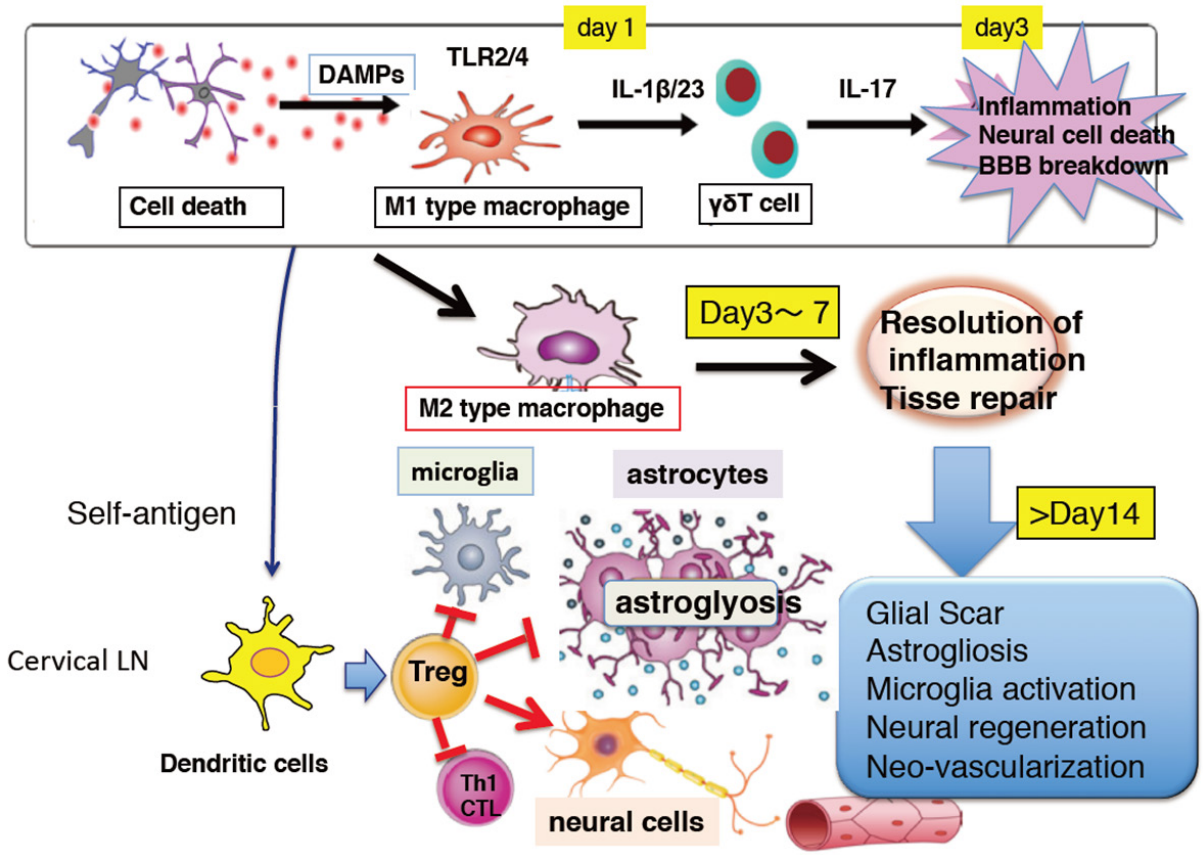


Figure 2. Schematic view of the role of immune cell types in cytokine production, neuroinflammation, and tissue repair. In the early stage of around 24 h, macrophages infiltrate the injured brain and are activated through the TLR2/4 stimulation by molecules known as danger-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) from necrotic cells. Thereafter, infiltrated macrophages produce inflammatory cytokines and mediators which increase probability of ischemic encephalopathy and blood brain barrier (BBB) destruction. At this stage, macrophages become M1-type inflammatory macrophages. Further on, IL-23 and IL-1β from inflammatory macrophages stimulate IL-17 production from infiltrated γδT cells. After day 3, macrophages are converted into M2-type repairing macrophages which are involved in clearing DAMPs, resolving inflammation, and tissue repair by producing neurotrophic factors such as IGF-1. During the chronic phase, a massive T-cell infiltration occurs. Brain Tregs are attracted via chemokines and proliferate in the cervical lymph node (LN) and the brain. Brain Tregs may thereafter interact with various brain cells including that of microglia, astrocytes, endothelial cells, and neural cells promoting neural cell recovery in th process. IL: interleukin; IGF: insulin growth factor

In this mini-review article, we will focus on the resolution of inflammation and tissue repair of the brain after ischemic stroke.

INFLAMMATION CASCADE AFTER STROKE

In the very acute stage (< 24 h) after stroke onset, the major player involved is infiltrated macrophage, which can be differentiated from bone marrow-derived monocytes. Macrophages are activated by extracellular molecules known as danger-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs), which are released from damaged and dead cells. Infiltrated macrophages at this stage are highly pro-inflammatory and produce cytokines, chemokines and mediators which exacerbate ischemic encephalopathy, leading to dysfunction of the blood brain barrier (BBB)[4,14] [Figures 1 and 2]. HMGB1, S100A8 and S100A9, and peroxiredoxin-family proteins are major DAMPs which activate infiltrated macrophages through toll-like receptor (TLR)-2 and TLR-4[15].

Among inflammatory cytokines released from macrophages, TNFα, interleukin (IL)-1β, IL-23 have been shown to contribute significantly to brain damages and neural dysfunctions[16-19]. In particular, IL-1β and

IL-23 induce IL-17 production from infiltrated γδT cells, further promote inflammation, BBB breakdown, and neuronal damage[19-21]. IL-17 is a cytokine which has been shown to play important pathological roles not only in ischemic stroke, but also in various neuroinflammation including neurodegenerative diseases[22-24]. The inflammasomes, which are necessary for mature IL-1β release, have also been described to cause deterioration in infarct volume resulting in neural defects in stroke patients. Inhibition of inflammasome is shown to be effective for reducing neuroinflammation and subsequently reducing infarct volume increase[20,25].

RESOLUTION MECHANISM OF INFLAMMATION AFTER STROKE

After 3-4 days post-ischemic stroke onset, inflammatory macrophages termed M1 type macrophages, are converted into repairing macrophages or M2-type macrophages. Repairing macrophages play a role in scavanging tissue debris and necrotic cells, futher supporting neural repair by releasing neurotrophic factors including insulin growth factor (IGF)-I[26] [Figure 2]. It has been suggested by some studies that IL-10 and TGF-β from M2-type macrophages and microglia, promoting the resolution of inflammation[27]. Is is not clear whether the same M1 macrophages may convert to M2 type, or M2 macrophages replace M1 type macrophages although an imaging study of infiltrated macrophages in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) model revealed that single macrophage changes its phenotype from M1 to M2[28]. For clearance of DAMPs, Msr1 (macrophage scavenger receptor-1 or what is known as CD204 or SCARA1) was identified as a major scavanger receptor[29,30]. *Msr1* promoter was described to be activated by *Maf-b*, and an RAR agonist, Am80, upregulating MAF-B expression, therefore promoting Msr1 expression and clearance of DAMPs which ultimately facilitates neurological recovery[29]. Am80 has also been shown to be neuroprotective by activating the PI3-kinase/Akt pathway[31]. Msr1 has been shown in several studies to clear various neurotoxic molecules including amyloid-β thus playing an important neuroprotective role[32,33]. Mannose receptors on infiltrating macrophages have also been reported to be involved in the clearance of DAMPs in focal cortical ischemia[34].

The early activation of microglia in the post-ischemic brain was demonstrated to be neuroprotective by regulating neuronal Ca^{2+} overload and spread of depolarization. Pharmacological ablation of microglia results in infract size increase and dysregulation of neuronal circuit, while microglia repopulation reverses these effects[35]. The pro-resolving mediators including protectins and resolvins, which have been shown to be neuroprotective. Resolvins reduce neural damage through suppression of leukocyte infiltration, IL-1β expression, and NF-κB activation[36]. Neuroprotectin-D1 similarly reduces infarct volume and diminishes disease burden[37]. LXA_4 had also been reported to be neuroprotective by virtue of mitigating astrogliosis, IL-1β, TNFα expression, and neutrophil infiltration. Additionally, it also converts phenotypes of monocytes from inflammatory to an anti-inflammatory and serves functionally to repair tissues[38]. However, the mechanism of resolution (or suppression) of inflammation by microglia and these lipid-mediators remains to be described.

Lack of CCR5 expression has been reported to increase the severity of ischemic brain injury[39]. CCR5 is uniquely expressed in cortical neurons within the damaged brain[40]. CCR5 antagonists accelerate recovery from neurological and cognitive dysfunction. Although various roles of CCR5 in neurons have been reported, the inhibition of CCR5 has been found to suppress astrocyte reactivity and macrophage recruitment[40,41]. Nevertheless, another study has revealed the pathogenic role of CCR5 in cerebral ischemia[42], suggesting that various types of cells may express CCR5 and contribute to both neuronal inflammation and tissue repair of the ischemic brain.

ROLE OF MICROGLIA IN RESOLUTION OF INFLAMMATION AND NEURAL REPAIR

Microglia have been shown to play important roles in neural inflammation, resolution of inflammation and clearance of dead cells in the brain[43]. Since major sources of IL-1β and IL-23 is infiltrated M1 type

macrophages originate during the acute phase of inflammation after stroke model[14,20], the contribution of microglia to severe inflammation post stroke is not very clear. Depletion of microglia leads to aggravated neuronal damage and apoptosis after ischemic brain injury, suggesting that microglia plays an important role in neuroprotection[44]. Mechanistically, microglia senses damaged cells through the purinergic receptors (P2X4R, P2X6R, P2X12R) which respond to adenosine triphosphate released from dead cells. The activation of the purinergic receptors initiates neuroprotective responses rather than destructive inflammation through the recruitment of microglia to the point of injury[45,46]. Microglia also express clearance receptors such as Msr1, complement receptors, and receptors for apoptotic cells[32,47]. A recent study shows beneficial effects of repopulating microglia which support adult neurogenesis by augmenting the survival of newborn neurons in traumatic brain injury thorough IL-6 trans-signaling pathways[48]. IGF-1 produced by microglia has been found to be neuroprotective[49]. However, the significance of IGF-1 in neuroinflammation and neuroprotectin remain controversial[50].

ROLE OF LYMPHOCYTES IN POST-ISCHEMIC BRAIN INFLAMMATION

It has been reported that lymphocytes including T cells and B cells play various roles in the pathophysiology of stroke[51]. B cells and immunoglobulins are detected within and around the stroke core in a subgroup of stroke and dementia patients, and also in a murine experimental stroke model. Several studies suggest that post-stroke cognitive impairment has been associated with B cell activation and auto-antibody production[52]. Nevertheless, the specific roles of B cells and/or antibodies in neurological deficits and inflammation after ischemic brain injury remain uncertain[53]. Plasma cells in the central nervous system (CNS) of mice with EAE have been shown to originate in the gut and produce IgA, which confers resistance to mice to the effector stage of EAE through the production of IL-10[54]. Interestingly, stroke patients demonstrate a type of auto-immunoreactivity to brain antigens[55].

T cells have been more intensively investigated than B cells. This is mostly because various cytokines, such as IL-10, IL-17, IL-21, IFN-γ, and TNF-α produced from $CD4^+$T cells and/or γδT cells, affect and regulate glial cells, endothelial cells, neural cells, and various immune cells[56,57]. IL-21 is predominantly produced from $CD4^+$T cells, but the role of this particular cytokine in stroke is controversial. In mice, a locus on distal chromosome 7 has been described to contribute variations in post-ischemic cerebral infarct volume, and the IL-21 receptor has been identified as a strong candidate which functions in a neuroprotective manner[58]. However, another study suggested that IL-21 promotes brain injury after stroke in mice[57], thus further research is necessary to clarify the role of IL-21 in brain injury.

The route of infiltration of T cells to the brain is not described clearly. A recent study shows that T cells specifically accumulate within the peri-infarct cortex after stroke and that the ipsilateral choroid plexus plays a key cerebral invasion route for T cells[59]. This study suggests that the CCR2-ligand gradient between cortex and choroid plexus serves as the potential driving force for T cell invasion.

In the experimental cerebral ischemia model, infiltration of subsets of T cells occurs at various time points [Figures 1 and 2]. Many reports indicate that T cells promote brain damage at the early phase of stroke[19,60]. In humans, FTY720 (fingolimod) treatment within 72 h post stroke onset blocks the infiltration of pathogenic T cells into the brain, effectively ameliorating neurological symptoms in the patient[61]. $CD8^+$ T cells may infiltrate within several hours after stroke onset[61]. Nerve-damaging substances such as granzymes and perforin from $CD8^+$T cells can exacerbate the infarction[62]. γδT cells increase immediately after stroke onset and are present in the brain parenchyma accompanied with BBB breakdown. On day 3 after stroke onset, the number of γδT cells reaches its maximum concentrations[19,21]. IL-17 produced from γδT cells promotes neural cell damages in the ischemic penumbra region[19,21,63]. Taken together, γδT cells depletion well as anti-IL-17 neutralizing antibody are shown to suppress ischemic brain injury[19,64]. $CD4^+$T cells and NKT cells infiltrate the brain after 24 h of ischemic stroke[65]. These reports indicate that

T cell could serve as a therapeutic target for stroke. However, we should remain cautious that within one week after stroke onset, the number of T cells in the brain is small and represents only a small fraction of infiltrated mononuclear cells[19] [Figure 1].

It has been reported that during the acute phase of stroke, Tregs infiltrate the brain, suppressing neuroinflammation, therby reducing the severity of ischemic brain injury[60,66,67]. However, the significance of Tregs in brain injury has become controversial[68,69]. Importantly, the number of Tregs in the brain at this stage is extremely low (less than 100 cells/brain in mice), and antigen-specific activation and proliferation of Tregs may not occur in such a short period (within 3 days), since it usually takes more than a week to raise adaptive immunity in the host [Figures 1 and 2]. Thus, bystander effects, such as paracrine effects of IL-10, may explain an anti-inflammatory role of Tregs at the acute phase.

ACCUMULATION OF BRAIN TREGS AT THE CHRONIC PHASE OF STROKE

It is thought that inflammation no longer plays an important role in neural damage and recovery at the chronic phase of stroke (> 7 days after stroke onset). Inflammation is not clearly obvious at this stage. However, compared to the acute phase, Tregs as well as other lymphocytes have been shown to accumulate in substantial quantities in the brain at the chronic phase of the experimental stroke model[9-13] [Figures 1 and 2]. Infiltration of Tregs proceeds with slightly delayed kinetics compared with that of other T cells. Tregs may also infiltrate the spinal cord parenchyma during the subacute to chronic phases in the spinal cord injury model[70]. Tregs consist of approximately 50% of $CD4^+$ T cells, and localize within and around the cerebral infarction lesion. Outside the infarct core area, Tregs remain in close proximity to scar-forming astrocytes and neuronal cells. Treg fractions in the brain are extremely higher that those in other lymphoid organs such as the spleen and lymph nodes. Since $CD8^+$ T cells are also present, about 1/4 to 1/5 of T cells in the brain are calculated as Tregs.

To determine the role of T cells in ischemic brain injury, mice were treated with FTY720 or anti-CD4 antibody during the chronic phase after stroke. Tregs can also be depleted by the use of Foxp3-diphtheria toxin receptor (DTR) mice, where DTR is specifically expressed on Tregs[71]. These treatments drastically reduce the number of $CD4^+$T cells including Tregs in the brain, delaying neurological recovery. These data indicate that brain Tregs at the chronic phase are important for suppressing neurological symptoms[9]. Stubbe *et al.*[10] observed no changes regarding neurologic outcome if they depleted Tregs through the use of anti-CD25 antibody[10]. Anti-CD25 antibody, however, may not be able to completely deplete Tregs, possibly depleting pathogenic T cells as well[72]. Other studies have also shown that brain Tregs play neuroprotective roles during the late stage of stroke and spinal cord injury models[12,73].

CHARACTERIZATION OF BRAIN TREGS

Tregs consist of approximately 10% of $CD4^+$ T cells, located within most lymphoid organs and blood, moving to specific sites of inflammation after immunization. In addition, Tregs have recently been discovered in various tissues besides lymphoid tissues, in steady state conditions as well as during injury. These tissue-residing Tregs are now termed "tissue Tregs", which have a limited TCR repertoire and recognize the self-antigen characteristically expressed in each tissue. Such tissue Tregs exist in fats, muscles, skin, lungs, and intestines, exhibiting similar phenotypes among organs, but are quite different from those of lymphoid tissue[74-78]. The features common to various tissue Tregs are high expressions of *Il10*, *Areg* (amphiregulin), *Klrg1*, *Tigit*, *Il1rl1* (encoding ST2, IL-33 receptor), *Ctla4*, *Irf4*, *Batf*, and *Gata3* and low expressions of *Bcl2*, *Tcf7*, and *Lef1* compared with lymphatic Tregs[74,79]. BATF is shown to be an important regulator for Tregs to accumulate preferentially in several tissues[80]. In addition to the common genes expressed in various tissue Tregs, unique tissue-specific genes are also found in tissue Tregs namely *Pparg* in fat Tregs. The microenvironment of each organ appears to determine the tissue-specific phenotypes of tissue Tregs.

Like other tissue Tregs, brain Tregs express Helios, which suggests that brain Tregs are derived from the thymus embryonically. Brain Tregs possess a unique TCR repertoire and express high levels of CTLA-4, PD-1, Areg, KLRG1, and ST2, indicating that the brain Tregs share common features of tissue Tregs.

MOLECULES DEEPLY INVOLVED IN TREG-MEDIATED NEURAL RECOVERY

Chemokine receptors

Tissue Tregs express unique chemokine receptors in each organ. Brain Tregs express specific chemokine receptors including CCR6 and CCR8, and their ligands. CCL20 and CCL1 in particular are highly expressed in the cerebral infarct area. Intra-ventricular injection of CCL1 and CCL20 has been reported to increase the number of Tregs, resulting in improvement of neurological recovery[9].

IL-33

Of note, IL-33 promotes tissue recovery after CNS injury[81] and up-regulates M2 type macrophage-related genes[82]. Since many reports suggest that IL-33 induces the expansion of Tregs in the brain[9,12,83], it is highly possible that brain Tregs are involved in the beneficial effects on CNS damage[12,84]. In the skeletal muscle injury model, local mesenchymal stromal cells express the receptor for the calcitonin-gene-related peptide (CGRP), producing IL-33 in response to CGRP, which further promotes accumulation of Tregs and muscle tissue repair[78]. IL-33-expressing cells in the brain consist of astrocytes and oligodendrocytes[9]. Higher serum IL-33 levels in acute ischemic stroke patients correlated positively with better prognosis, as compared with those with lower IL-33 levels. These patients presented with poorer outcome[85] suggesting that IL-33 is protective to stroke.

Serotonin receptor

As earlier described, tissue Tregs express a common set of genes among various tissue Tregs, while each organ-specific Treg expresses tissue-specific genes. Unlike other tissue Tregs, brain Tregs express several unique CNS-related genes. For example, brain Tregs express serotonin receptor 7 (Htr 7), which increases cellular cAMP[86]. It has been acknowledged that cAMP promotes the Treg proliferation and thereby potentiating Treg functions[87]. Serotonin was reported to decrease Th1/Th17 cytokines, but increased Treg population in multiple sclerosis (MS) patients[88]. Serotonin further activates Tregs from the ischemic brain *in vitro* in an Htr7-dependent manner. The administration of serotonin or a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) thus increases the number of brain Tregs in the chronic phase after stroke onset, improving neurological symptoms[9]. Many reports suggest that SSRI ameliorates neurological symptoms after stroke onset[89,90], although some studies did not prove that functional recovery improved[91]. It is highly likely that brain Tregs work on neuronal repair in human stroke patients.

Amphiregulin

Hypertrophic astrocytes exhibit increased Ca^{2+} signaling, which leads to the increased expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines (IL-1β, IL-6) and chemokines (CCL3, CCL5) expression, promoting the formation of glial scars[92]. Amphiregulin (Areg) is also known to suppress the production of inflammatory cytokines, including IL-6 and TNFα, in several inflammatory diseases[93].

Areg from brain Tregs has been described to suppress the excessive activation of astrocytes, so-called astrogliosis or reactive astrocytes, which is then reported to lead to a delay in the recovery from ischemic stroke or spinal cord injury[94]. Although astrogliosis would be necessary for forming scars in order to demarcate the ischemic regions from the surrounding healthy tissue, excessively activated astrocytes can produce neurotoxic factors, resulting in neural cell damage[95]. Areg further suppresses apoptosis of neurons by suppressing excessive astrocyte activation[9]. The molecular mechanism of suppression of astrocyte activation by Areg has not been completely elucidated. Among inflammatory cytokines, IL-6 is important for astrocyte activation[96]. Since Areg suppresses IL-6 expression in microglia and astrocytes *in vivo* and

in vitro[9], suppression of IL-6 by Areg may play a key role in astrocyte regulation. In addition, Areg has been postulated to be directly involved in the proliferation of neural stem cells[97].

Enkephalin

Prepro-enkephalin is produced in Regulatory T cells[98]. Pharmacologically active encephalin has been reported to be therapeutic for stroke[99]. Opioid growth factor ([Met(5)]-enkephalin) is also neuroprotective in the murine EAE model[100]. However, some studies indicate that preproenkephalin accelerates the generation of autoimmune IFN-γ-producing T cells and exacerbates EAE[101].

PPARγ

PPARγ levels are high in brain Tregs. PPARγ agonists have been reported to increase accumulation of adipose-tissue Tregs and improve insulin sensitivity[102] In particular, PPARγ agonists have a protective effect against various types of injury to the brain[103]. Thus, it is possible that PPARγ is involved in Treg expansion in the brain, which should be further investigated.

TREGS AND HUMAN CNS INFLAMMATORY DISEASES

Accumulation of Tregs in the human brain of ischemic stroke patients has not been clearly shown. However, a correlation between peripheral blood Treg/Th17 ratio or IL-17/IL-10 levels and stroke prognosis has been reported in human stroke[104-107]. An inverse correlation between the number of Tregs in the peripheral blood and the severity of stroke has also been reported in patients[13,108].

It has been established that neural inflammation plays important roles not only in cerebral infarction, but also in various types of damage to cerebrospinal tissues. These include spinal cord injury, autoimmune diseases such as multiple sclerosis, and in neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases. Innate and adaptive immunity may be involved in these neural inflammations. Although Tregs have been shown to infiltrate and accumulate within the CNS[109] of neuroinflammatory diseases, role of Tregs in such diseases have not been well characterized. Since Tregs of MS patients have been shown to proliferate by serotonin stimulation[88], Tregs in the CNS diseases may be similar to the brain Tregs that have been characterized in a murine ischemic stroke model.

CONCLUSION

In summary, brain macrophages as well as brain Tregs play important roles in the resolution of inflammation and neural recovery. The conversion mechanism from inflammatory macrophages to tissue-repair macrophages and the mechanism of expansion of brain Tregs by recognizing self-antigens in the cervical LN and the brain remain to be described. Neuroprotective factors such as IGF-1 from macrophages and Areg produced by brain Tregs not only suppress excessive activation of microglia and astrocytes, but may also promote neural cell survival and neural stem cell recruitment [Figure 2][110,111]. The molecular mechanisms whereby macrophages and Tregs acquire brain-specific characteristics, including Maf-b/scavenger receptor expression and serotonin receptor expression, respectively, remain to be clarified. Such mechanisms could be used for increasing Tregs in the brain. Identification of brain factors and self-antigens for brain-specific macrophages and Tregs may facilitate the development of therapies for not only cerebral infarction but also other central nervous system diseases. Adoptive transfer of mesenchymal stem cells to the brain has been proposed to treat stroke patients[112]. Similarly autologous Tregs transfer into the brain is also possible for the treatment of cerebral inflammation. It is also important to define the role of brain Tregs in other neurodegenerative disorders and neuroinflammatory diseases.

DECLARATIONS

Authors' contributions

Searched literatures and wrote the manuscript: Yoshimura A, Ito M

Availability of data and materials

Not applicable.

Financial support and sponsorship

This work was supported by JSPS KAKENHI (S) JP17H06175, Challenging Research (P) JP18H05376, and AMED-CREST JP20gm1110009 to Yoshimura A, and JSPS KAKENHI 17K15667, 19H04817, and 19K16618, AMED-PRIME 20gm6210012 to Ito M and by the Tomizawa Jun-ichi & Keiko Fund of Molecular Biology Society of Japan for Young Scientists, a Research Grant for Young Investigators by The Mitsubishi Foundation, the Mochida Memorial Foundation for Medical and Pharmaceutical Research, the Takeda Science Foundation, the Uehara Memorial Foundation, the Naito Memorial Foundation, the Kanae Foundation, the SENSHIN Medical Research Foundation, the Astellas Foundation for Research on Metabolic Disorders, an Inoue Research Award, a Life Science Research Award, and Keio Gijuku Academic Developmental Funds.

Conflicts of interest

Both authors declared that there are no conflicts of interest.

Ethical approval and consent to participate

Not applicable.

Consent for publication

Not applicable.

Copyright

© The Author(s) 2020.

REFERENCES

1. Ojaghihaghighi S, Vahdati SS, Mikaeilpour A, Ramouz A. Comparison of neurological clinical manifestation in patients with hemorrhagic and ischemic stroke. World J Emerg Med 2017;8:34-8.
2. Hankey GJ. Stroke. Lancet 2017;389:641-54.
3. Shichita T, Ago T, Kamouchi M, Kitazono T, Yoshimura A, et al. Novel therapeutic strategies targeting innate immune responses and early inflammation after stroke. J Neurochem 2012;123 Suppl 2:29-38.
4. Shichita T, Ito M, Yoshimura A. Post-ischemic inflammation regulates neural damage and protection. Front Cell Neurosci 2014;8:319.
5. Jiang C, Kong W, Wang Y, Ziai W, Yang Q, et al. Changes in the cellular immune system and circulating inflammatory markers of stroke patients. Oncotarget 2017;8:3553-67.
6. Dokalis N, Prinz M. Resolution of neuroinflammation: mechanisms and potential therapeutic option. Semin Immunopathol 2019;41:699-709.
7. Javidi E, Magnus T. Autoimmunity after ischemic stroke and brain injury. Front Immunol 2019;10:686.
8. Malone K, Amu S, Moore AC, Waeber C. The immune system and stroke: from current targets to future therapy. Immunol Cell Biol 2019;97:5-16.
9. Ito M, Komai K, Mise-Omata S, Iizuka-Koga M, Noguchi Y, et al. Brain regulatory T cells suppress astrogliosis and potentiate neurological recovery. Nature 2019;565:246-50.
10. Stubbe T, Ebner F, Richter D, Engel O, Klehmet J, et al. Regulatory T cells accumulate and proliferate in the ischemic hemisphere for up to 30 days after MCAO. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 2013;33:37-47.
11. Chen C, Chencheng Z, Cuiying L, Xiaokun G. Plasmacytoid dendritic cells protect against middle cerebral artery occlusion induced brain injury by priming regulatory T cells. Front Cell Neurosci 2020;14:8.
12. Liu X, Hu R, Pei L, Si P, Wang C, et al. Regulatory T cell is critical for interleukin-33-mediated neuroprotection against stroke. Exp Neurol 2020;328:113233.

13. Santamaria-Cadavid M, Rodriguez-Castro E, Rodriguez-Yanez M, Arias-Rivas S, Lopez-Dequidt I, et al. Regulatory T cells participate in the recovery of ischemic stroke patients. BMC Neurol 2020;20:68.
14. Shichita T, Hasegawa E, Kimura A, Morita R, Sakaguchi R, et al. Peroxiredoxin family proteins are key initiators of post-ischemic inflammation in the brain. Nat Med 2012;18:911-7.
15. Nishibori M, Mori S, Takahashi HK. Anti-HMGB1 monoclonal antibody therapy for a wide range of CNS and PNS diseases. J Pharmacol Sci 2019;140:94-101.
16. Tuttolomondo A, Pecoraro R, Pinto A. Studies of selective TNF inhibitors in the treatment of brain injury from stroke and trauma: a review of the evidence to date. Drug Des Devel Ther 2014;8:2221-38.
17. Hallenbeck JM. The many faces of tumor necrosis factor in stroke. Nat Med 2002;8:1363-8.
18. Boutin H, LeFeuvre RA, Horai R, Asano M, Iwakura Y, et al. Role of IL-1alpha and IL-1beta in ischemic brain damage. J Neurosci 2001;21:5528-34.
19. Shichita T, Sugiyama Y, Ooboshi H, Sugimori H, Nakagawa R, et al. Pivotal role of cerebral interleukin-17-producing gammadeltaT cells in the delayed phase of ischemic brain injury. Nat Med 2009;15:946-50.
20. Ito M, Shichita T, Okada M, Komine R, Noguchi Y, et al. Bruton's tyrosine kinase is essential for NLRP3 inflammasome activation and contributes to ischaemic brain injury. Nat Commun 2015;6:7360.
21. Benakis C, Brea D, Caballero S, Faraco G, Moore J, et al. Commensal microbiota affects ischemic stroke outcome by regulating intestinal gammadelta T cells. Nat Med 2016;22:516-23.
22. Gelderblom M, Gallizioli M, Ludewig P, Thom V, Arunachalam P, et al. IL-23 (Interleukin-23)-producing conventional dendritic cells control the detrimental IL-17 (Interleukin-17) response in stroke. Stroke 2018;49:155-64.
23. Mohammadi Shahrokhi V, Ravari A, Mirzaei T, Zare-Bidaki M, et al. IL-17A and IL-23: plausible risk factors to induce age-associated inflammation in Alzheimer's disease. Immunol Invest 2018;47:812-22.
24. Waisman A, Hauptmann J, Regen T. The role of IL-17 in CNS diseases. Acta Neuropathol 2015;129:625-37.
25. Ren H, Kong Y, Liu Z, Zang D, Yang X, et al. Selective NLRP3 (Pyrin Domain-Containing Protein 3) inflammasome inhibitor reduces brain injury after intracerebral hemorrhage. Stroke 2018;49:184-92.
26. Cameron HA, Hazel TG, McKay RD. Regulation of neurogenesis by growth factors and neurotransmitters. J Neurobiol 1998;36:287-306.
27. Amantea D, Micieli G, Tassorelli C, Cuartero MI, Ballesteros I, et al. Rational modulation of the innate immune system for neuroprotection in ischemic stroke. Front Neurosci 2015;9:147.
28. Locatelli G, Theodorou D, Kendirli A, Jordao MJC, Staszewski O, et al. Mononuclear phagocytes locally specify and adapt their phenotype in a multiple sclerosis model. Nat Neurosci 2018;21:1196-208.
29. Shichita T, Ito M, Morita R, Komai K, Noguchi Y, et al. MAFB prevents excess inflammation after ischemic stroke by accelerating clearance of damage signals through MSR1. Nat Med 2017;23:723-32.
30. Sakai S, Shichita T. Inflammation and neural repair after ischemic brain injury. Neurochem Int 2018;130:104316.
31. Tian X, An R, Luo Y, Li M, Xu L, et al. Tamibarotene improves hippocampus injury induced by focal cerebral ischemia-reperfusion via modulating PI3K/Akt pathway in rats. J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis 2019;28:1832-40.
32. Frenkel D, Wilkinson K, Zhao L, Hickman SE, Means TK, et al. Scara1 deficiency impairs clearance of soluble amyloid-beta by mononuclear phagocytes and accelerates Alzheimer's-like disease progression. Nat Commun 2013;4:2030.
33. Cornejo F, von Bernhardi R. Role of scavenger receptors in glia-mediated neuroinflammatory response associated with Alzheimer's disease. Mediators Inflamm 2013;2013:895651.
34. Giraldi-Guimaraes A, de Freitas HT, Coelho Bde P, Macedo-Ramos H, Mendez-Otero R, et al. Bone marrow mononuclear cells and mannose receptor expression in focal cortical ischemia. Brain Res 2012;1452:173-84.
35. Szalay G, Martinecz B, Lenart N, Kornyei Z, Orsolits B, et al. Microglia protect against brain injury and their selective elimination dysregulates neuronal network activity after stroke. Nat Commun 2016;7:11499.
36. Marcheselli VL, Hong S, Lukiw WJ, Tian XH, Gronert K, et al. Novel docosanoids inhibit brain ischemia-reperfusion-mediated leukocyte infiltration and pro-inflammatory gene expression. J Biol Chem 2003;278:43807-17.
37. Bazan NG, Eady TN, Khoutorova L, Atkins KD, Hong S, et al. Novel aspirin-triggered neuroprotectin D1 attenuates cerebral ischemic injury after experimental stroke. Exp Neurol 2012;236:122-30.
38. Wu Y, Ye XH, Guo PP, Xu SP, Wang J, et al. Neuroprotective effect of lipoxin A4 methyl ester in a rat model of permanent focal cerebral ischemia. J Mol Neurosci 2010;42:226-34.
39. Sorce S, Bonnefont J, Julien S, Marq-Lin N, Rodriguez I, et al. Increased brain damage after ischaemic stroke in mice lacking the chemokine receptor CCR5. Br J Pharmacol 2010;160:311-21.
40. Joy MT, Ben Assayag E, Shabashov-Stone D, Liraz-Zaltsman S, Mazzitelli J, et al. CCR5 is a therapeutic target for recovery after stroke and traumatic brain injury. Cell 2019;176:1143-57.e13.
41. Cowell RM, Xu H, Parent JM, Silverstein FS. Microglial expression of chemokine receptor CCR5 during rat forebrain development and after perinatal hypoxia-ischemia. J Neuroimmunol 2006;173:155-65.
42. Victoria ECG, de Brito Toscano EC, de Sousa Cardoso AC, da Silva DG, de Miranda AS, et al. Knockdown of C-C chemokine receptor 5 (CCR5) is protective against cerebral ischemia and reperfusion injury. Curr Neurovasc Res 2017;14:125-31.
43. Rawlinson C, Jenkins S, Thei L, Dallas ML, Chen R. Post-ischaemic immunological response in the brain: targeting microglia in ischaemic stroke therapy. Brain Sci 2020;10:159.
44. Tsuji S, Di Martino E, Mukai T, Tsuji S, Murakami T, et al. Aggravated brain injury after neonatal hypoxic ischemia in microglia-depleted mice. J Neuroinflammation 2020;17:111.

45. Davalos D, Grutzendler J, Yang G, Kim JV, Zuo Y, et al. ATP mediates rapid microglial response to local brain injury in vivo. Nat Neurosci 2005;8:752-8.
46. Roth TL, Nayak D, Atanasijevic T, Koretsky AP, Latour LL, et al. Transcranial amelioration of inflammation and cell death after brain injury. Nature 2014;505:223-8.
47. Nonaka S, Nakanishi H. Microglial clearance of focal apoptotic synapses. Neurosci Lett 2019;707:134317.
48. Willis EF, MacDonald KPA, Nguyen QH, Garrido AL, Gillespie ER, et al. Repopulating microglia promote brain repair in an IL-6-dependent manner. Cell 2020;180:833-46.e16.
49. De Geyter D, Stoop W, Sarre S, De Keyser J, Kooijman R. Neuroprotective efficacy of subcutaneous insulin-like growth factor-I administration in normotensive and hypertensive rats with an ischemic stroke. Neuroscience 2013;250:253-62.
50. Labandeira-Garcia JL, Costa-Besada MA, Labandeira CM, Villar-Cheda B, Rodriguez-Perez AI. Insulin-like growth factor-1 and neuroinflammation. Front Aging Neurosci 2017;9:365.
51. Jin R, Yang G, Li G. Inflammatory mechanisms in ischemic stroke: role of inflammatory cells. J Leukoc Biol 2010;87:779-89.
52. Doyle KP, Quach LN, Sole M, Axtell RC, Nguyen TV, et al. B-lymphocyte-mediated delayed cognitive impairment following stroke. J Neurosci 2015;35:2133-45.
53. Doyle KP, Buckwalter MS. Does B lymphocyte-mediated autoimmunity contribute to post-stroke dementia? Brain Behav Immun 2017;64:1-8.
54. Rojas OL, Probstel AK, Porfilio EA, Wang AA, Charabati M, et al. Recirculating intestinal IgA-producing cells regulate neuroinflammation via IL-10. Cell 2019;176:610-24.e18.
55. Planas AM, Gomez-Choco M, Urra X, Gorina R, Caballero M, et al. Brain-derived antigens in lymphoid tissue of patients with acute stroke. J Immunol 2012;188:2156-63.
56. Cramer JV, Benakis C, Liesz A. T cells in the post-ischemic brain: troopers or paramedics? J Neuroimmunol 2019;326:33-7.
57. Clarkson BD, Ling C, Shi Y, Harris MG, Rayasam A, et al. T cell-derived interleukin (IL)-21 promotes brain injury following stroke in mice. J Exp Med 2014;211:595-604.
58. Lee HK, Keum S, Sheng H, Warner DS, Lo DC, et al. Natural allelic variation of the IL-21 receptor modulates ischemic stroke infarct volume. J Clin Invest 2016;126:2827-38.
59. Llovera G, Benakis C, Enzmann G, Cai R, Arzberger T, et al. The choroid plexus is a key cerebral invasion route for T cells after stroke. Acta Neuropathol 2017;134:851-68.
60. Liesz A, Suri-Payer E, Veltkamp C, Doerr H, Sommer C, et al. Regulatory T cells are key cerebroprotective immunomodulators in acute experimental stroke. Nat Med 2009;15:192-9.
61. Fu Y, Zhang N, Ren L, Yan Y, Sun N, et al. Impact of an immune modulator fingolimod on acute ischemic stroke. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2014;111:18315-20.
62. Mracsko E, Liesz A, Stojanovic A, Lou WP, Osswald M, et al. Antigen dependently activated cluster of differentiation 8-positive T cells cause perforin-mediated neurotoxicity in experimental stroke. J Neurosci 2014;34:16784-95.
63. Gelderblom M, Arunachalam P, Magnus T. Gammadelta T cells as early sensors of tissue damage and mediators of secondary neurodegeneration. Front Cell Neurosci 2014;8:368.
64. Gelderblom M, Weymar A, Bernreuther C, Velden J, Arunachalam P, et al. Neutralization of the IL-17 axis diminishes neutrophil invasion and protects from ischemic stroke. Blood 2012;120:3793-802.
65. Brait VH, Arumugam TV, Drummond GR, Sobey CG. Importance of T lymphocytes in brain injury, immunodeficiency, and recovery after cerebral ischemia. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 2012;32:598-611.
66. Zhang H, Xia Y, Ye Q, Yu F, Zhu W, et al. In vivo expansion of regulatory T cells with IL-2/IL-2 antibody complex protects against transient ischemic stroke. J Neurosci 2018;38:10168-79.
67. Li P, Wang L, Zhou Y, Gan Y, Zhu W, et al. C-C chemokine receptor type 5 (CCR5)-mediated docking of transferred tregs protects against early blood-brain barrier disruption after stroke. J Am Heart Assoc 2017;6:e006387.
68. Liesz A, Kleinschnitz C. Regulatory T cells in post-stroke immune homeostasis. Transl Stroke Res 2016;7:313-21.
69. Xu X, Li M, Jiang Y. The paradox role of regulatory T cells in ischemic stroke. Scientific World Journal 2013;2013:174373.
70. Kipnis J, Schwartz M. Controlled autoimmunity in CNS maintenance and repair: naturally occurring CD4+CD25+ regulatory T-cells at the crossroads of health and disease. Neuromolecular Med 2005;7:197-206.
71. Sekiya T, Kashiwagi I, Yoshida R, Fukaya T, Morita R, et al. Nr4a receptors are essential for thymic regulatory T cell development and immune homeostasis. Nature immunology 2013;14:230-7.
72. McNeill A, Spittle E, Backstrom BT. Partial depletion of CD69low-expressing natural regulatory T cells with the anti-CD25 monoclonal antibody PC61. Scand J Immunol 2007;65:63-9.
73. Raposo C, Graubardt N, Cohen M, Eitan C, London A, et al. CNS repair requires both effector and regulatory T cells with distinct temporal and spatial profiles. J Neurosci 2014;34:10141-55.
74. Delacher M, Imbusch CD, Weichenhan D, Breiling A, Hotz-Wagenblatt A, et al. Genome-wide DNA-methylation landscape defines specialization of regulatory T cells in tissues. Nat Immunol 2017;18:1160-72.
75. Panduro M, Benoist C, Mathis D. Tissue Tregs. Annu Rev Immunol 2016;34:609-33.
76. Sharma A, Rudra D. Emerging functions of regulatory T cells in tissue homeostasis. Front Immunol 2018;9:883.
77. Ito M, Komai K, Nakamura T, Srirat T, Yoshimura A. Tissue regulatory T cells and neural repair. Int Immunol 2019;31:361-9.
78. Wang K, Yaghi OK, Spallanzani RG, Chen X, Zemmour D, et al. Neuronal, stromal, and T-regulatory cell crosstalk in murine skeletal muscle. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2020;10:5402-8.

79. DiSpirito JR, Zemmour D, Ramanan D, Cho J, Zilionis R, et al. Molecular diversification of regulatory T cells in nonlymphoid tissues. Sci Immunol 2018;3;eeat5861.
80. Hayatsu N, Miyao T, Tachibana M, Murakami R, Kimura A, et al. Analyses of a mutant Foxp3 allele reveal BATF as a critical transcription factor in the differentiation and accumulation of tissue regulatory T cells. Immunity 2017;47:268-83.e9.
81. Dombrowski Y, O'Hagan T, Dittmer M, Penalva R, Mayoral SR, et al. Regulatory T cells promote myelin regeneration in the central nervous system. Nat Neurosci 2017;20:674-80.
82. Gadani SP, Walsh JT, Smirnov I, Zheng J, Kipnis J. The glia-derived alarmin IL-33 orchestrates the immune response and promotes recovery following CNS injury. Neuron 2015;85:703-9.
83. Guo S, Luo Y. Brain Foxp3(+) regulatory T cells can be expanded by Interleukin-33 in mouse ischemic stroke. Int Immunopharmacol 2019:81:106027.
84. Xiao W, Guo S, Chen L, Luo Y. The role of Interleukin-33 in the modulation of splenic T-cell immune responses after experimental ischemic stroke. J Neuroimmunol 2019;333:576970.
85. Li XM, Wang XY, Feng XW, Shao MM, Liu WF, et al. Serum interleukin-33 as a novel marker for long-term prognosis and recurrence in acute ischemic stroke patients. Brain Behav 2019;9:e01369.
86. Lenglet S, Louiset E, Delarue C, Vaudry H, Contesse V. Activation of 5-HT(7) receptor in rat glomerulosa cells is associated with an increase in adenylyl cyclase activity and calcium influx through T-type calcium channels. Endocrinology 2002;143:1748-60.
87. Klein M, Bopp T. Cyclic AMP represents a crucial component of Treg cell-mediated immune regulation. Front Immunol 2016;7:315.
88. Sacramento PM, Monteiro C, Dias ASO, Kasahara TM, Ferreira TB, et al. Serotonin decreases the production of Th1/Th17 cytokines and elevates the frequency of regulatory CD4(+) T-cell subsets in multiple sclerosis patients. Eur J Immunol 2018;48:1376-88.
89. Gu SC, Wang CD. Early selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors for recovery after stroke: a meta-analysis and trial sequential analysis. J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis 2018;27:1178-89.
90. Chollet F, Tardy J, Albucher JF, Thalamas C, Berard E, et al. Fluoxetine for motor recovery after acute ischaemic stroke (FLAME): a randomised placebo-controlled trial. Lancet Neurol 2011;10:123-30.
91. FOCUS-Trial-Collaboration. Effects of fluoxetine on functional outcomes after acute stroke (FOCUS): a pragmatic, double-blind, randomised, controlled trial. Lancet 2019;393:265-74.
92. Panickar KS, Norenberg MD. Astrocytes in cerebral ischemic injury: morphological and general considerations. Glia 2005;50:287-98.
93. Xu Y, Meng C, Liu G, Yang D, Fu L, et al. Classically activated macrophages protect against lipopolysaccharide-induced acute lung injury by expressing amphiregulin in mice. Anesthesiology 2016;124:1086-99.
94. Abeysinghe HC, Phillips EL, Chin-Cheng H, Beart PM, Roulston CL. Modulating astrocyte transition after stroke to promote brain rescue and functional recovery: emerging targets include rho kinase. Int J Mol Sci 2016;17:288.
95. Liddelow SA, Guttenplan KA, Clarke LE, Bennett FC, Bohlen CJ, et al. Neurotoxic reactive astrocytes are induced by activated microglia. Nature 2017;541:481-7.
96. Okada S, Nakamura M, Katoh H, Miyao T, Shimazaki T, et al. Conditional ablation of Stat3 or Socs3 discloses a dual role for reactive astrocytes after spinal cord injury. Nat Med 2006;12:829-34.
97. Kimura H, Schubert D. Schwannoma-derived growth factor promotes the neuronal differentiation and survival of PC12 cells. J Cell Biol 1992;116:777-83.
98. Zelenika D, Adams E, Humm S, Graca L, Thompson S, et al. Regulatory T cells overexpress a subset of Th2 gene transcripts. J Immunol 2002;168:1069-79.
99. Liska MG, Crowley MG, Tuazon JP, Borlongan CV. Neuroprotective and neuroregenerative potential of pharmacologically-induced hypothermia with D-alanine D-leucine enkephalin in brain injury. Neural Regen Res 2018;13:2029-37.
100. Zagon IS, Rahn KA, Bonneau RH, Turel AP, McLaughlin PJ. Opioid growth factor suppresses expression of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Brain Res 2010;1310:154-61.
101. Weir C, McNeill A, Hook S, Harvie M, La Flamme AC, et al. Critical role of preproenkephalin in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Neuroimmunol 2006;179:18-25.
102. Cipolletta D, Feuerer M, Li A, Kamei N, Lee J, et al. PPAR-gamma is a major driver of the accumulation and phenotype of adipose tissue Treg cells. Nature 2012;486:549-53.
103. Villapol S. Roles of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma on brain and peripheral inflammation. Cell Mol Neurobiol 2018;38:121-32.
104. Yasuno F, Taguchi A, Yamamoto A, Kajimoto K, Kazui H, et al. Microstructural abnormality in white matter, regulatory T lymphocytes, and depressive symptoms after stroke. Psychogeriatrics 2014;14:213-21.
105. Swardfager W, Herrmann N, Andreazza AC, Swartz RH, Khan MM, et al. Poststroke neuropsychiatric symptoms: relationships with IL-17 and oxidative stress. Biomed Res Int 2014;2014:245210.
106. Dolati S, Ahmadi M, Khalili M, Taheraghdam AA, Siahmansouri H, et al. Peripheral Th17/Treg imbalance in elderly patients with ischemic stroke. Neurol Sci 2018;39:647-54.
107. Yan J, Read SJ, Henderson RD, Hull R, O'Sullivan JD, et al. Frequency and function of regulatory T cells after ischaemic stroke in humans. J Neuroimmunol 2012;243:89-94.
108. Pang X, Qian W. Changes in regulatory T-cell levels in acute cerebral ischemia. J Neurol Surg A Cent Eur Neurosurg 2017;78:374-9.
109. Duffy SS, Keating BA, Perera CJ, Moalem-Taylor G. The role of regulatory T cells in nervous system pathologies. J Neurosci Res 2018;96:951-68.
110. Lunn JS, Sakowski SA, McGinley LM, Pacut C, Hazel TG, et al. Autocrine production of IGF-I increases stem cell-mediated

neuroprotection. Stem Cells 2015;33:1480-9.
111. Falk A, Frisen J. Amphiregulin is a mitogen for adult neural stem cells. J Neurosci Res 2002;69:757-62.
112. Marei HE, Hasan A, Rizzi R, Althani A, Afifi N, et al. Potential of stem cell-based therapy for ischemic stroke. Front Neurol 2018;9:34.

Cencioni. *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:277-90
DOI: 10.20517/2347-8659.2020.18

Neuroimmunology and Neuroinflammation

Review

Open Access

The immune regulation of PD-1/PDL-1 axis, a potential biomarker in multiple sclerosis

Maria Teresa Cencioni

Division of clinical neurology, Brain Sciences department, Imperial College London, London W12 0NN, UK.

Correspondence to: Dr. Maria Teresa Cencioni, Clinical neurology division, Brain sciences department, Imperial College London, Du cane road, London W12 0NN, UK. E-mail: m.cencioni@imperial.ac.uk

How to cite this article: Cencioni MT. The immune regulation of PD-1/PDL-1 axis, a potential biomarker in multiple sclerosis. *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:277-90. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.18

Received: 20 Feb 2020 **First Decision**: 31 Mar 2020 **Revised**: 16 Apr 2020 **Accepted**: 24 Apr 2020 **Available Online:** 30 Jul 2020

Academic Editor: Roberta Magliozzi **Copy Editor**: Jing-Wen Zhang **Production Editor**: Jing Yu

Abstract

Multiple sclerosis is an autoimmune disease characterised by a chronic inflammation within the central nervous system. In the last ten years, studies on multiple sclerosis have been concentrated on the discovery of new biomarkers of disease and potential therapeutic targets. In chronic infection or in cancer, the immune system response is faulty and maintained in a condition defined as T-cell exhaustion induced by expression of co-inhibitory receptors. The PD-1/PDL-1 pathway is demonstrated to be the main one responsible for promoting T-cell exhaustion, and immunotherapies targeting PD-1 or PDL-1 have shown beneficial clinical outcomes in several tumours and chronic diseases. Contrarily, transcriptional T-cell exhaustion signature and high expression of co-inhibitor receptor PD-1 are associated with favourable prognosis in multiple sclerosis and other autoimmune diseases. Several studies have clearly demonstrated PD-1 has a dual role in immune self-tolerance: to constrain autoreactive T cells in anergic condition and to protect the tissue from the damage caused by the activation of endogenous autoreactive T cells. Consequently, immune checkpoint inhibitor therapies that target inhibitory receptors in cancer cause an exacerbation of autoimmune diseases. This review describes the roles of the PD-1/PDL-1 pathway in cancer and autoimmune diseases, especially in multiple sclerosis, and how manipulating PD-1 can be a therapeutic approach in multiple sclerosis.

Keywords: T-cell exhaustion, inhibitory checkpoints pathways, PD-1/PDL-1 axis in autoimmune disease, multiple sclerosis, immune checkpoint inhibitor treatments, multiple sclerosis biomarkers

© The Author(s) 2020. **Open Access** This article is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, for any purpose, even commercially, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license, and indicate if changes were made.

T-CELL EXHAUSTION

The word "exhaustion" originates from the Latin "exaurire" and was used for the first time to explain a mechanism for silencing antiviral T-cell response during a Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis Virus infection (LCMV)[1]. Antigen-specific CD8 T cells remove viral infection by killing infected cells and the production of antiviral cytokines such as interferon gamma (IFNγ). The damping of immune response in LCMV was associated with two mechanisms silencing the CD8 Cytotoxic T Lymphocytes (CTLs) response: the depletion of nucleoprotein-specific CD8 T cells and the persistence of exhausted glycoprotein-specific CD8 T cells unable to kill virus-infected cells and release antiviral cytokines[1]. Further investigations showed that the exhaustion process suppresses the CD8 antiviral activity by the hierarchical loss of T cell function[2]. Proliferation, release of IL-2 and cytolysis were lost at an early stage of exhaustion, followed by tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNFα) production and, at the severe late stage, IFNγ production. CD4 T helper cells (Th cells) drive the fate of CD8 T-cell responses in chronic viral infections. Mice with transient depletion of CD4 T cells before infection with chronic strains of LCMV develop CD8 T-cell exhaustion and high viral load compared with non-treated mice[3]. Th cells are necessary for the generation of stable and functional CD8 memory cells[4-6]. During a chronic infection, CD8 T cells develop an exhaustion phenotype that produces a state of immunosuppression in the absence of CD4 T cells[7]. The exhaustion process induces low levels of Th cells[8-10] and affects CD4 T cell functions with loss of proliferation and IL-2 and TNFα production[11]. Moreover, CD8 T cell and B cell response was restored when functional LCMV-specific CD4 T cells were transfected in LCMV chronically infected mice. PD-1 expression increased in LCMV-specific CD4 T cells by two weeks after transfer in chronically infected mice and programmed death 1 (PD-1) blockage improved the CD4 T-cell activity[12,13]. In addition, the rescue of CD8 T cell function in terms of proliferation and cytokine release was greater in mice receiving the combination of PD-1 blockade and Th cells compared with the mice receiving either treatment alone[12].

INHIBITORY CHECKPOINT PATHWAYS

Cytotoxic T Lymphocytes A-4 (CTLA-4), PD-1 and programmed death ligand 1 (PDL-1) are the first inhibitory checkpoint receptors to be discovered and targeted in cancer immunotherapy and chronic viral infection. The amplitude of T-cell response depends on the activation of co-stimulatory (CD28) or inhibitory receptors after the engagement of T-cell receptor (TCR) with the cognate-peptide-major histocompatibility complex. Co-inhibitory receptors show distinct patterns of expression and different mechanisms of action and signalling.

The knockout CTLA-4 mice has shown a lethal hyperactivation phenotype, confirming that CTLA-4 is a vital inhibitor checkpoint of the immune system. After TCR activation, CTLA-4 upregulates in the CD4 T cells and competes with the co-stimulatory receptor CD28 for its ligands CD80 and CD86, for which CTLA-4 has more binding affinity. The link of CTLA-4 to CD80 and CD86 inhibits T-cell activation. Because antigen-presenting cells and dendritic cells express CD80 and CD86, the suppression of anti-tumour immunity by CTLA-4 is thought to occur in the secondary lymphoid organs as well as in the tumour microenvironment.

PD-1 is an inhibitory receptor that belongs to the CD28 family. The receptor has been detected on activated T lymphocytes, B lymphocytes, dendritic cells, macrophages and natural killer cells after a transcriptional activation[14]. PDL-1 is the ligand of PD-1, belongs to B7 family and is present on B lymphocytes, antigen-presenting cells (APC) and tissue cells, including several types of cancer. PD-1 engagement activates the inhibitory phosphatase PP2A and SHP-2 by immune receptor tyrosine inhibitory motif and immune receptor tyrosine switch motif, inhibits T-cell activation and increases T-cell migration within tissues.

T-cell exhaustion in cancer and infectious diseases. T-cell exhaustion has been described in animal models of polyomavirus[15] and adenovirus[16], as well as in chronic human infections mediated by human

immunodeficiency virus (HIV)[17] and hepatitis B and C virus (HBV, HCV)[18,19]. The loss of antiviral activity on CD8 T cells is associated with the upregulation of PD-1 in an animal model of LCMV followed by hierarchy suppression of cyto- and cytotoxic function[20]. The CD8 cytotoxic function against infected cells and antiviral cytokines production can be restored by blocking the PD-1/PDL-1 pathway, leading to clearance of infection in LCMV. The PD-1/PDL-1 pathway is the principal regulator of T-cell exhaustion in the animal model of LCMV. Studies on PD-1 in human chronic infections such as Human HIV and HCV have shown an increase of PD-1 on virus-specific CD8 T cells. PD-1 increases in HIV-specific CD4 and CD8 T cells and is directly correlated with the viral load and inversely with CD4 T cell counts. Furthermore, PD-1 increases in patients with HIV progression as compared with patients with long-term progression.

Moreover, T-cell exhaustion suppresses cancer immune-surveillance, leading to tumour spread. Restoring the immune surveillance by blocking PD-1/PDL-1 pathway has been an essential improvement in the cancer treatment. The function of PD-1 and its deregulations are summarised in Figure 1.

Nonetheless, some tumours develop resistance to PD-1 blocking, which is regulated by the tumour microenvironment where infiltrates of regulatory and immune suppressor cells (myeloid suppressor cells, regulatory T cells, immature dendritic cells and immune-suppressive macrophages) reduce the activity of cytotoxic CD8 T cells. Any treatment that induces changes in the levels of hormones and growth factors increases the vulnerability of cancer cells to cytotoxic drugs, which become sensitive to PD-1 treatment. Furthermore, short-term starvation (STS) has been described to reduce levels of insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1) in the lung cancer microenvironment with an increase in the infiltration of immune cells and cytotoxic CD8 T cells[21]. The combining of PD-1 blockade treatment with STS boosts the immune system, reducing the tumour size significantly in a mouse model of KRAS-driven lung adenocarcinoma and Lewis lung carcinoma[21]. The combination of the two treatments induced in the mice an extended lasting memory response. The immunological study has shown an increase in tumour-infiltrating CD8 and natural killer cells by reducing the proportion of CD4 and B cells. CD8 and CD4 T cells showed a reduction in PD-1 expression. Depletion of CD8 T cells abrogated utterly the effect of the STS and anti-PD-1 treatment, confirming that STS sensitises the lung cancer to CD8 T cells reactivated by PD-1 blocking. The tumour-immune infiltrate treated with anti-PD-1 after STS was analysed with a flow cytometer and presented an increase in the frequency of tumour-specific IFN-γ-producing T cells as compared with mice treated with only one agent or vehicle[21].

A selective ablation of PD-1 on myeloid cells or T cells has essentially contributed to understanding the function of PD-1 in the cancer-immunity cycle. Mice with PD-1 ablated only on myeloid cells showed an increase of effector memory T cells and an enhanced response against the tumours. Ablation of PD-1 on myeloid cells changes the tumour microenvironment, skewing the myeloid cell fate toward differentiation of monocytes, macrophages and $CD11c^{+}MHCII^{+}$ dendritic cells (DC) rather than myeloid suppressor cells and granulocyte/macrophage progenitors. The reduction of myeloid suppressor cells due to PD-1 ablation contributes to restoring the functionality of effector memory T cells and, consequently, an immune response to the tumour[22].

PD-1/PDL-1 AXIS IN AUTOIMMUNE DISEASE

Autoimmune thyroid diseases (AIDTs) are an organ-specific autoimmune disease that affects 50/100,000 people per year, with a prevalence in females[23]. Infiltrating lymphocytes generating follicle structures are described in the thyroid glands in Hashimoto thyroiditis and Grave's disease (GD), the most common AIDTs[24]. Interferon signalling and increased expression of PD-1 and M2 macrophages markers were revealed in the transcriptomic analysis of GD glands[25]. Thyroid autoimmunity is one of the most common Immune-Related Adverse Events observed after immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICI) treatments in cancer[26].

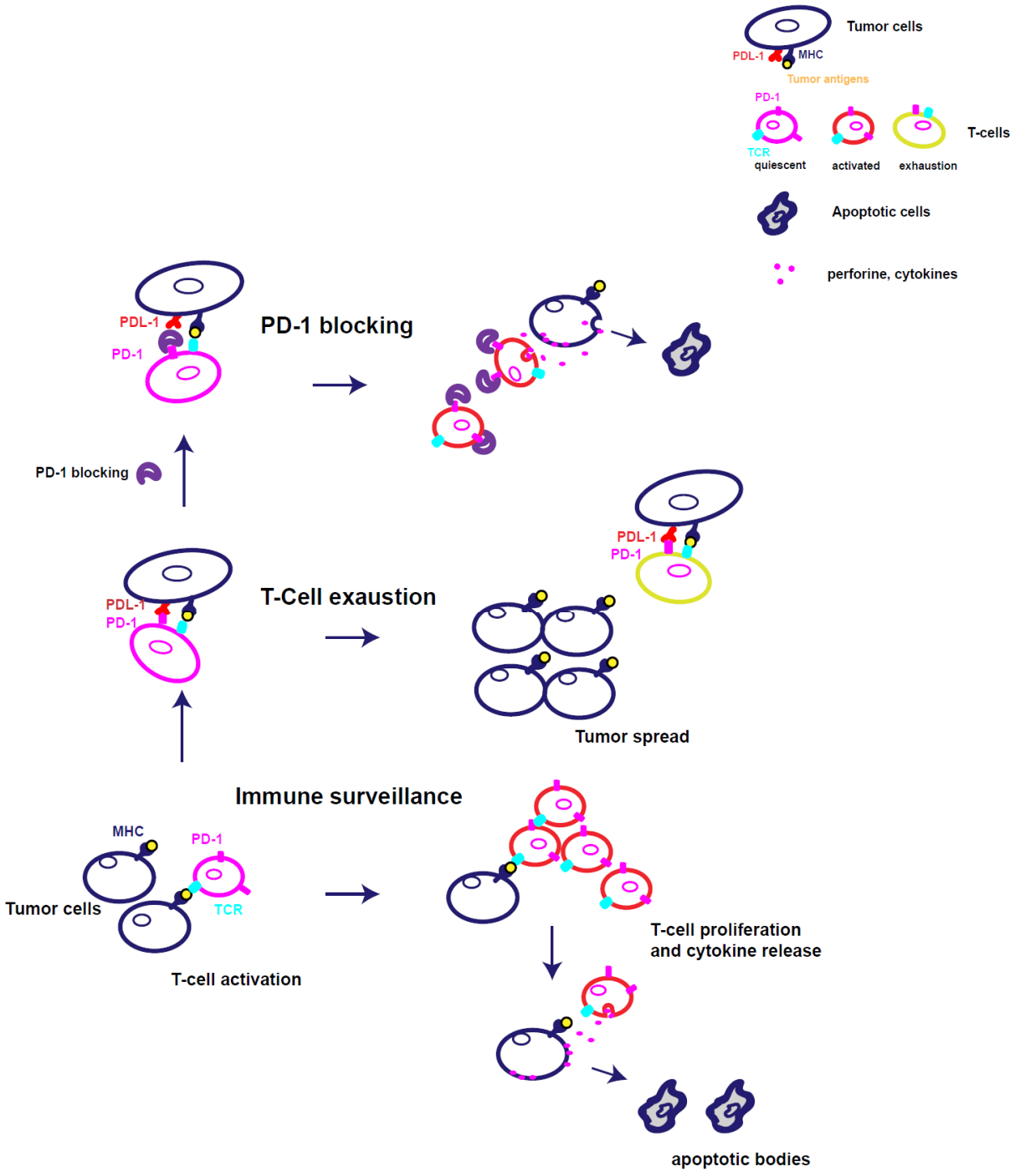


Figure 1. PD-1 inhibitor checkpoint regulates T cell activation during immune surveillance and induces T-cell exhaustion in cancer. (1) PD-1 is expressed on activated T cells and regulates the activity of late differentiate effector cells. The foreign antigens are presented to T cells by the TCR engagment with MHC expressed on dendritic cells, infected cells or tumor cells. Thus, T cells proliferate and differentiate in effector and memory cells. Effector cells kill the foreign antigens express on infected or tumor cells by releasing inflammatory cyokines and cytotoxic granules that induce target-cells to apoptosis. PD-1 is an inhibitory checkpoint able to regulate the T cell activation when the inflammation is resolved. (2) After activation, PD-1 increases on T cells and the link with the ligand PDL-1 reduces the T cell functionality. Thus, T cells are not able to kill the tumor or reduce the viral load and this condition called T-cell exaustion favours a persistent infection and tumor spread. (3) The blocking of PD-1 with monoclonal antibodies restores T cell function. T cells proliferate and differentiate in effector and memory cells contributing to resolve the infection or tumor. MHC: major histocompatibility complex

The PD-1/PDL-1 axis has been investigated in the peripheral blood and the infiltrating lymphocytes in glands of patients with GD and compared with non-multinodular goitres as non-autoimmune controls and healthy controls (HC)[27]. A decrease of naïve as well as an increase of memory and effector subsets of CD4 T cells was observed in GD as compared with the healthy donors (HD)[27]. Besides, infiltrating lymphocytes in the gland of GD patients were predominantly effector and memory cells. PD-1 was found higher in GD than HD in CD4 T cells, and it increased in effector memory T cells re-expressing CD45RA (TEMRA), effector and central memory subsets. PD-1 expression increased in infiltrating CD4 and CD8 T cells in infiltrating lymphocytes with predominance on effector and memory subsets. The expression of PDL-1 but not programmed death ligand 2 (PDL-2) was observed in epithelial thyroid follicular cells in the thyroid tissue from GD patients but not in non-multinodular goitres patients[27].

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is a chronic progressive inflammatory disorder characterised by damage of articular cartilage and joint destruction[28-31]. Environmental, genetic, infectious and hormonal factors can contribute to the pathogenesis of the disease[32,33]. The overproduction of TNFα generates inflammation and damages the joints. The interaction of B and T lymphocytes[34] with synovial-like fibroblasts and macrophages causes the overproduction of TNFα that induces the production of several inflammatory cytokines, such as interleukin-6 (IL-6)[35,36]. Several animal and clinical studies revealed the presence of CD4 T cells in the perivascular cuff and infiltration of CD8 T cells into the tissue. Depletion of T cells or treatment of anti-cytokines that are involved in T-cell activation or promote antigen-presentation reduces inflammation. T helper 17 cells are the primary T cell subsets involved in inflammation and autoimmunity in RA[37]. PD-1$^{-/-}$ C57BL/6 mice developed arthritis. PD-1 polymorphisms have been reported to be associated with RA[38,39]. Expression of PD-1 was detected in synovial T cells and macrophages in patients with RA[40]. In the peripheral blood of RA patients, PD-1 was significantly decreased in CD4 T cells (P = 0.002) and CD8 T cells ($P < 0.001$) as compared with HC ($P < 0.05$)[41]. DAS28 score is a measure of disease activity in RA, and PD-1 expression was found inversely correlated with DAS28 scores in RA patients[41]. Besides, CRP is an indicator of inflammation and cases with positive CRP detection had a lower proportion of PD-1^{+}CD4^{+} T cells than those with negative CRP[42].

Systemic Lupus Erythematous (SLE) is an autoimmune disease generated by the production of antibodies against self-antigens and deposition of immune complexes in different tissues. Inflammation and multisystem disorders characterise the disease[43]. The disorder affects mainly women of reproductive age with an incidence of 20-70 cases per 100,000 individuals[44,45]. Environmental, genetic and hormonal factors are relevant in the pathogenesis of the disease[46-48]. Genetic variations in the immune checkpoint genes such as PD-1, T-cell immunoglobulin domain, mucin domain (TIM) and CTLA-4 increase the susceptibility to develop the autoimmune disease as a consequence of the breakdown of immune tolerance to self-antigens[49,50]. Several single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) have been identified to affect PD-1 function and to contribute to tumours and autoimmune disease[49,50]. The frequencies of PD-1 SNPs (PD1.1, PD1.3, PD1.5 and PD1.9) were analysed in SLE patients. The PD1.5 genotype frequency was increased in Iranian, Malaysian and European patients with SLE as compared with healthy donors[51-53]. The distribution of PD1.5 C/C, PD1.5 C/T and PD1.5 T/T genotypes versus other genotypes in patients with SLE differed from healthy controls[53]. In addition, there were significant differences in the PD1.5 genotypes between patients with renal involvement and neurological involvement and between neurological involvement and HC[53]. The allelic analysis revealed that there was a significant association between PD1.5 allele frequency and SLE susceptibility[53].

Type I diabetes (TID) is caused by autoreactive cells that destroy the insulin-producing beta cells in the pancreatic islet of Langerhans[54]. PD-1 and PDL-1 protect from TID. PD-1 deficiency accelerates the onset and the frequency of TID in NOD (non-obese diabetic) mice and infiltration of T cells into the islets. PD-1 or PDL-1 but not PDL-2 blockage rapidly induces diabetes in NOD mice with an expansion

of activated glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD)-reactive cells[55-59]. In addition, despite CTLA-4 blockage showing a negative regulation of autoimmune diabetes only in early stages of the life, the PD1-PDL-1 pathway regulated autoreactive T cells throughout the life span of the animal and appeared to be critical for progression of autoimmune diabetes[59]. Moreover, polymorphisms that reduce the function of PD-1 are associated with human TID[60]. PD-1 function was also investigated by using a model that mimics the naïve pre-immune repertoire. Fewer islet specific BDC2.5 transgenic naïve CD4 T cells were transferred into prediabetic NOD mice[61]. BDC2.5 CD4 T cells accumulated in the pancreas surrounding the islet (peri-insulitis)[61]. When BDC2.5 naïve T cells were preactivated *in vitro* and then transferred into NOD mice, the majority of them accumulated in the pancreas but within the islet (insulitis), developing severer TID[61]. The majority of BDC2.5 cells differentiate in IFNγ-producing cells. Anti-PDL-1 administration caused a conversion from peri-insulitis to destructive insulitis[61]. PD-1 on BDC2.5 naïve T cells regulate proliferation, C-X-C Motif Chemokine Receptor 3 (CXCR3) expression, infiltration of the pancreas, and release of inflammatory cytokines IFNγ, TNFα and IL-2. Moreover, PD-1 but not PDL-1 expressed by BDC2.5 cells is required to suppress proliferation and infiltration of the pancreas[61].

A fusion protein containing a single-chain variable fragment (scFv) of PD-1 antibody (aPD-1), an albumin-binding protein and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exotoxin A was used to select and kill PD-1$^+$ cells[62]. The treatment was tried first in animal model of TID. Depletion of PD-1$^+$ cells inhibited the development of TID in NOD mice, reducing the pancreatic infiltration of PD-1$^+$ cells as compared with the controls. Contrarily, anti-PD-1 was observed to induce a TID progression in NOD mice, suggesting that PD-1 blocking restores the proliferation and effector function of autoreactive cells. The TID progression was reduced in mice pre-treated with PD-1 depletion before PD-1 blocking, confirming that PD1 is expressed in autoreactive cells[62].

Multiple Sclerosis (MS) is an autoimmune disease of the central nervous system (CNS). Disease genetic and cellular studies sustain that autoreactive T cells are responsible for CNS damage[63,64]. Post-mortem studies showed that T and B cells infiltrate the CNS and, in the long term, develop lymphoid follicles with a functional germinal centre in the meninges and this meningeal inflammation causes white matter demyelination[65]. Further investigations demonstrated that inflammatory cytokines and molecules involved in T and B cell development and lymphoid-neogenesis increased in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) from post-mortem MS cases with a high level of meningeal inflammation and Gray matter demyelination, as well as in the CSF of patients with MS[66] and Gray matter damage at diagnosis[67]. Moreover, infiltration of T cells enriched the brain lesions[68] and T- and B-depleted therapies reduced activity and progression in MS[69].

IFNγ and IL-17-producing CD4 T cells have been defined as the effector populations driving CNS damage. Adoptive transfer of Th1 cells inducing experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) and the cytokine profile of cells isolated from the CNS of mice with acute EAE have shown that Th1 cytokines are released from infiltrating CD4$^+$ T cells and TNFα is predominantly transcribed by macrophages and microglia[70-72]. T-bet is the transcription factor regulating Th1 development and IFNγ production, and it is induced by interferon γ transducer and activator of transcription (STAT)-1 signalling pathway during T-cell activation. The role of Th1 in inducing EAE was confirmed in STAT-4 and STAT-6 deficient mice. STAT-4 pathway controls the Th1 differentiation and STAT-4$^{-/-}$ mice showed resistance to the development of AEA. Mice deficient in STAT-6, which regulates the differentiation of Th2 cells, develop severer AEA and have more Th1 phenotype[73]. The IFNγ-producing CD4$^+$T cells generate in the cervical lymph nodes and Th1 migration happens 24 h before the onset of neurological signs of EAE[74]. Although Th1 cells contribute to EAE, IFNγ knockdown mice are predisposed to develop EAE and infiltrates of lymphocytes, macrophages and granulocytes were detected in the CNS[75-77]. The results from IFNγ knockdown and STAT-1 deficient mice established the contribution of other effector cells to the disease pathogenesis.

Besides, the discovery of IL-23 rather than IL-12 being crucial for EAE development led to evaluating Th17 cells and their transcriptional factor RORgt in the EAE pathogenesis[78-80], Moreover, Th1, Th17 and Th9 were defined to induce EAE with a different disease phenotype[79,81]. In addition to effector cells in EAE[82], the mechanisms of immune regulations, including regulatory B and T cells, and expression of inhibitory receptors were investigated in EAE. CD4 T cells were observed to protect against spontaneous development of CNS autoimmunity in EAE[83], and CD4 regulatory T cells characterised by high expression of CD25 and transcription factor FOXp3 isolated from peripheral blood had a reduced effector suppression function in patients with MS as compared with healthy donors[84]. A defect in regulatory B cells was also described to induce EAE and autoimmunity in mice and patients[85,86].

Single-cell transcriptomics of blood and CSF cells isolated from patients with MS and healthy donors revealed that different mechanisms operate in the two compartments[87]. Analysis of the data showed that MS affects the cellular composition of the CSF and the transcriptional phenotype of blood cells[87]. Blood cells exhibited several transcriptional changes, including induction of activation markers (ICOS), cytokine receptors (IL17RA) and trafficking molecules (PECAM1/CD31 and ITGA5/a5 integrin) in T cells[87].

Contrarily, an enrichment of CD4 T cells with T helper 1 and T follicular helper (Tfh) profiles, regulatory T cells, myeloid lineage cells and late-stage B lineage cells were detected in the CSF[87]. Furthermore, Tfh cells expressing PD-1 were observed to correlate with the proportion of plasma cells and showed cytotoxicity and co-inhibitory function. Follicular T helper (Tfh) cells, a subset of T helper cells, are necessary for B cell differentiation and antibody production[87,88]. These cells express CXCR5, CD40 ligand and IL-21 as well as high levels of inducible T-cell constimulator (ICOS) and PD-1. They were described to migrate in the germinal centre and to activate B cells. An elevated frequency of circulating Tfh and B cells was identified in MS patients undergoing relapse and Tfh-like cells upregulated during the course of EAE progression[88]. In addition, an adoptive cell transfer experiment showed that myelin oligodendrocytes glycoprotein (MOG)-reactive Tfh-like cells induced a worsening of the disease, delaying the remission of EAE *in vivo*[88]. Despite the use of PD-1 to identify Tfh cells, the role of PD-1 signalling on Tfh cells is only beginning to be investigated. When PD-1 is engaged by its ligand PDL-1 on follicular B cells, a bystander mechanism is activated and PD-1-expressing Tfh cells are recruited into a special niche inside the GC, even though Tfh PD-1^{neg} migrates to the follicle outside of the germinal centre[89]. Moreover, both ICOS and PD-1 are requested for maintaining the stringency of affinity-based selection between Tfh cells and antigen-specific cells[89].

The transcriptional signature of CD8 T-cell exhaustion predicted better prognosis in multiple autoimmune diseases[90]. Transcriptomes of CD4 and CD8 T cells isolated from a group of patients with active autoimmune diseases were analysed to identify modules of genes with a strong correlation with relapse rate. Modules corresponding to CD4 T-cell co-stimulation were found to correlate with clinical outcomes. In detail, CD4 co-stimulatory receptors, CD2, KAT2B and other surrogate markers were described to increase in MS patients with active autoimmune disease.

The immune regulatory role of PD-1 in MS was suggested by experiments in EAE, a mouse model of MS[59,91,92]. Mice in which PD-1 was deleted or the PD-1 pathway was inhibited by blocking the link between PD-1 and its ligand PDL-1 develop a worsening EAE with an increase of infiltrating immune cells, especially CD8 T cells into the CNS[59,92,93]. The deterioration of disease in PD-1$^{-/-}$ and PDL-1$^{-/-}$ mice was related to over production of inflammatory cytokines IFNg, TNFa, IL-6 and IL-17 released by draining lymph node cells during re-stimulation *in vitro* with different concentrations of MOG[93]. PDL-1 is rarely expressed in the brains of controls[94]. Contrarily, PDL-1 was detected in the majority of lesions expressed from astrocytes and microglia/macrophages with low expression of PD-1 on infiltrating T cells in post-mortem MS brain tissues[94]. A recent publication shows that the PDL-1 in dendritic cells improves EAE in

mice. The authors used a hypomethylating agent 5-aza-2'-deoxycytidine, which reduces methylation in a "CPG" island located near the transcription site of *Cd274* gene. The reduced methylation favours the gene transcription and upregulation of PDL-1 in dendritic cells. This effect was observed in DC isolated from EAE mice pre-treated with hypomethylating agent and *in vitro* treatment of bone marrow dendritic cells with the hypomethylating agent. Furthermore, DC isolated from EAE mice pre-treated with 5-aza or bone marrow dendritic cells treated *in vitro* with 5-aza suppressed proliferation and release of inflammatory cytokines such as IL-17 and TNFα when the DC were co-cultured with CD4 T cells isolated from EAE mice. In addition, an inhibition of EAE was observed in mice pre-treated with 5-aza before EAE induction. An increase of PDL-1 and PDL-2 was detected in DC isolated from EAE mice in accordance with the *in vitro* results. Moreover, blocking of PDL-1 but not PDL-2 exacerbated the EAE symptoms, confirming that the link of PDL-1 but not PDL-2 with PD-1 is relevant in the suppression of T cell function by DC[95].

PD-1 depletion was also applied in mice immunised with a peptide of myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein as adjuvant to develop EAE[62]. After PD-1 depletion, the mice recovered from EAE with a clinical score of one at the end of the experiments compared with the control mice that showed a score four without recovery. Depletion of PD-1 reduced the fractions of PD-1$^+$CD4$^+$ and PD-1$^+$CD8$^+$ T cells but not B cells in the CNS as compared with the controls. Besides, PD-1 depletion did not alter the ability of the treated mice to mount an immune response. The baseline number of PD-1$^+$ cells in the blood and peripheral lymphoid organs was low, confirming that PD-1 is expressed on autoreactive cells infiltrating target organs[62].

In view of publications giving PD-1 a crucial role in protection against autoimmunity in human and animal models, Jang *et al.*[96] investigated how PD-1 controls the activation and accumulation of autoreactive T cells, by constraining them in anergic state. PD-1 is one of the checkpoint inhibitors investigated in self-tolerance and discussed previously in CD8 T cells. Self-reactive cells were deleted during thymic development[97] and, of those that survived thymic deletion, only 10%-25% preferentially differentiated into immune suppressive regulatory T cells (Tregs)[98,99]. Jiang *et al.*[96] demonstrated that PD-1 is required in culling endogenous peripheral high-affinity autoreactive CD4 T cells and protect against autoimmunity[96]. The tracking of endogenous autoreactive CD4 T cells showed that more than 90% of autoreactive CD4 T cells remained FOXp3- effectors and were not regulatory T cell precursors, despite the high TCR affinity[96]. Instead, self-reactive CD4 T cells acquired cell-intrinsic tolerance through the expression of the immune checkpoint molecule PD-1[96]. Monitoring the progeny of individual autoreactive CD4 T cell clones showed that the clones with the greatest expansion burst size and highest TCR affinity expressed high levels of PD-1 and the affinity for the self-antigen induces the expression of PD-1[96] and the absence of PD-1 converts this signal when priming with consequent cell activation. A similar mechanism was described to induce the peripheral CD8 T tolerance *in vivo*. The peripheral CD8 T tolerance is induced by resting dendritic cells and depends on activation of PD-1 and CTLA-4 pathways[100].

Several studies have analysed the gene expression and protein levels of PD-1 and PDL-1 in MS, focusing on delineating any correlation with disease susceptibility or risk of progression in MS. *PD-1* gene polymorphism has been investigated in MS, and the PD 1.3 SNP has been reported to correlate with progression of the disease, demonstrating that human polymorphisms that reduce PD-1 activity increase the risk of disease. Furthermore, a significant reduction in PD-1 expression was observed in patients with mutation as compared with donors with wild-type phenotype. Furthermore, patients bearing the mutual allele showed a lower suppression of IFNγ-producing CD4 T cells after aCD3-PD-1-microbead stimulation compared with healthy donors[101]. In addition, PD-1 and PDL-1 expression in peripheral blood mononuclear cells reduced in a cohort of patients with MS as compared with healthy donors[102]. The association of three PD-1 SNPs, namely PD-1.3, PD-1.5 and PD-1.9, with MS and disease outcome were investigated in a cohort of 203 patients with a diagnosis of relapsing-remitting and secondary-progressive MS showing any association with MS risk[103]. The expression of inhibitory receptor genes,

including *CTL-4, PD-1* and *TIM-3*, decreased in patients with MS as compared with healthy controls[104]. PD-1 is usually the most downregulated gene among the investigated inhibitors[104]. PD-1 was analysed on cytotoxic $CD8^+CD57^+$T cells in the peripheral blood of patients with relapsing–remitting MS and in T cells infiltrating the brain tissue in post-mortem MS cases. PD-1 increased in $CD8^+CD57^+$T cells in patients with stable disease and decreased in active-relapsing MS compared with healthy donors[105]. PD-1 was also found to increase in CD4 and CD8 T cells in MS patients early after autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplant[106]. A study of long-term immune reconstitution in MS patients after autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplant demonstrated that an early expansion of $CD8^+PD\text{-}1^+$T cells and $CD19^+PD\text{-}1^+$B cells is associated with favourable neurological outcomes[106]. PDL-1 was also investigated in post-mortem MS brain tissue. In MS lesions, glial cells with elevated PDL-1 and PD-1 expression were found absent in many infiltrating CD8 T cells[94]. Moreover, PDL-2 but not PDL-1 is expressed in human brain endothelial cells under basal culture conditions whilst both are upregulated under inflammatory condition[107]. PDL-1 or PDL-2 blockade lessens CD8 and CD4 T cell transmigration and CD8 T cells response[94]. Furthermore, PDL-1 is undetectable in the brain endothelium in normal tissues and MS lesions, even though PDL-2 is detectable in all blood vessels in normal brain tissue and in 50% of MS lesions[94].

MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS DIAGNOSIS AFTER CANCER IMMUNOTHERAPY

ICI treatments are immunotherapies engaged in restoring the immune response to tumour or viral infection by blocking the inhibitory pathways mediated by CTLA-4 and PD-1. ICI treatments have induced neurological immune-related adverse events. Patients with an MS history developed relapses after ICI treatment for melanoma[108,109] and a biopsy of the lesions revealed acute/inflammatory demyelination without any evidence of tumour cells[109]. A comparative functional profiling of myelin-reactive T cells of patients after ICI- treatment and 14 age/sex-matched patients with MS and healthy controls was performed. Myelin-reactive T cells isolated from ipilimumab-treated patients and MS patients showed a similar autoimmune response to myelin antigen but distinct from healthy controls. That confirmed that ICI treatment causes a reactivation of self-antigen cells in MS patients. The lack of outcomes to the ICI treatment in tumour is associated with an effect on the neurological condition. A case reported maintaining stable MS during ipilimumab treatment for melanoma that did not respond to the therapy, and the patient died from metastatic melanoma[110].

Furthermore, a 29-year-old man with metastatic melanoma underwent two cycles of ipilimumab before developing MS. The TCR repertoires of tumour-infiltrating T cells isolated from the primary melanoma and those of T cells isolated in two CSF samples, five and thirteen months after the second course of ipilimumab therapy, were analysed and compared. Distinct clonotypes of CD4 and CD8 T cells in the melanoma and the CSF were identified, demonstrating that the protective antitumor response and the anti-CNS response target different antigens[111]. Outcomes of MS relapse after ICI treatment were reported in a meta-analysis study including the published literature, the analysis of food and the drug administration adverse event reporting system database and a detailed case[112]. Fourteen cases were identified with MS, of which eight had a reported history of MS. All patients presented rapid disease progression, and two of them died from severe MS after ICI treatment[112]. The median age of MS diagnosis was 52.5 years, and ICI treatment was used as immunotherapy in several types of cancer: melanoma, non-small cell lung carcinoma, pleural mesothelioma, renal cell carcinoma and colorectal cancer[112]. ICI treatments such as nivolumab, ipilimumab, pembrolizumab and atezolizumab have caused MS relapse. In addition, Isitan and Wesley[113] described the case of a 49-year-old woman with a history of relapsing–remitting MS reported to develop a severe progressive MS after atezolizumab (monoclonal antibody targeting PD-L1) therapy for metastatic colonic adenocarcinoma. The women died after her first dose of atezolizumab. Although ICI therapy has given beneficial outcomes in cancer and infectious diseases, this treatment has shown neurological side effects in patients with MS history, inducing a rapid worsening of neurological conditions. The examined cases showed a worsening of the conditions associated with the activation of T

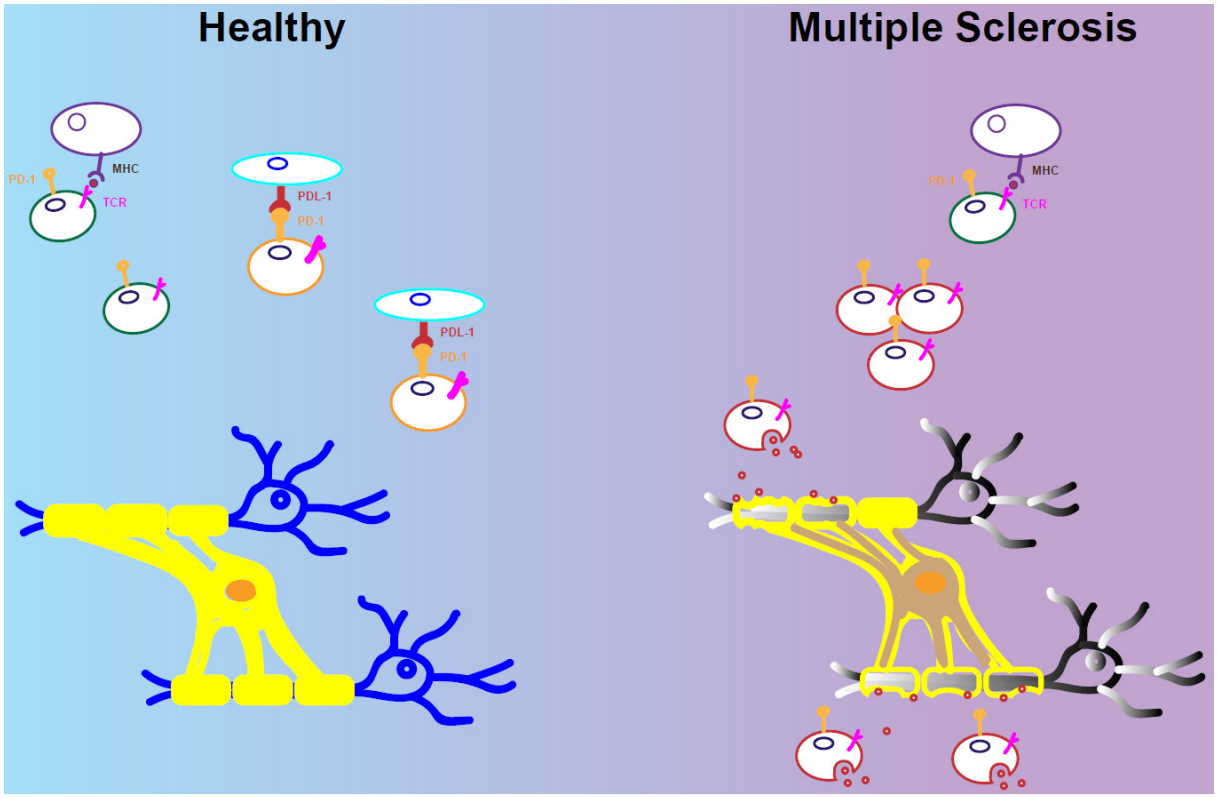


Figure 2. Immune checkpoints inhibitor treatment induces reactivation of multiple Sclerosis. PD-1 has been described on autoreactive T cells and TFH cells in multiple sclerosis. The link of PD-1 with the ligand PDL-1 controls T cell activation mantaining tollerance (Healthy). The blocking of PD-1 breaks the tollerance by reactivation of antigen-specific cells and causing damage of the target-cells with persistent inflammation in the CNS (Multiple Sclerosis). Contrary, depletion of PD-1$^+$ T cells eliminates activated antigen-specific cells reducing the T cell infiltrates and inflammation in the target-organ (PD-1 blocking). TFH: T Follicular helper cells

cells recognising self-antigen in the CNS. The relevance of PD-1 blocking and depletion of PD-1$^+$ cells in the pathogenesis of multiple sclerosis is shown in Figure 2.

CONCLUSION

PD-1 is an immune checkpoint inhibitor demonstrated to reduce the immune system response in cancer and chronic infection. Recent investigations have highlighted the dual role of PD-1 in immune tolerance, and the loss of PD-1 causes autoimmune diseases. Depletion of PD-1$^+$ T cells has given beneficial effect in autoimmune disease, slowing down the inflammation and disease progression. A decrease of PD-1 is predisposed to autoimmunity, as described in experiments of PD-1 blocking or knockout in mice. PD-1 could be a target of immunotherapies in MS, although further investigations are required to define the role of PD-1 in MS. The majority of information has been derived from animal models and sporadic studies in humans. To this purpose, expression and levels of PD-1 and PDL-1 in the peripheral blood, CSF and post-mortem MS brain tissues and the correlation of their levels with risk of MS disease and inflammation could make relevant contributions for considering PD-1 a target in MS immunotherapies.

DECLARATIONS

Authors' contributions

The author contributed solely to the article.

Availability of data and materials

Not applicable.

Financial support and sponsorship

This work was supported by Fondazione Italiana Sclerosi Multipla (ref. 2015/R/16 to PM), by Elena Pecci research project and Fondazione Careggi Onlus.

Conflicts of interest

The author declared that there are no conflicts of interest.

Ethical approval and consent to participate

Not applicable.

Consent for publication

Not applicable.

Copyright

© The Author(s) 2020.

REFERENCES

1. Zajac AJ, Blattman JN, Murali-Krishna K, Sourdive DJ, Suresh M, et al. Viral immune evasion due to persistence of activated T cells without effector function. J Exp Med 1998;188:2205-13.
2. Wherry EJ, Blattman JN, Murali-Krishna K, van der Most R, Ahmed R. Viral persistence alters CD8 T-cell immunodominance and tissue distribution and results in distinct stages of functional impairment. J Virol 2003;77:4911-27.
3. Battegay M, Moskophidis D, Rahemtulla A, Hengartner H, Mak TW, et al. Enhanced establishment of a virus carrier state in adult CD4+ T-cell-deficient mice. J Virol 1994;68:4700-4.
4. Sun JC, Williams MA, Bevan MJ. CD4+ T cells are required for the maintenance, not programming, of memory CD8+ T cells after acute infection. Nat Immunol 2004;5:927-33.
5. Janssen EM, Lemmens EE, Wolfe T, Christen U, von Herrath MG, et al. CD4+ T cells are required for secondary expansion and memory in CD8+ T lymphocytes. Nature 2003;421:852-6.
6. Day CL, Walker BD. Progress in defining CD4 helper cell responses in chronic viral infections. J Exp Med 2003;198:1773-7.
7. Urbani S, Amadei B, Fisicaro P, Tola D, Orlandini A, et al. Outcome of acute hepatitis C is related to virus-specific CD4 function and maturation of antiviral memory CD8 responses. Hepatology 2006;44:126-39.
8. Matloubian M, Concepcion RJ, Ahmed R. CD4+ T cells are required to sustain CD8+ cytotoxic T-cell responses during chronic viral infection. J Virol 1994;68:8056-63.
9. Fuller MJ, Zajac AJ. Ablation of CD8 and CD4 T cell responses by high viral loads. J Immunol 2003;170:477-86.
10. Moskophidis D, Lechner F, Pircher H, Zinkernagel RM. Virus persistence in acutely infected immunocompetent mice by exhaustion of antiviral cytotoxic effector T cells. Nature 1993;362:758-61.
11. Iyasere C, Tilton JC, Johnson AJ, Younes S, Yassine-Diab B, et al. Diminished proliferation of human immunodeficiency virus-specific CD4+ T cells is associated with diminished interleukin-2 (IL-2) production and is recovered by exogenous IL-2. J Virol 2003;77:10900-9.
12. Aubert RD, Kamphorst AO, Sarkar S, Vezys V, Ha SJ, et al. Antigen-specific CD4 T-cell help rescues exhausted CD8 T cells during chronic viral infection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2011;108:21182-7.
13. West EE, Youngblood B, Tan WG, Jin HT, Araki K, et al. Tight regulation of memory CD8(+) T cells limits their effectiveness during sustained high viral load. Immunity 2011;35:285-98.
14. do Canto LM, Farias TD, Medeiros MD, Coêlho CC, Sereia AF, et al. Association of PDCD1 polymorphism to systemic lupus erythematosus and rheumatoid arthritis susceptibility. Rev Bras Reumatol Engl Ed 2016;56:483-9.
15. Moser JM, Altman JD, Lukacher AE. Antiviral CD8+ T cell responses in neonatal mice: susceptibility to polyoma virus-induced tumors is associated with lack of cytotoxic function by viral antigen-specific T cells. J Exp Med 2001;193:595-606.
16. Krebs P, Scandella E, Odermatt B, Ludewig B. Rapid functional exhaustion and deletion of CTL following immunization with recombinant adenovirus. J Immunol 2005;174:4559-66.
17. Kostense S, Vandenberghe K, Joling J, Van Baarle D, Nanlohy N, et al. Persistent numbers of tetramer+ CD8(+) T cells, but loss of interferon-gamma+ HIV-specific T cells during progression to AIDS. Blood 2002;99:2505-11.
18. Gruener NH, Lechner F, Jung MC, Diepolder H, Gerlach T, et al. Sustained dysfunction of antiviral CD8+ T lymphocytes after infection with hepatitis C virus. J Virol 2001;75:5550-8.
19. Urbani S, Boni C, Missale G, Elia G, Cavallo C, et al. Virus-specific CD8+ lymphocytes share the same effector-memory phenotype but exhibit functional differences in acute hepatitis B and C. J Virol 2002;76:12423-34.
20. Barber DL, Wherry EJ, Masopust D, Zhu B, Allison JP, et al. Restoring function in exhausted CD8 T cells during chronic viral infection. Nature 2006;439:682-7.
21. Ajona D, Ortiz-Espinosa S, Lozano T, Exposito F, Calvo A, et al. Short-term starvation reduces IGF-1 levels to sensitize lung tumors to

PD-1 immune checkpoint blockade. Nat Cancer 2020:1:75–85.
22. Strauss L, Mahmoud MAA, Weaver JD, Tijaro-Ovalle NM, Christofides A, et al. Targeted deletion of PD-1 in myeloid cells induces antitumor immunity. Sci Immunol 2020;5:eaay1863.
23. McLeod DS, Cooper DS. The incidence and prevalence of thyroid autoimmunity. Endocrine 2012;42:252-65.
24. Armengol MP, Juan M, Lucas-Martín A, Fernández-Figueras MT, Jaraquemada D, et al. Thyroid autoimmune disease: demonstration of thyroid antigen-specific B cells and recombination-activating gene expression in chemokine-containing active intrathyroidal germinal centers. Am J Pathol 2001;159:861-73.
25. Ruiz-Riol M, Barnils Mdel P, Colobran Oriol R, Pla AS, Borràs Serres FE, et al. Analysis of the cumulative changes in Graves' disease thyroid glands points to IFN signature, plasmacytoid DCs and alternatively activated macrophages as chronicity determining factors. J Autoimmun 2011;36:189-200.
26. Chang LS, Barroso-Sousa R, Tolaney SM, Hodi FS, Kaiser UB, et al. Endocrine toxicity of cancer immunotherapy targeting immune checkpoints. Endocr Rev 2019;40:17-65.
27. Álvarez-Sierra D, Marín-Sánchez A, Ruiz-Blázquez P, de Jesús Gil C, Iglesias-Felip C, et al. Analysis of the PD-1/PD-L1 axis in human autoimmune thyroid disease: insights into pathogenesis and clues to immunotherapy associated thyroid autoimmunity. J Autoimmun 2019;103:102285.
28. Gravallese EM, Harada Y, Wang JT, Gorn AH, Thornhill TS, et al. Identification of cell types responsible for bone resorption in rheumatoid arthritis and juvenile rheumatoid arthritis. Am J Pathol 1998;152:943-51.
29. Gravallese EM, Manning C, Tsay A, Naito A, Pan C, et al. Synovial tissue in rheumatoid arthritis is a source of osteoclast differentiation factor. Arthritis Rheum 2000;43:250-8.
30. Shigeyama Y, Pap T, Kunzler P, Simmen BR, Gay RE, et al. Expression of osteoclast differentiation factor in rheumatoid arthritis. Arthritis Rheum 2000;43:2523-30.
31. Scott DL, Wolfe F, Huizinga TW. Rheumatoid arthritis. Lancet 2010;376:1094-108.
32. van der Woude D, Houwing-Duistermaat JJ, Toes RE, Huizinga TW, Thomson W, et al. Quantitative heritability of anti-citrullinated protein antibody-positive and anti-citrullinated protein antibody-negative rheumatoid arthritis. Arthritis Rheum 2009;60:916-23.
33. Carlens C, Hergens MP, Grunewald J, Ekbom A, Eklund A, et al. Smoking, use of moist snuff, and risk of chronic inflammatory diseases. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2010;181:1217-22.
34. Rao DA, Gurish MF, Marshall JL, Slowikowski K, Fonseka CY, et al. Pathologically expanded peripheral T helper cell subset drives B cells in rheumatoid arthritis. Nature 2017;542:110-4.
35. Feldmann M, Brennan FM, Maini RN. Rheumatoid arthritis. Cell 1996;85:307-10.
36. Choy EH, Isenberg DA, Garrood T, Farrow S, Ioannou Y, et al. Therapeutic benefit of blocking interleukin-6 activity with an anti-interleukin-6 receptor monoclonal antibody in rheumatoid arthritis: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, dose-escalation trial. Arthritis Rheum 2002;46:3143-50.
37. VanderBorght A, Geusens P, Raus J, Stinissen P. The autoimmune pathogenesis of rheumatoid arthritis: role of autoreactive T cells and new immunotherapies. Semin Arthritis Rheum 2001;31:160-75.
38. Kong EK, Prokunina-Olsson L, Wong WH, Lau CS, Chan TM, et al. A new haplotype of PDCD1 is associated with rheumatoid arthritis in Hong Kong Chinese. Arthritis Rheum 2005;52:1058-62.
39. Prokunina L, Padyukov L, Bennet A, de Faire U, Wiman B, et al. Association of the PD-1.3A allele of the PDCD1 gene in patients with rheumatoid arthritis negative for rheumatoid factor and the shared epitope. Arthritis Rheum 2004;50:1770-3.
40. Wan B, Nie H, Liu A, Feng G, He D, et al. Aberrant regulation of synovial T cell activation by soluble costimulatory molecules in rheumatoid arthritis. J Immunol. 2006;177:8844-50.
41. Li S, Liao W, Chen M, Shan S, Song Y, et al. Expression of programmed death-1 (PD-1) on CD4+ and CD8+ T cells in rheumatoid arthritis. Inflammation 2014;37:116-21.
42. Shivaleela C, Suresh BS, Kumar GV, Lakshmiprabha S. Morphological study of the supracondylar process of the humerus and its clinical implications. J Clin Diagn Res 2014;8:1-3.
43. Xu J, He Y, Wang J, Li X, Huang L, et al. Influence of the TNFSF4 rs1234315 polymorphism in the susceptibility to systemic lupus erythematosus and rheumatoid arthritis. Hum Immunol 2019;80:270-5.
44. Gambino CM, Aiello A, Accardi G, Caruso C, Candore G. Autoimmune diseases and 8.1 ancestral haplotype: An update. HLA 2018;92:137-43.
45. Gao J, Gai N, Wang L, Liu K, Liu XH, et al. Meta-analysis of programmed cell death 1 polymorphisms with systemic lupus erythematosus risk. Oncotarget 2017;8:36885-97.
46. Al-Motwee S, Jawdat D, Jehani GS, Anazi H, Shubaili A, et al. Association of HLA-DRB1*15 and HLADQB1*06 with SLE in Saudis. Ann Saudi Med 2013;33:229-34.
47. Gao Z, Li X, Peng T, Hu Z, Liu J, et al. Systemic lupus erythematosus with Guillian-Barre syndrome: a case report and literature review. Medicine (Baltimore) 2018;97:e11160.
48. Mahmoudi M, Rezaiemanesh A, Salmaninejad A, Harsini S, Poursani S, et al. PDCD1 single nucleotide genes polymorphisms confer susceptibility to juvenile-onset systemic lupus erythematosus. Autoimmunity 2015;48:488-93.
49. Ferreiros-Vidal I, Gomez-Reino JJ, Barros F, Carracedo A, Carreira P, et al. Association of PDCD1 with susceptibility to systemic lupus erythematosus: evidence of population-specific effects. Arthritis Rheum 2004;50:2590-7.
50. Rocha MC, Santos LM, Bagatin E, Cohen Tervaert JW, Damoiseaux JG, et al. Genetic polymorphisms and surface expression of CTLA-4 and PD-1 on T cells of silica-exposed workers. Int J Hyg Environ Health 2012;215:562-9.

51. Chua KH, Lian LH, Sim XJ, Cheah TE, Lau TP. Association between PDCD1 gene polymorphisms and risk of systemic lupus erythematosus in three main ethnic groups of the malaysian population. Int J Mol Sci 2015;16:9794-803.
52. Lee YH, Woo JH, Choi SJ, Ji JD, Song GG. Association of programmed cell death 1 polymorphisms and systemic lupus erythematosus: a meta-analysis. Lupus 2009;18:9-15.
53. Fathi F, Sadeghi E, Lotfi N, Hafezi H, Ahmadi M, et al. Effects of the programmed cell death 1 (PDCD1) polymorphisms in susceptibility to systemic lupus erythematosus. Int J Immunogenet 2020;47:57-64.
54. Bach JF. Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus as an autoimmune disease. Endocr Rev 1994;15:516-42.
55. Keir ME, Liang SC, Guleria I, Latchman YE, Qipo A, et al. Tissue expression of PD-L1 mediates peripheral T cell tolerance. J Exp Med 2006;203:883-95.
56. Wang J, Yoshida T, Nakaki F, Hiai H, Okazaki T, et al. Establishment of NOD-Pdcd1-/- mice as an efficient animal model of type I diabetes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2005;102:11823-8.
57. Ansari MJ, Salama AD, Chitnis T, Smith RN, Yagita H, et al. The programmed death-1 (PD-1) pathway regulates autoimmune diabetes in nonobese diabetic (NOD) mice. J Exp Med 2003;198:63-9.
58. Fife BT, Pauken KE. The role of the PD-1 pathway in autoimmunity and peripheral tolerance. Ann N Y Acad Sci 2011;1217:45-59.
59. Salama AD, Chitnis T, Imitola J, Ansari MJ, Akiba H, et al. Critical role of the programmed death-1 (PD-1) pathway in regulation of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Exp Med 2003;198:71-8.
60. Nielsen C, Hansen D, Husby S, Jacobsen BB, Lillevang ST. Association of a putative regulatory polymorphism in the PD-1 gene with susceptibility to type 1 diabetes. Tissue Antigens 2003;62:492-7.
61. Pauken KE, Jenkins MK, Azuma M, Fife BT. PD-1, but not PD-L1, expressed by islet-reactive CD4+ T cells suppresses infiltration of the pancreas during type 1 diabetes. Diabetes 2013;62:2859-69.
62. Zhao P, Wang P, Dong S, Zhou Z, Cao Y, et al. Depletion of PD-1-positive cells ameliorates autoimmune disease. Nat Biomed Eng 2019;3:292-305.
63. Sawcer S. The genetic aspects of multiple sclerosis. Ann Indian Acad Neurol 2009;12:206-14.
64. Gourraud PA, Harbo HF, Hauser SL, Baranzini SE. The genetics of multiple sclerosis: an up-to-date review. Immunol Rev 2012;248:87-103.
65. Choi SR, Howell OW, Carassiti D, Magliozzi R, Gveric D, et al. Meningeal inflammation plays a role in the pathology of primary progressive multiple sclerosis. Brain 2012;135:2925-37.
66. Komori M, Blake A, Greenwood M, Lin YC, Kosa P, et al. Cerebrospinal fluid markers reveal intrathecal inflammation in progressive multiple sclerosis. Ann Neurol 2015;78:3-20.
67. Magliozzi R, Marastoni D, Rossi S, Castellaro M, Mazziotti V, et al. Increase of CSF inflammatory profile in a case of highly active multiple sclerosis. BMC Neurol 2019;19:231.
68. Machado-Santos J, Saji E, Tröscher AR, Paunovic M, Liblau R, et al. The compartmentalized inflammatory response in the multiple sclerosis brain is composed of tissue-resident CD8+ T lymphocytes and B cells. Brain 2018;141:2066-82.
69. Polman CH, O'Connor PW, Havrdova E, Hutchinson M, Kappos L, et al.; AFFIRM Investigators. A randomized, placebo-controlled trial of natalizumab for relapsing multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med 2006;354:899-910.
70. Ben-Nun A, Cohen IR. Vaccination against autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE): attenuated autoimmune T lymphocytes confer resistance to induction of active EAE but not to EAE mediated by the intact T lymphocyte line. Eur J Immunol 1981;11:949-52.
71. Pettinelli CB, McFarlin DE. Adoptive transfer of experimental allergic encephalomyelitis in SJL/J mice after in vitro activation of lymph node cells by myelin basic protein: requirement for Lyt 1+ 2- T lymphocytes. J Immunol 1981;127:1420-3.
72. Renno T, Krakowski M, Piccirillo C, Lin JY, Owens T. TNF-alpha expression by resident microglia and infiltrating leukocytes in the central nervous system of mice with experimental allergic encephalomyelitis. Regulation by Th1 cytokines. J Immunol 1995;154:944-53.
73. Chitnis T, Najafian N, Abdallah KA, Dong V, Yagita H, et al. CD28-independent induction of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Clin Invest 2001;107:575-83.
74. Furtado GC, Marcondes MC, Latkowski JA, Tsai J, Wensky A, et al. Swift entry of myelin-specific T lymphocytes into the central nervous system in spontaneous autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol 2008;181:4648-55.
75. Ellmerich S, Mycko M, Takacs K, Waldner H, Wahid FN, et al. High incidence of spontaneous disease in an HLA-DR15 and TCR transgenic multiple sclerosis model. J Immunol 2005;174:1938-46.
76. Ferber IA, Brocke S, Taylor-Edwards C, Ridgway W, Dinisco C, et al. Mice with a disrupted IFN-gamma gene are susceptible to the induction of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE). J Immunol 1996;156:5-7.
77. Willenborg DO, Fordham S, Bernard CC, Cowden WB, Ramshaw IA. IFN-gamma plays a critical down-regulatory role in the induction and effector phase of myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein-induced autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol 1996;157:3223-7.
78. Ivanov II, McKenzie BS, Zhou L, Tadokoro CE, Lepelley A, et al. The orphan nuclear receptor RORgammat directs the differentiation program of proinflammatory IL-17+ T helper cells. Cell 2006;126:1121-33.
79. Langrish CL, Chen Y, Blumenschein WM, Mattson J, Basham B, et al. IL-23 drives a pathogenic T cell population that induces autoimmune inflammation. J Exp Med 2005;201:233-40.
80. Veldhoen M, Stockinger B. TGFbeta1, a "Jack of all trades": the link with pro-inflammatory IL-17-producing T cells. Trends Immunol 2006;27:358-61.
81. Jäger A, Dardalhon V, Sobel RA, Bettelli E, Kuchroo VK. Th1, Th17, and Th9 effector cells induce experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis with different pathological phenotypes. J Immunol 2009;183:7169-77.
82. Hofstetter HH, Ibrahim SM, Koczan D, Kruse N, Weishaupt A, et al. Therapeutic efficacy of IL-17 neutralization in murine experimental

autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Cell Immunol 2005;237:123-30.
83. Olivares-Villagómez D, Wang Y, Lafaille JJ. Regulatory CD4(+) T cells expressing endogenous T cell receptor chains protect myelin basic protein-specific transgenic mice from spontaneous autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Exp Med 1998;188:1883-94.
84. Viglietta V, Baecher-Allan C, Weiner HL, Hafler DA. Loss of functional suppression by CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells in patients with multiple sclerosis. J Exp Med 2004;199:971-9.
85. Blair PA, Chavez-Rueda KA, Evans JG, Shlomchik MJ, Eddaoudi A, et al. Selective targeting of B cells with agonistic anti-CD40 is an efficacious strategy for the generation of induced regulatory T2-like B cells and for the suppression of lupus in MRL/lpr mice. J Immunol 2009;182:3492-502.
86. Mauri C, Blair PA. Regulatory B cells in autoimmunity: developments and controversies. Nat Rev Rheumatol 2010;6:636-43.
87. Schafflick D, Xu CA, Hartlehnert M, Cole M, Schulte-Mecklenbeck A, et al. Integrated single cell analysis of blood and cerebrospinal fluid leukocytes in multiple sclerosis. Nat Commun 2020;11:247.
88. Guo J, Zhao C, Wu F, Tao L, Zhang C, et al. T follicular helper-like cells are involved in the pathogenesis of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Front Immunol 2018;9:944.
89. Shi J, Hou S, Fang Q, Liu X, Liu X, et al. PD-1 controls follicular T helper cell positioning and function. Immunity 2018;49:264-74.e4.
90. McKinney EF, Lee JC, Jayne DR, Lyons PA, Smith KG. T-cell exhaustion, co-stimulation and clinical outcome in autoimmunity and infection. Nature 2015;523:612-6.
91. Zhu B, Guleria I, Khosroshahi A, Chitnis T, Imitola J, et al. Differential role of programmed death-ligand 1 [corrected] and programmed death-ligand 2 [corrected] in regulating the susceptibility and chronic progression of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol 2006;176:3480-9.
92. Kroner A, Schwab N, Ip CW, Ortler S, Göbel K, et al. Accelerated course of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in PD-1-deficient central nervous system myelin mutants. Am J Pathol 2009;174:2290-9.
93. Carter LL, Leach MW, Azoitei ML, Cui J, Pelker JW, et al. PD-1/PD-L1, but not PD-1/PD-L2, interactions regulate the severity of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Neuroimmunol 2007;182:124-34.
94. Pittet CL, Newcombe J, Antel JP, Arbour N. The majority of infiltrating CD8 T lymphocytes in multiple sclerosis lesions is insensitive to enhanced PD-L1 levels on CNS cells. Glia 2011;59:841-56.
95. Chang CB, Lee SP, Chen WM, Wang CM, Song YC, et al. Dendritic cell upregulation of programmed death ligand-1 via DNA demethylation inhibits experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Autoimmun 2019:102362.
96. Jiang TT, Martinov T, Xin L, Kinder JM, Spanier JA, et al. Programmed death-1 culls peripheral accumulation of high-affinity autoreactive CD4 T cells to protect against autoimmunity. Cell Rep 2016;17:1783-94.
97. Mathis D, Benoist C. Aire. Annu Rev Immunol 2009;27:287-312.
98. Bautista JL, Lio CW, Lathrop SK, Forbush K, Liang Y, et al. Intraclonal competition limits the fate determination of regulatory T cells in the thymus. Nat Immunol 2009;10:610-7.
99. Leung MW, Shen S, Lafaille JJ. TCR-dependent differentiation of thymic Foxp3+ cells is limited to small clonal sizes. J Exp Med 2009;206:2121-30.
100. Probst HC, McCoy K, Okazaki T, Honjo T, van den Broek M. Resting dendritic cells induce peripheral CD8+ T cell tolerance through PD-1 and CTLA-4. Nat Immunol 2005;6:280-6.
101. Kroner A, Mehling M, Hemmer B, Rieckmann P, Toyka KV, et al. A PD-1 polymorphism is associated with disease progression in multiple sclerosis. Ann Neurol 2005;58:50-7.
102. Javan MR, Aslani S, Zamani MR, Rostamnejad J, Asadi M, et al. Downregulation of immunosuppressive molecules, PD-1 and PD-L1 but not PD-L2, in the patients with multiple sclerosis. Iran J Allergy Asthma Immunol 2016;15:296-302.
103. Pawlak-Adamska E, Nowak O, Karabon L, Pokryszko-Dragan A, Partyka A, et al. PD-1 gene polymorphic variation is linked with first symptom of disease and severity of relapsing-remitting form of MS. J Neuroimmunol 2017;305:115-27.
104. Mohammadzadeh A, Rad IA, Ahmadi-Salmasi B. CTLA-4, PD-1 and TIM-3 expression predominantly downregulated in MS patients. J Neuroimmunol 2018;323:105-8.
105. Cencioni MT, Magliozzi R, Nicholas R, Ali R, Malik O, et al. Programmed death 1 is highly expressed on CD8+ CD57+ T cells in patients with stable multiple sclerosis and inhibits their cytotoxic response to Epstein-Barr virus. Immunology 2017;152:660-76.
106. Arruda LCM, de Azevedo JTC, de Oliveira GLV, Scortegagna GT, Rodrigues ES, et al. Immunological correlates of favorable long-term clinical outcome in multiple sclerosis patients after autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Clin Immunol 2016;169:47-57.
107. Pittet CL, Newcombe J, Prat A, Arbour N. Human brain endothelial cells endeavor to immunoregulate CD8 T cells via PD-1 ligand expression in multiple sclerosis. J Neuroinflammation 2011;8:155.
108. Gettings EJ, Hackett CT, Scott TF. Severe relapse in a multiple sclerosis patient associated with ipilimumab treatment of melanoma. Mult Scler 2015;21:670.
109. Cao Y, Nylander A, Ramanan S, Goods BA, Ponath G, et al. CNS demyelination and enhanced myelin-reactive responses after ipilimumab treatment. Neurology 2016;86:1553-6.
110. Kyi C, Carvajal RD, Wolchok JD, Postow MA. Ipilimumab in patients with melanoma and autoimmune disease. J Immunother Cancer 2014;2:35.
111. Gerdes LA, Held K, Beltrán E, Berking C, Prinz JC, et al. CTLA4 as immunological checkpoint in the development of multiple sclerosis. Ann Neurol 2016;80:294-300.
112. Garcia CR, Jayswal R, Adams V, Anthony LB, Villano JL. Multiple Sclerosis outcomes after cancer immunotherapy. Clin Transl Oncol 2019; Epub 2019 Feb 20.
113. Isitan C, Wesley S. Safety of checkpoint inhibitors for cancer treatment in patients with multiple sclerosis: a case report (P1.7-006). Neurology 2019;92 (15 Supplement):P1.7-006.

Nociti. *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:291-9
DOI: 10.20517/2347-8659.2020.25

Neuroimmunology and Neuroinflammation

Review

Open Access

What is the role of Brain derived neurotrophic factor in Multiple Sclerosis neuroinflammation?

Viviana Nociti[1,2]

[1]Department of Neurosciences, Institute of Neurology, Fondazione Policlinico Universitario "A. Gemelli" IRCCS, Rome 00168, Italy.
[2]Catholic University of Sacred Heart, Rome 00168, Italy.

Correspondence to: Dr. Viviana Nociti, Department of Neurosciences, Institute of Neurology, Fondazione Policlinico Universitario "A. Gemelli" IRCCS, Rome 00168, Italy; Catholic University of Sacred Heart, Largo Agostino Gemelli 8, Rome 00168, Italy. E-mail: viviana.nociti@policlinicogemelli.it

How to cite this article: Nociti V. What is the role of Brain derived neurotrophic factor in Multiple Sclerosis neuroinflammation? *Neuroimmunol Neuroinflammation* 2020;7:291-9. http://dx.doi.org/10.20517/2347-8659.2020.25

Received: 23 Mar 2020 **First Decision**: 16 Jun 2020 **Revised**: 26 Jun 2020 **Accepted**: 7 Jul 2020 **Available online**: 15 Aug 2020

Academic Editor: Roberta Magliozzi **Copy Editor**: Cai-Hong Wang **Production Editor**: Jing Yu

Abstract

Multiple Sclerosis (MS) is a chronic, inflammatory and degenerative disease of the central nervous system (CNS) with an unknown etiology. The MS pathophysiology is due to altered bidirectional interactions between several immune cell types in the periphery (such as T and B cells, myeloid cells) and resident CNS cells (such as microglia and astrocytes). It is also known that inflammatory responses have both detrimental and neuroprotective effects. The release of brain derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) by immune cells, in both peripheral blood and into inflammatory lesions in MS, but also by microglia and astrocytes, into the CNS, seems to be a possible mechanism for this neuroprotective effect. So far, the link between BDNF and neuroinflammation has been poorly investigated. A better understanding of this link could help in the development of new therapeutic strategies for MS. In this review, the role of BDNF in MS will be discussed as well as its possible alternative as an innovative therapeutic target.

Keywords: Multiple sclerosis, neuroinflammation, brain derived neurotrophic factor, neuroprotection, neurotrophin, therapeutic target

INTRODUCTION

Multiple Sclerosis (MS) is a chronic, inflammatory and degenerative disease of the central nervous system (CNS)[1,2] of which the etiology is unknown. The clinical course of MS is characterized by fluctuating

© The Author(s) 2020. **Open Access** This article is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/), which permits unrestricted use, sharing, adaptation, distribution and reproduction in any medium or format, for any purpose, even commercially, as long as you give appropriate credit to the original author(s) and the source, provide a link to the Creative Commons license, and indicate if changes were made.

neurological symptoms in most patients, with early clinical relapsing-remitting episodes and/or radiological worsening and different degrees of recovery (RRMS)[3]. The relapsing-remitting phase, in most patients, is subsequently followed by a chronic progressive phase; approximately 10%-15% of patients show a progressive form of the disease from onset.

For some authors, MS is an exclusive autoimmune inflammatory disease caused by dysregulated auto-reactive immune cells that traverse the blood-brain barrier (BBB) into the CNS parenchyma, attacking various cell types (the "outside-in" autoimmune hypothesis). For other authors it is a primary degenerative disease (the "inside-out" hypothesis) in which inflammation is secondary to the release of auto-antigens (components of myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein, myelin basic protein, and proteolipid protein), promoting autoimmunity[4]. Thus far, it is difficult to discern whether the inflammatory processes of MS are a product or a cause for neurodegeneration with a background autoimmune etiology. In all phases of the disease both immune and degenerative processes appear to coexist and this makes it difficult to definitively resolve the "outside-in" *vs*. "inside-out" controversy.

Despite this, there is well-documented evidence that, in MS, an uncontrolled inflammatory response in the CNS (neuroinflammation) causes destruction through high levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines, proteases, glutamate, and free radicals. Consequently, immunomodulatory drugs that reduce or suppress the activity of immune cells have been successfully used to reduce clinical relapses in MS and/or neuroradiological "activity", which are associated with the entry of leukocytes through the BBB[5]. Sustained disability, however, is due to a progressive neurodegenerative process, ending with axonal loss and brain atrophy, primary or secondary to the peripheral and compartmentalized inflammation in the CNS[6]. To date, no approved therapy has provided marked neuroprotective effects nor have commonly anti-inflammatory therapies, used in the treatment of the disease, showed great efficacy in the progressive phase of MS.

Neuroinflammation have not only harmful but also neuroprotective effects[7,8]. In MS and other neurological diseases, the reparative activities of inflammatory response have been demonstrated[9]. Therefore, some authors introduced the concept of "neuroprotective autoimmunity"[10,11]. The release of neurotrophins by immune cells in both peripheral blood and directly into inflammatory lesions in MS[12,13], but also by microglia and astrocytes in the CNS, stimulating neuronal growth and survival, seems to be a possible mechanism for this neuroprotective effect[14]. Among neurotrophins, brain derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) seems to be a good candidate in promoting the beneficial effects of inflammation in MS.

In this review, the role of BDNF in MS neuroinflammation and as a novel therapeutic target will be discussed.

NEUROINFLAMMATION: THE DETRIMENTAL EFFECT

MS pathophysiology is characterized by altered bidirectional interactions between several immune cell types in the periphery and resident cells of the CNS, such as microglia and astrocytes[15]. The MS relapses, typical in the early phases of disease, are characterized by the infiltration of pro inflammatory CNS-specific effector T cells (CD4+ and CD8+ T cells), B cells and myeloid cells into the CNS parenchyma, that are activated and/or regulated in an aberrantly way[16]. The altered function of regulatory T (Treg) cells and resistance of CNS-specific effector T cells to Treg cell-mediated regulation could be a possible cause of the neuroinflammation[17-21]. Furthermore, CNS-resident cells, that secrete many inflammatory mediators, recruit inflammatory cells into the CNS. Microglia and astrocytes in particular, can also produce cytokines, chemokines and reactive oxygen species in the presence of homeostatic disturbance, promoting and sustaining axonal damage and neurodegeneration in MS[16]. Therefore, both peripheral and CNS-compartmentalized inflammatory mechanisms contribute to MS pathogenesis[22].

In the advanced stages of the disease, the infiltration of immune cells into the CNS is reduced, whereas ongoing CNS-compartmentalized inflammation seems to dominate progressive phases of MS. During this progressive phase, the role of B cells in driving inflammation seems to be prominent, particularly within meningeal inflammation[23]. In this phase, the B cell functions are antibody production, cytokine secretion, antigen presentation and ectopic formation of follicle-like structures[23-25]. The latter seem to maintain a high level of humoral response and other autoimmune mechanisms, in the CNS, independently from peripheral inflammation. This is very relevant during progressive MS phase, with the BBB being relatively intact and the contribution to disease from entry of peripheral immune cells into the brain fairly exiguous[26].

Activated microglia also plays a central role in neuroinflammation because it can sustain ongoing inflammation[27]. Microglia activation, in MS, is diffusely present in the lesions, in normal-appearing white and in grey matter[28]. Activated microglia, secreting pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1, IL-6, TNF-alfa, and IFN, promoting phagocytic activity, and presenting antigens via MHC Class II to CD4+ T cells[27], causes damage to oligodendrocytes; moreover, microglia inducing mitochondrial dysfunction, through reactive oxygen and nitrogen species, contributes to neuronal damage[29].

In addition, activation of astrocytes into demyelinating lesions contribute to oligodendrocyte injury and axonal degeneration[30]. So far, theories of either innate immune cells in the CNS are dysregulated and drive primary degeneration, or react against an unidentified primary injury causing tissue damage remain unknown.

NEUROINFLAMMATION IN MS: THE NEUROPROTECTIVE EFFECT

Evidence for neuroprotective functions of immune cells

Some evidences have unexpectedly shown that some cells of the immune system might have a protective function during inflammation. This neuroprotective effect may be partially mediated with the production of anti-inflammatory cytokines (TGF-beta, IL-10 *etc.*) and secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines (such as IL-6, IFN-gamma, TNF-alfa) in a dose- and time-dependent manner[31-33]. Immune cells also induce neuroprotection by production and local secretion of neurotrophic factors[11,12,34]. neural growth factor (NGF) was the first neurotrophin shown to be produced by T and B lymphocytes, macrophages, and mastcells[35]. The expression of BDNF by immune cells was also subsequently described[12]. In particular, CD4+ and CD8+ T lymphocytes, B lymphocytes, and monocytes in the human peripheral immune system can produce BDNF[12]. Moreover, neurotrophin receptors expressed by immune cells can also be targeted by autocrine or paracrine neurotrophin actions. Therefore, neurotrophins seem to mediate bidirectional cross-talk between the immune and nervous systems[11].

Evidence for neuroprotective function of microglia and astrocytes

Resident CNS cells also exercise a defensive action against immune-mediated attacks, aside from being involved in neuroinflammation. Microglia has an important role in neuroprotection and this action seems to be time-dependent. Acutely activated microglia produces inflammatory mediators that recruit other activated immune cells, amplifying the inflammatory damage, but chronically activated microglia may have a neuroprotective effect supporting the growth and survival of neural progenitor stem cells[31,36]. On oligodendrocyte precursor cells microglia seems to have always direct protective action, being the detrimental action mediated by astrocytes[37].

The neuroprotective function of microglia is mediated by different mechanisms such as debris clearance, production of growth factors (overall BDNF), production of the immunosuppressive cytokine IL-10 and neuronal circuit-shaping[27,38].

TGF-beta secretion and CTLA-4 expression produced by neurons induce CD4+CD25-effector T cells to take regulatory phenotype that exerts bystander suppression in experimental autoimmune

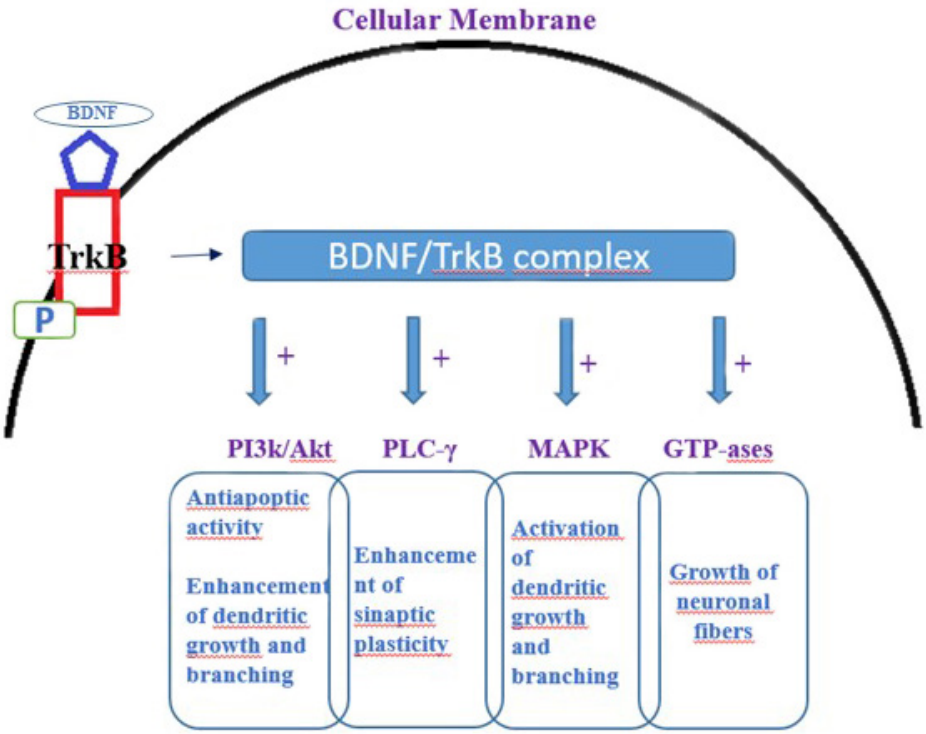


Figure 1. Intracellular signaling cascades induced by interaction of mature (m-)BDNF with TrkB receptor. Binding of BDNF to TrkB receptor induces its phosphorylation and translocation to cellular membrane. The BDNF/TrkB receptor complex triggers signaling pathways mediated by activation of PI3K, MAPK, PLC-γ, and GTP-ases. All these pathways induced by BDNF cause the enhancement/activation of dendritic growth and branching and growth of neuronal fibers. TrkB: tyrosine kinase B; BDNF: brain derived neurotrophic factor; PI3K: phosphoinositide 3-kinase; Akt: Protein kinase B; PLC: phospholipase C; MAPK: mitogen-activated protein kinase; TrkB: tropomyosin receptor kinase B

encephalomyelitis (EAE)[39]. Self-associated molecular patterns expressed by resident neurons and astrocytes drive innate cell immune responses toward a less inflammatory response[40]. Astrocytes also cause apoptosis of activated immune cells and drive microglial activity towards a less inflammatory pattern[41,42].

THE ROLE OF BDNF IN MS NEUROINFLAMMATION

BDNF

BDNF is a member of the neurotrophins gene family that includes also NGF and neurotrophins 3 and 4 (NT3 and NT4)[43] and is the neurotrophin most expressed in the brain by numerous cell types[44,45]. It plays a critical role on neuronal and oligodendroglial growth and survival, in healthy brains and in several neurologic diseases[46]. Interestingly, BDNF also modulates inflammatory homeostasis in the injured CNS[47,48].

The BDNF gene consist of a common 3′-exon that encodes the pro-BDNF region of the protein, and several species-dependent 5′-noncoding, promoter-regulated regions, terminating in a coding 5′-exon that contain the gene expression[49,50]. BDNF is translated as a proneurotrophin (pro-BDNF) that can be cut in the mature form. Both mature BDNF and pro-BDNF bind to the low affinity p75 neurotrophin receptor, activating the apoptosis cascade[51,52]. Mature BDNF binds to its high-affinity receptor tyrosine kinase B (TrkB), activating several signalling cascades[53,54] [Figure 1]. Among these, an increase in Ca^{2+} intake, phosphorylation of transcription factors, and *de novo* expression of the *BDNF* gene can be induced[53]. The nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-κB), a transcription factor with the ability to increase the expression of several pro- and antiapoptotic genes, including BDNF, is one of the main factors of inflammatory activation[55]. The

binding of BDNF to the TrkB receptor can also induce the expression of NF-κB but, the pathways for this modulation are not yet completely understood[54]. Thus, the role of BDNF in neuroinflammation, is strongly linked to its ability to induce, and being induced by, NF-κB.

Lai *et al.*[56] recently demonstrated that BDNF modulates inflammatory homeostasis, reducing inflammatory activity on microglia also through the erythropoietin and sonic hedgehog signalling pathways. BDNF may also influence the microglia inflammatory response differently in male and females probably by driving activated microglia responses toward a less inflammatory pattern in females[57].

The understanding of BDNF function in humans has greatly benefited from the identification of an SNP in the *BDNF* gene that causes a valine (Val) to methionine (Met) substitution at codon 66 (Val66Met, c.196G>A, dbSNP: rs6265). In this Met variant form of BDNF carriers, that is, BDNF Val/Met heterozygotes and Met/Met homozygotes, the pro-domain structure of the gene is altered[58]. The polymorphism can potentially alter BDNF protein-protein interactions, binding affinities, localisation, or conformational stability of the protein. Whether the polymorphism has any significant impact on the proteome profile or posttranslational modifications of various proteins in the neuronal tissues or body fluids is currently unknown[58]. Several studies have emerged implicating the association or otherwise of this polymorphism with MS. So far, no conclusive data have been published[59]. New advances in the epigenetic field, highlight the role of BDNF antisense RNA (BDNF-AS), a naturally conserved long noncoding RNA, and of DNA methylation, in the regulation of BDNF expression in MS and in several neurological diseases[60-63]. So far, only few studies have been published on this argument[64].

BDNF in MS

BDNF is the neurotrophin which is expressed more in inflammatory brain lesions of MS patients[12,13]. A significant amount of BDNF was found in infiltrating immune cells, overall in T cells and macrophages, and in neurons and astrocytes[11]. BDNF is expressed by immune cells in actively demyelinating areas of MS lesions but not in lesions without ongoing myelin breakdown. Moreover, the neurotrophin is expressed more in the actively demyelinating edge of the plaque in the early phase of its development. It is released near to axons, not directly attacked by activated immune system cells but is at high risk of bystander damage[13]. Outside MS lesions, neurons are the major source of BDNF[13]. The literature data agree in showing that neurons are the major targets for neurotrophic interactions in the CNS. In particular, the full-length isoforms of TrkB (receptor for BDNF and NT4/5) and TrkC (receptor for NT3) are usually expressed on neuronal cells. Neurons close to MS plaques showed a prominent expression of full-length TrkB (gp145TrkB)[11]. Moreover, TrkB is upregulated in a part of damaged neurons. It is known that BDNF can be anterogradely transported and released by neurons. This process is up-regulated after axonal injury and transection[65]. The common occurrence of axonal damage in MS suggests that neuronal BDNF might contribute to endogenous neurotrophic support in MS plaques[66,67].

In older and chronic MS plaques, endogenous neurotrophins are low[13]. This may be one cause for the ongoing axonal degeneration in the chronic progressive stage of MS[68-70].

In the relapsing phase, levels of BDNF are generally reported to be increased in peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) and serum[71,72], but Azoulay *et al.*[73] found less BDNF in the serum of RRMS patients with no difference in remission and relapse phases. In MS patients, serum and CSF levels and PBMC secretion of BDNF are reduced compared to healthy controls[74,75]. In line with neuropathological findings[68-70], BDNF production by immune cells in RRMS patients is higher compared to progressive MS, suggesting again that progression of MS may be due to a failure of neuroprotection and neurorepair functions under chronic injury[72,75].

Numerous studies tried to correlate the role of rs6265 BDNF polymorphism with the prognosis of MS patients, with conflicting data so that other mechanisms could be involved in the modulation of BDNF gene[59]. Latest advances in the field of epigenetics highlight the role of epigenetic mechanisms, such as methylation, in controlling key biological processes. The presence of rs6265 SNP is not a prognostic factor for reaching a more severe Expanded Disability Status Scale (EDSS)[64]. When the percentage of methylation of the *BDNF* gene is considered, a lower percentage is associated with higher odds in achieving significant disability regardless of its polymorphism. Being a higher methylation a "silencer" of the gene, a lower inhibition of the gene correlates with a high probability in achieving an EDSS score of 6.0. Patients with more severe inflammation could appeal to a de-methylation to have a higher secretion of BDNF, preserving better CNS functions. The same patients tend to reach a more severe disability score by depleting the functional reserves of the brain at a faster rate[64]. If BDNF methylation is considered as an epiphenomenon of the disease activity (or better of the neuroinflammation status), it might help to differentiate patients with a higher degree of inflammation from patients with a lower ones. If these data will be confirmed by other studies, BDNF rs6265 polymorphism methylation could become a valid prognostic factor in MS to precociously recognise patients with a more severe disease from those with a milder one[64].

BDNF AS PROMISING THERAPY IN MS

MS, but also many other CNS diseases, are tricky to treat due to the difficulty of drugs to cross the BBB. To do this, a drug must have the appropriate physicochemical properties. Alternatively, some drugs may be directly injected into the CNS but these invasive procedures are not risk-free.

Most available MS treatment have an exclusive anti-inflammatory effect helpful in reducing clinical and neuroradiological relapses but ineffective in preventing axonal loss and neurodegeneration. On the other hand, neuroprotective and/or remyelinating molecules failed to achieve the primary endpoint in clinical trials[76,77]. Conversely, brain delivery of BDNF has a potential role in reversing neurodegenerative diseases[78,79] but, so far, not through systemic administration. Therefore, there is an urgent need for development of a non-invasive trans-BBB delivery method. All the therapeutic strategies designed for delivery of neurotrophins are well summarised in the review by Huang and Dreyfus[80].

Recently, the possibility to deliver BDNF in a non-invasive way into the CNS through a BBB modulator, the ADTC5, has been found[81]. BDNF + ADTC5 delivered to the brains of mice with RR-EAE via systemic administration, significantly improve the clinical body scores of EAE mice and induce remyelination, compared to controls. Further studies are needed to confirm these data and to definitively find the best way to delivery BDNF in CNS via systemic administration.

CONCLUSION

Few studies investigated the link between BDNF and neuroinflammation even if, in many brain disorders, neuroinflammation and altered BDNF expression are commonly found. Better understanding of the interaction between BDNF and neuroinflammation could help in improving the knowledge of diseases pathogenesis and in developing of new therapeutic strategies for CNS disorders.

In MS, a large body of neuropathological, experimental and clinical evidences shows that BDNF may play an important role in neuroinflammation modulation, neuroprotection and neurorepair. These data make BDNF a good candidate for new therapeutic strategies in MS. But, when growth factors are considered as possible treatments in brain disease, some issues have to be taken into account: first, how to increase growth factors levels within specific regions of the CNS; second, how to optimize entry of growth factors from the periphery; third, to define the rate at which BDNF is taken up by the brain; fourth, the need to better understand the pharmacological characteristics of BDNF-based substances. Further studies are needed to define these aspects.

However, the challenge for neuroprotection in MS is greater than in other brain disease, because MS requires the association of both neuroprotective and immunomodulation therapies. Any exclusive inflammatory suppression is likely required to abolish both destructive and protective components and any neuroprotective treatment cannot work without a powerful anti-inflammatory therapy.

DECLARATIONS

Authors' contributions

The author contributed solely to the article.

Availability of data and materials

Not applicable.

Financial support and sponsorship

None.

Conflicts of interest

The author declared that there are no conflicts of interest.

Ethical approval and consent to participate

Not applicable.

Consent for publication

Not applicable.

Copyright

© The Author(s) 2020.

REFERENCES

1. Naegele M, Martin R. The good and the bad of neuroinflammation in multiple sclerosis. Handb Clin Neurol 2014;122:59-87.
2. Gold R, Montalban X. Multiple sclerosis: more pieces of the immunological puzzle. Lancet Neurol 2012;11:9-10.
3. Polman CH, Reingold SC, Banwell B, Clanet M, Cohen JA, et al. Diagnostic criteria for multiple sclerosis: 2010 revisions to the McDonald criteria. Ann Neurol 2011;69:292-302.
4. Stys PK, Tsutsui S. Recent advances in understanding multiple sclerosis. F1000Res 2019;8:2100.
5. Thompson AJ, Baranzini SE, Geurts J, Hemmer B, Ciccarelli O. Multiple sclerosis. Lancet 2018;391:1622-36.
6. Machado-Santos J, Saji E, Tröscher AR, Paunovic M, Liblau R, et al. The compartmentalized inflammatory response in the multiple sclerosis brain is composed of tissue-resident CD8+ T lymphocytes and B cells. Brain 2018;141:2066-82.
7. Hammarberg H, Lidman O, Lundberg C, Eltayeb SY, Gielen AW, et al. Neuroprotection by encephalomyelitis: rescue of mechanically injured neurons and neurotrophin production by CNS-infiltrating T and natural killer cells. J Neurosci 2000;20:5283-91.
8. Moalem G, Leibowitz-Amit R, Yoles E, Mor F, Cohen IR, et al. Autoimmune T cells protect neurons from secondary degeneration after central nervous system axotomy. Nat Med 1999;5:49-55.
9. Graber JJ, Dhib-Jalbut S. Protective autoimmunity in the nervous system. Pharmacol Ther 2009;121:147-59.
10. Hohlfeld R, Kerschensteiner M, Stadelmann C, Lassmann H, Wekerle H. The neuroprotective effect of inflammation: implications for the therapy of multiple sclerosis. Neurol Sci 2006;27 Suppl 1:S1-7.
11. Kerschensteiner M, Stadelmann C, Dechant G, Wekerle H, Hohlfeld R. Neurotrophic cross-talk between the nervous and immune systems: implications for neurological diseases. Ann Neurol 2003;53:292-304.
12. Kerschensteiner M, Gallmeier E, Behrens L, Leal VV, Misgeld T, et al. Activated human T cells, B cells, and monocytes produce brain-derived neurotrophic factor in vitro and in inflammatory brain lesions: a neuroprotective role of inflammation? J Exp Med 1999;189:865-70.
13. Stadelmann C, Kerschensteiner M, Misgeld T, Brück W, Hohlfeld R, et al. BDNF and gp145trkB in multiple sclerosis brain lesions: neuroprotective interactions between immune and neuronal cells? Brain 2002;125:75-85.
14. De Santi L, Polimeni G, Cuzzocrea S, Esposito E, Sessa E, et al. Neuroinflammation and neuroprotection: an update on (future) neurotrophin-related strategies in multiple sclerosis treatment. Curr Med Chem 2011;18:1775-84.
15. Li R, Patterson K, Bar-Or A. Reassessing the contributions of B cells in multiple sclerosis. Nat Rev Immunol 2018;19:696-707.

16. Dendrou CA, Fugger L, Friese MA. Immunopathology of multiple sclerosis. Nat Rev Immunol 2015;15:545-58.
17. Kaskow BJ, Baecher-Allan C. Effector T cells in multiple sclerosis. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 2018;8:a029025.
18. Kitz A, Singer E, Hafler D. Regulatory T cells: from discovery to autoimmunity. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 2018;8:a029041.
19. Viglietta V, Baecher-Allan C, Weiner HL, Hafler DA. Loss of functional suppression by CD4+ CD25+ regulatory T cells in patients with multiple sclerosis. J Exp Med 2004;199:971-9.
20. Venken K, Hellings N, Thewissen M, Somers V, Hensen K, et al. Compromised CD4+ CD25(high) regulatory T-cell function in patients with relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis is correlated with a reduced frequency of FOXP3-positive cells and reduced FOXP3 expression at the single-cell level. Immunology 2008;123:79-89.
21. Frisullo G, Nociti V, Iorio R, Patanella AK, Caggiula M, et al. Regulatory T cells fail to suppress CD4T+-bet+ T cells in relapsing multiple sclerosis patients. Immunology 2009;127:418-28.
22. Filippi M, Bar-Or A, Piehl F, Preziosa P, Solari A, et al. Multiple sclerosis. Nat Rev Dis Primers 2018;4:43.
23. Magliozzi R, Howell O, Vora A, Serafini B, Nicholas R, et al. Meningeal B-cell follicles in secondary progressive multiple sclerosis associate with early onset of disease and severe cortical pathology. Brain 2007;130:1089-104.
24. Aloisi F, Pujol-Borrell R. Lymphoid neogenesis in chronic inflammatory diseases. Nat Rev Immunol 2006;6:205-17.
25. Serafini B, Rosicarelli B, Magliozzi R, Stigliano E, Aloisi F. Detection of ectopic B-cell follicles with germinal centers in the meninges of patients with secondary progressive multiple sclerosis. Brain Pathol 2004;14:164-74.
26. Correale J, Gaitán MI, Ysrraelit MC, Fiol MP. Progressive multiple sclerosis: from pathogenic mechanisms to treatment. Brain 2017;140:527-46.
27. Correale J. The role of microglial activation in disease progression. Mult Scler 2014;20:1288-95.
28. Kutzelnigg A, Lucchinetti CF, Stadelmann C, Brück W, Rauschka H, et al. Cortical demyelination and diffuse white matter injury in multiple sclerosis. Brain 2005;128:2705-12.
29. Nikić I, Merkler D, Sorbara C, Brinkoetter M, Kreutzfeldt M, et al. A reversible form of axon damage in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis and multiple sclerosis. Nat Med 2011;17:495-9.
30. Correale J, Farez MF. The Role of Astrocytes in Multiple Sclerosis Progression. Front Neurol 2015;6:180.
31. Butovsky O, Ziv Y, Schwartz A, Landa G, Talpalar AE, et al. Microglia activated by IL-4 or IFN-gamma differentially induce neurogenesis and oligodendrogenesis from adult stem/progenitor cells. Mol Cell Neurosci 2006;31:149-60.
32. Arnett HA, Mason J, Marino M, Suzuki K, Matsushima GK, et al. TNF alpha promotes proliferation of oligodendrocyte progenitors and remyelination. Nat Neurosci 2001;4:1116-22.
33. Arnett HA, Wang Y, Matsushima GK, Suzuki K, Ting JP. Functional genomic analysis of remyelination reveals importance of inflammation in oligodendrocyte regeneration. J Neurosci 2003;23:9824-32.
34. Torcia M1, Bracci-Laudiero L, Lucibello M, Nencioni L, Labardi D, et al. Nerve growth factor is an autocrine survival factor for memory B lymphocytes. Cell 1996;85:345-56.
35. Ehrhard PB, Erb P, Graumann U, Otten U. Expression of nerve growth factor and nerve growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase Trk in activated CD4-positive T-cell clones. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1993;90:10984-8.
36. Aarum J, Sandberg K, Haeberlein SL, Persson MA. Migration and differentiation of neural precursor cells can be directed by microglia. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2003;100:15983-8.
37. Lombardi M, Parolisi R, Scaroni F, Bonfanti E, Gualerzi A, et al. Detrimental and protective action of microglial extracellular vesicles on myelin lesions: astrocyte involvement in remyelination failure. Acta Neuropathol 2019;138:987-1012.
38. Kotter MR, Setzu A, Sim FJ, Van Rooijen N, Franklin RJ. Macrophage depletion impairs oligodendrocyte remyelination following lysolecithin-induced demyelination. Glia 2001;35:204-12.
39. Liu Y, Teige I, Birnir B, Issazadeh-Navikas S. Neuron-mediated generation of regulatory T cells from encephalitogenic T cells suppresses EAE. Nat Med 2006;12:518-25.
40. Griffiths M1, Neal JW, Gasque P. Innate immunity and protective neuroinflammation: new emphasis on the role of neuroimmune regulatory proteins. Int Rev Neurobiol 2007;82:29-55.
41. Pender MP1, Rist MJ. Apoptosis of inflammatory cells in immune control of the nervous system: role of glia. Glia 2001;36:137-44.
42. Aloisi F, Penna G, Cerase J, Menéndez Iglesias B, Adorini L. IL-12 production by central nervous system microglia is inhibited by astrocytes. J Immunol 1997;159:1604-12.
43. Lewin GR, Barde YA. Physiology of the neurotrophins. Annu Rev Neurosci 1996;19:289-317.
44. Poo MM. Neurotrophins as synaptic modulators. Nat Rev Neurosci 2001;2:24-32.
45. Blesch A. Neurotrophic factors in neurodegeneration. Brain Pathol 2006;16:295-303.
46. Hu Y, Russek SJ. BDNF and the diseased nervous system: a delicate balance between adaptive and pathological processes of gene regulation. J Neurochem 2008;105:1-17.
47. Asami T, Ito T, Fukumitsu H, Nomoto H, Furukawa Y, et al. Autocrine activation of cultured macrophages by brain-derived neurotrophic factor. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 2006;344:941-7.
48. Mizoguchi Y, Monji A, Kato T, Seki Y, Gotoh L, et al. Brain-derived neurotrophic factor induces sustained elevation of intracellular Ca^{2+} in rodent microglia. J Immunol 2009;183:7778-86.
49. Aid T, Kazantseva A, Piirsoo M, Palm K, Timmusk T. Mouse and rat BDNF gene structure and expression revisited. J Neurosci Res 2007;85:525-35.
50. Pruunsild P, Kazantseva A, Aid T, Palm K, Timmusk T. Dissecting the human BDNF locus: bidirectional transcription, complex splicing, and multiple promoters. Genomics 2007;90:397-406.

51. Barker PA. Whither proBDNF? Nat Neurosci 2009;12:105-6.
52. Lu B, Pang PT, Woo NH. The yin and yang of neurotrophin action. Nat Rev Neurosci 2005;6:603-14.
53. Minichiello L. TrkB signalling pathways in LTP and learning. Nat Rev Neurosci 2009;10:850-60.
54. Lima Giacobbo B, Doorduin J, Klein HC, Dierckx RAJO, Bromberg E, et al. Brain-derived neurotrophic factor in brain disorders: focus on neuroinflammation. Mol Neurobiol 2019;56:3295-312.
55. Marini AM, Jiang X, Wu X, Tian F, Zhu D, et al. Role of brain-derived neurotrophic factor and NF-kappaB in neuronal plasticity and survival: From genes to phenotype. Restor Neurol Neurosci 2004;22:121-30.
56. Lai SW, Chen JH, Lin HY, Liu YS, Tsai CF, et al. Regulatory effects of neuroinflammatory responses through brain-derived neurotrophic factor signaling in microglial cells. Mol Neurobiol 2018;55:7487-99.
57. Rossetti AC, Paladini MS, Trepci A, Mallien A, Riva MA, et al. Differential neuroinflammatory response in male and female mice: a role for BDNF. Front Mol Neurosci 2019;12:166.
58. Egan MF, Kojima M, Callicott JH, Goldberg TE, Kolachana BS, et al. The BDNF val66met polymorphism affects activity-dependent secretion of BDNF and human memory and hippocampal function. Cell 2003;112:257-69.
59. Shen T, You Y, Joseph C, Mirzaei M, Klistorner A, et al. BDNF polymorphism: a review of its diagnostic and clinical relevance in neurodegenerative disorders. Aging Dis 2018;9:523-36.
60. D'Addario C, Dell'Osso B, Galimberti D, Palazzo MC, Benatti B, et al. Epigenetic modulation of BDNF gene in patients with major depressive disorder. Biol Psychiatry 2013;73:e6-7.
61. Rao JS, Keleshian VL, Klein S, Rapoport SI. Epigenetic modifications in frontal cortex from Alzheimer's disease and bipolar disorder patients. Transl Psychiatry 2012;2:e132.
62. Mill J, Tang T, Kaminsky Z, Khare T, Yazdanpanah S, et al. Epigenomic profiling reveals DNA-methylation changes associated with major psychosis. Am J Hum Genet 2008;82:696-711.
63. Ursini G, Cavalleri T, Fazio L, Angrisano T, Iacovelli L, et al. BDNF rs6265 methylation and genotype interact on risk for schizophrenia. Epigenetics 2016;11:11-23.
64. Nociti V, Santoro M, Quaranta D, Losavio FA, De Fino C, et al. BDNF rs6265 polymorphism methylation in Multiple Sclerosis: a possible marker of disease progression. PLoS One 2018;13:e0206140.
65. von Bartheld CS, Byers MR, Williams R, Bothwell M. Anterograde transport of neurotrophins and axodendritic transfer in the developing visual system. Nature 1996;379:830-3.
66. Tonra JR, Curtis R, Wong V, Cliffer KD, Park JS, et al. Axotomy upregulates the anterograde transport and expression of brain-derived neurotrophic factor by sensory neurons. J Neurosci 1998;18:4374-83.
67. Trapp BD, Peterson J, Ransohoff RM, Rudick R, Mörk S, et al. Axonal transection in the lesions of multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med 1998;338:278-85.
68. Steinman L. Multiple sclerosis: a two-stage disease. Nat Immunol 2001;2:762-4.
69. Noseworthy JH, Lucchinetti C, Rodriguez M, Weinshenker BG. Multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med 2000;343:938-52.
70. Bjartmar C, Trapp BD. Axonal and neuronal degeneration in multiple sclerosis: mechanisms and functional consequences. Curr Opin Neurol 2001;14:271-8.
71. Caggiula M, Batocchi AP, Frisullo G, Angelucci F, Patanella AK, et al. Neurotrophic factors and clinical recovery in relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis. Scand J Immunol 2005;62:176-82.
72. Sarchielli P, Greco L, Stipa A, Floridi A, Gallai V. Brain-derived neurotrophic factor in patients with multiple sclerosis. J Neuroimmunol 2002;132:180-8.
73. Azoulay D, Urshansky N, Karni A. Low and dysregulated BDNF secretion from immune cells of MS patients is related to reduced neuroprotection. J Neuroimmunol 2008;195:186-93.
74. Azoulay D, Vachapova V, Shihman B, Miler A, Karni A. Lower brain-derived neurotrophic factor in serum of relapsing remitting MS: reversal by glatiramer acetate. J Neuroimmunol 2005;167:215-8.
75. Hamamcioglu K, Reder AT. Interferon-beta regulates cytokines and BDNF: greater effect in relapsing than in progressive multiple sclerosis. Mult Scler 2007;13:459-70.
76. Ineichen BV, Plattner PS, Good N, Martin R, Linnebank M, et al. Nogo-A antibodies for progressive multiple sclerosis. CNS Drugs 2017;31:187-98.
77. Ruggieri S, Tortorella C, Gasperini C. Anti lingo 1 (opicinumab) a new monoclonal antibody tested in relapsing remitting multiple sclerosis. Expert Rev Neurother 2017;17:1081-9.
78. Crozier RA, Bi C, Han YR, Plummer MR. BDNF modulation of NMDA receptors is activity dependent. J Neurophysiol 2008;100:3264-74.
79. Obermeyer JM, Tuladhar A, Payne SL, Ho E, Morshead CM, et al. Local delivery of brain-derived neurotrophic factor enables behavioral recovery and tissue repair in stroke-injured rats. Tissue Eng Part A 2019;25:1175-87.
80. Huang Y, Dreyfus CF. The role of growth factors as a therapeutic approach to demyelinating disease. Exp Neurol 2016;283:531-40.
81. Kopec BM, Kiptoo P, Zhao L, Rosa-Molinar E, Siahaan TJ. Noninvasive brain delivery and efficacy of bdnf to stimulate neuroregeneration and suppression of disease relapse in EAE mice. Mol Pharm 2020;17:404-16.

AUTHOR INSTRUCTIONS

1. Submission Overview

Before you decide to publish with us, please read the following items carefully and make sure that you are well aware of Editorial Policies and the following requirements.

1.1 Topic Suitability

The topic of the manuscript must fit the scope of the journal. Please refer to Aims and Scope for more information.

1.2 Open Access and Copyright

The journal adopts Gold Open Access publishing model since its establishment and has been distributing contents under Attribution 4.0 International License since October 2017, whereas Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported had been adopted by then. Please make sure that you are well aware of these policies.

1.3 Publication Fees

Authors are required to pay Article Processing Charges of 360 US Dollars after the manuscript is officially accepted. For more details, please refer to Article Processing Charges.

1.4 Language Editing

All submissions are required to be presented clearly and cohesively in good English. Authors whose first language is not English are advised to have their manuscripts checked or edited by a native English speaker before submission to ensure the high quality of expression. A well-organized manuscript in good English would make the peer review even the whole editorial handling more smooth and efficient.
If needed, authors are recommended to consider the language editing services provided by Charlesworth to ensure that the manuscript is written in correct scientific English before submission. Authors who publish with OAE journals enjoy a special discount for the services of Charlesworth via the following two ways.
Submit your manuscripts directly at http://www.charlesworthauthorservices.com/~OAE;
Open the link http://www.charlesworthauthorservices.com/, and enter Promotion Code "OAE" when you submit.

1.5 Work Funded by the National Institutes of Health

If an accepted manuscript was funded by National Institutes of Health (NIH), the author may inform editors of the NIH funding number. The editors are able to deposit the paper to the NIH Manuscript Submission System on behalf of the author.

2. Submission Preparation

2.1 Cover Letter

A cover letter is required to be submitted accompanying each manuscript. It should be concise and explain why the study is significant, why it fits the scope of the journal, and why it would be attractive to readers, *etc*.
Here is a guideline of a cover letter for authors' consideration:
In the first paragraph: include the title and type (e.g., Original Article, Review, Case Report, *etc*.) of the manuscript, a brief on the background of the study, the question the author sought out to answer and why;
In the second paragraph: concisely explain what was done, the main findings and why they are significant;
In the third paragraph: indicate why the manuscript fits the Aims and Scope of the journal, and why it would be attractive to readers;
In the fourth paragraph: confirm that the manuscript has not been published elsewhere and not under consideration of any other journal. All authors have approved the manuscript and agreed on its submission to the journal. Journal's specific requirements have been met if any.
If the manuscript is contributed to a special issue, please also mention it in the cover letter.
If the manuscript was presented partly or entirely in a conference, the author should clearly state the background information of the event, including the conference name, time and place in the cover letter.

2.2 Types of Manuscripts

There is no restriction on the length of manuscripts, number of figures, tables and references, provided that the manuscript is concise and comprehensive. The journal publishes Original Article, Review, Meta-Analysis, Case Report, Commentary, *etc*. For more details about paper type, please refer to the following table.

Manuscript Type	Definition	Abstract	Keywords	Main Text Structure
Original Article	An Original Article describes detailed results from novel research. All findings are extensively discussed.	Structured abstract including Aim, Methods, Results and Conclusion. No more than 250 words.	3-8 keywords	The main content should include four sections: Introduction, Methods, Results and Discussion.
Review	A Review paper summarizes the literature on previous studies. It usually does not present any new information on a subject.	Unstructured abstract. No more than 250 words.	3-8 keywords	The main text may consist of several sections with unfixed section titles. We suggest that the author includes an "Introduction" section at the beginning, several sections with unfixed titles in the middle part, and a "Conclusion" section in the end.
Case Report	A Case Report details symptoms, signs, diagnosis, treatment, and follows up an individual patient. The goal of a Case Report is to make other researchers aware of the possibility that a specific phenomenon might occur.	Unstructured abstract. No more than 150 words.	3-8 keywords	The main text consists of three sections with fixed section titles: Introduction, Case Report, and Discussion.
Meta-Analysis	A Meta-Analysis is a statistical analysis combining the results of multiple scientific studies. It is often an overview of clinical trials.	Structured abstract including Aim, Methods, Results and Conclusion. No more than 250 words.	3-8 keywords	The main content should include four sections: Introduction, Methods, Results and Discussion.
Systematic Review	A Systematic Review collects and critically analyzes multiple research studies, using methods selected before one or more research questions are formulated, and then finding and analyzing related studies and answering those questions in a structured methodology.	Structured abstract including Aim, Methods, Results and Conclusion. No more than 250 words.	3-8 keywords	The main content should include four sections: Introduction, Methods, Results and Discussion.
Technical Note	A Technical Note is a short article giving a brief description of a specific development, technique or procedure, or it may describe a modification of an existing technique, procedure or device applied in research.	Unstructured abstract. No more than 250 words.	3-8 keywords	/
Commentary	A Commentary is to provide comments on a newly published article or an alternative viewpoint on a certain topic.	Unstructured abstract. No more than 250 words.	3-8 keywords	/
Editorial	An Editorial is a short article describing news about the journal or opinions of senior editors or the publisher.	None required	None required	/
Letter to Editor	A Letter to Editor is usually an open post-publication review of a paper from its readers, often critical of some aspect of a published paper. Controversial papers often attract numerous Letters to Editor	Unstructured abstract (optional). No more than 250 words.	3-8 keywords (optional)	/
Opinion	An Opinion usually presents personal thoughts, beliefs, or feelings on a topic.	Unstructured abstract (optional). No more than 250 words.	3-8 keywords	/
Perspective	A Perspective provides personal points of view on the state-of-the-art of a specific area of knowledge and its future prospects. Links to areas of intense current research focus can also be made. The emphasis should be on a personal assessment rather than a comprehensive, critical review. However, comments should be put into the context of existing literature. Perspectives are usually invited by the Editors.	Unstructured abstract. No more than 150 words.	3-8 keywords	/

2.3 Manuscript Structure

2.3.1 Front Matter

2.3.1.1 Title

The title of the manuscript should be concise, specific and relevant, with no more than 16 words if possible. When gene or protein names are included, the abbreviated name rather than full name should be used.

2.3.1.2 Authors and Affiliations

Authors' full names should be listed. The initials of middle names can be provided. Institutional addresses and email addresses for all authors should be listed. At least one author should be designated as corresponding author. In addition, corresponding authors are suggested to provide their Open Researcher and Contributor ID upon submission. Please note that any change to authorship is not allowed after manuscript acceptance.

2.3.1.3 Abstract

The abstract should be a single paragraph with word limitation and specific structure requirements (for more details please refer to Types of Manuscripts). It usually describes the main objective(s) of the study, explains how the study was done, including any model organisms used, without methodological detail, and summarizes the most important results and their significance. The abstract must be an objective representation of the study: it is not allowed to contain results which are not presented and substantiated in the manuscript, or exaggerate the main conclusions. Citations should not be included in the abstract.

2.3.1.4 Keywords

Three to eight keywords should be provided, which are specific to the article, yet reasonably common within the subject discipline.

2.3.2 Main Text

Manuscripts of different types are structured with different sections of content. Please refer to Types of Manuscripts to make sure which sections should be included in the manuscripts.

2.3.2.1 Introduction

The introduction should contain background that puts the manuscript into context, allow readers to understand why the study is important, include a brief review of key literature, and conclude with a brief statement of the overall aim of the work and a comment about whether that aim was achieved. Relevant controversies or disagreements in the field should be introduced as well.

2.3.2.2 Methods

Methods should contain sufficient details to allow others to fully replicate the study. New methods and protocols should be described in detail while well-established methods can be briefly described or appropriately cited. Experimental participants selected, the drugs and chemicals used, the statistical methods taken, and the computer software used should be identified precisely. Statistical terms, abbreviations, and all symbols used should be defined clearly. Protocol documents for clinical trials, observational studies, and other non-laboratory investigations may be uploaded as supplementary materials.

2.3.2.3 Results

This section contains the findings of the study. Results of statistical analysis should also be included either as text or as tables or figures if appropriate. Authors should emphasize and summarize only the most important observations. Data on all primary and secondary outcomes identified in the section Methods should also be provided. Extra or supplementary materials and technical details can be placed in supplementary documents.

2.3.2.4 Discussion

This section should discuss the implications of the findings in context of existing research and highlight limitations of the study. Future research directions may also be mentioned.

2.3.2.5 Conclusion

It should state clearly the main conclusions and include the explanation of their relevance or importance to the field.

2.3.3 Back Matter

2.3.3.1 Acknowledgments

Anyone who contributed towards the article but does not meet the criteria for authorship, including those who provided professional writing services or materials, should be acknowledged. Authors should obtain permission to acknowledge from all those mentioned in the Acknowledgments section. This section is not added if the author does not have anyone to acknowledge.

2.3.3.2 Authors' Contributions

Each author is expected to have made substantial contributions to the conception or design of the work, or the acquisition, analysis, or interpretation of data, or the creation of new software used in the work, or have drafted the work or substantively revised it.

Please use Surname and Initial of Forename to refer to an author's contribution. For example: made substantial contributions to conception and design of the study and performed data analysis and interpretation: Salas H, Castaneda WV; performed data acquisition, as well as provided administrative, technical, and material support: Castillo N, Young V.

If an article is single-authored, please include "The author contributed solely to the article." in this section.

2.3.3.3 Availability of Data and Materials

In order to maintain the integrity, transparency and reproducibility of research records, authors should include this section in their manuscripts, detailing where the data supporting their findings can be found. Data can be deposited into data repositories or published as supplementary information in the journal. Authors who cannot share their data should state that the data will not be shared and explain it. If a manuscript does not involve such issue, please state "Not applicable." in this section.

2.3.3.4 Financial Support and Sponsorship

All sources of funding for the study reported should be declared. The role of the funding body in the experiment design, collection, analysis and interpretation of data, and writing of the manuscript should be declared. Any relevant grant numbers and the link of funder's website should be provided if any. If the study is not involved with this issue, state "None." in this section.

2.3.3.5 Conflicts of Interest

Authors must declare any potential conflicts of interest that may be perceived as inappropriately influencing the representation or interpretation of reported research results. If there are no conflicts of interest, please state "All authors declared that there are no conflicts of interest." in this section. Some authors may be bound by confidentiality agreements. In such cases, in place of itemized disclosures, we will require authors to state "All authors declare that they are bound by confidentiality agreements that prevent them from disclosing their conflicts of interest in this work.". If authors are unsure whether conflicts of interest exist, please refer to the "Conflicts of Interest" of OAE Editorial Policies for a full explanation.

2.3.3.6 Ethical Approval and Consent to Participate

Research involving human subjects, human material or human data must be performed in accordance with the Declaration of Helsinki and approved by an appropriate ethics committee. An informed consent to participate in the study should also be obtained from participants, or their parents or legal guardians for children under 16. A statement detailing the name of the ethics committee (including the reference number where appropriate) and the informed consent obtained must appear in the manuscripts reporting such research.

Studies involving animals and cell lines must include a statement on ethical approval. More information is available at Editorial Policies.

If the manuscript does not involve such issue, please state "Not applicable." in this section.

2.3.3.7 Consent for Publication

Manuscripts containing individual details, images or videos, must obtain consent for publication from that person, or in the case of children, their parents or legal guardians. If the person has died, consent for publication must be obtained from the next of kin of the participant. Manuscripts must include a statement that a written informed consent for publication was obtained. Authors do not have to submit such content accompanying the manuscript. However, these documents must be available if requested. If the manuscript does not involve this issue, state "Not applicable." in this section.

2.3.3.8 Copyright

Authors retain copyright of their works through a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License that clearly states how readers can copy, distribute, and use their attributed research, free of charge. A declaration "© The Author(s) 2019." will be added to each article. Authors are required to sign License to Publish before formal publication.

2.3.3.9 References

References should be numbered in order of appearance at the end of manuscripts. In the text, reference numbers should be placed in square brackets and the corresponding references are cited thereafter. Only the first five authors' names are required to be listed in the references, other authors' names should be omitted and replaced with "et al.". Abbreviations of the journals should be provided on the basis of Index Medicus. Information from manuscripts accepted but not published should be cited in the text as "Unpublished material" with written permission from the source.

References should be described as follows, depending on the types of works:

Types	Examples
Journal articles by individual authors	Weaver DL, Ashikaga T, Krag DN, Skelly JM, Anderson SJ, et al. Effect of occult metastases on survival in node-negative breast cancer. N Engl J Med 2011;364:412-21. [PMID: 21247310 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1008108]
Organization as author	Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group. Hypertension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. Hypertension 2002;40:679-86. [PMID: 12411462]
Both personal authors and organization as author	Vallancien G, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1,274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. J Urol 2003;169:2257-61. [PMID: 12771764 DOI: 10.1097/01.ju.0000067940.76090.73]
Journal articles not in English	Zhang X, Xiong H, Ji TY, Zhang YH, Wang Y. Case report of anti-N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor encephalitis in child. J Appl Clin Pediatr 2012;27:1903-7. (in Chinese)
Journal articles ahead of print	Odibo AO. Falling stillbirth and neonatal mortality rates in twin gestation: not a reason for complacency. BJOG 2018; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 30461178 DOI: 10.1111/1471-0528.15541]
Books	Sherlock S, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and billiary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub; 1993. pp. 258-96.
Book chapters	Meltzer PS, Kallioniemi A, Trent JM. Chromosome alterations in human solid tumors. In: Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW, editors. The genetic basis of human cancer. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2002. pp. 93-113.
Online resource	FDA News Release. FDA approval brings first gene therapy to the United States. Available from: https://www.fda.gov/NewsEvents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/ucm574058.htm. [Last accessed on 30 Oct 2017]
Conference proceedings	Harnden P, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ Cell Tumour Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer; 2002.
Conference paper	Christensen S, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer; 2002. pp. 182-91.
Unpublished material	Tian D, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. Forthcoming 2002.

For other types of references, please refer to U.S. National Library of Medicine.
The journal also recommends that authors prepare references with a bibliography software package, such as EndNote to avoid typing mistakes and duplicated references.

2.3.3.10 Supplementary Materials

Additional data and information can be uploaded as Supplementary Material to accompany the manuscripts. The supplementary materials will also be available to the referees as part of the peer-review process. Any file format is acceptable, such as data sheet (word, excel, csv, cdx, fasta, pdf or zip files), presentation (powerpoint, pdf or zip files), image (cdx, eps, jpeg, pdf, png or tiff), table (word, excel, csv or pdf), audio (mp3, wav or wma) or video (avi, divx, flv, mov, mp4, mpeg, mpg or wmv). All information should be clearly presented. Supplementary materials should be cited in the main text in numeric order (e.g., Supplementary Figure 1, Supplementary Figure 2, Supplementary Table 1, Supplementary Table 2, *etc.*). The style of supplementary figures or tables complies with the same requirements on figures or tables in main text. Videos and audios should be prepared in English, and limited to a size of 500 MB or a duration of 3 minutes.

2.4 Manuscript Format

2.4.1 File Format

Manuscript files can be in DOC and DOCX formats and should not be locked or protected.

2.4.2 Length

There are no restrictions on paper length, number of figures, or amount of supporting documents. Authors are encouraged to present and discuss their findings concisely.

2.4.3 Language

Manuscripts must be written in English.

2.4.4 Multimedia Files

The journal supports manuscripts with multimedia files. The requirements are listed as follows:
Videos or audio files are only acceptable in English. The presentation and introduction should be easy to understand. The frames should be clear, and the speech speed should be moderate.
A brief overview of the video or audio files should be given in the manuscript text.
The video or audio files should be limited to a duration of 3 min and a size of up to 500 MB.

Please use professional software to produce high-quality video files, to facilitate acceptance and publication along with the submitted article. Upload the videos in mp4, wmv, or rm format (preferably mp4) and audio files in mp3 or wav format.

2.4.5 Figures

Figures should be cited in numeric order (e.g., Figure 1, Figure 2) and placed after the paragraph where it is first cited;
Figures can be submitted in format of tiff, psd, AI or jpeg, with resolution of 300-600 dpi;
Figure caption is placed under the Figure;
Diagrams with describing words (including, flow chart, coordinate diagram, bar chart, line chart, and scatter diagram, *etc*.) should be editable in word, excel or powerpoint format. Non-English information should be avoided;
Labels, numbers, letters, arrows, and symbols in figure should be clear, of uniform size, and contrast with the background;
Symbols, arrows, numbers, or letters used to identify parts of the illustrations must be identified and explained in the legend;
Internal scale (magnification) should be explained and the staining method in photomicrographs should be identified;
All non-standard abbreviations should be explained in the legend;
Permission for use of copyrighted materials from other sources, including re-published, adapted, modified, or partial figures and images from the internet, must be obtained. It is authors' responsibility to acquire the licenses, to follow any citation instruction requested by third-party rights holders, and cover any supplementary charges.

2.4.6 Tables

Tables should be cited in numeric order and placed after the paragraph where it is first cited;
The table caption should be placed above the table and labeled sequentially (e.g., Table 1, Table 2);
Tables should be provided in editable form like DOC or DOCX format (picture is not allowed);
Abbreviations and symbols used in table should be explained in footnote;
Explanatory matter should also be placed in footnotes;
Permission for use of copyrighted materials from other sources, including re-published, adapted, modified, or partial tables from the internet, must be obtained. It is authors' responsibility to acquire the licenses, to follow any citation instruction requested by third-party rights holders, and cover any supplementary charges.

2.4.7 Abbreviations

Abbreviations should be defined upon first appearance in the abstract, main text, and in figure or table captions and used consistently thereafter. Non-standard abbreviations are not allowed unless they appear at least three times in the text. Commonly-used abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, ATP, *etc*., can be used directly without definition. Abbreviations in titles and keywords should be avoided, except for the ones which are widely used.

2.4.8 Italics

General italic words like *vs*., *et al., etc*., *in vivo*, *in vitro*; *t* test, *F* test, *U* test; related coefficient as *r*, sample number as *n*, and probability as *P*; names of genes; names of bacteria and biology species in Latin.

2.4.9 Units

SI Units should be used. Imperial, US customary and other units should be converted to SI units whenever possible. There is a space between the number and the unit (i.e., 23 mL). Hour, minute, second should be written as h, min, s.

2.4.10 Numbers

Numbers appearing at the beginning of sentences should be expressed in English. When there are two or more numbers in a paragraph, they should be expressed as Arabic numerals; when there is only one number in a paragraph, number < 10 should be expressed in English and number > 10 should be expressed as Arabic numerals. 12345678 should be written as 12,345,678.

2.4.11 Equations

Equations should be editable and not appear in a picture format. Authors are advised to use either the Microsoft Equation Editor or the MathType for display and inline equations.

2.5 Submission Link

Submit an article via https://oaemesas.com/nn/.

OAE Publishing Inc.
www.oaepublish.com

Neuroimmunology and Neuroinflammation
(NN)
Los Angeles Office
245 E Main Street ste122, Alhambra,
CA 91801, USA
Tel: +1 323 9987086
E-mail: editorialoffice@nnjournal.net
Website: www.nnjournal.net